Security in MySQL
Abstract

This is the MySQL Security Guide extract from the MySQL 5.7 Reference Manual.

For legal information, see the Legal Notices.

For help with using MySQL, please visit either the MySQL Forums or MySQL Mailing Lists, where you can discuss your issues with other MySQL users.

Document generated on: 2019-02-16 (revision: 60965)
Table of Contents

Preface and Legal Notices ........................................................................................................... v
1 Security ......................................................................................................................................... 1
2 General Security Issues ............................................................................................................... 3
   2.1 Security Guidelines ................................................................................................................ 3
   2.2 Keeping Passwords Secure .................................................................................................. 4
      2.2.1 End-User Guidelines for Password Security ................................................................. 5
      2.2.2 Administrator Guidelines for Password Security ......................................................... 6
      2.2.3 Passwords and Logging ............................................................................................... 6
      2.2.4 Password Hashing in MySQL ...................................................................................... 7
   2.3 Making MySQL Secure Against Attackers ......................................................................... 13
   2.4 Security-Related mysqld Options and Variables ............................................................. 15
   2.5 How to Run MySQL as a Normal User ............................................................................. 15
   2.6 Security Issues with LOAD DATA LOCAL ....................................................................... 16
   2.7 Client Programming Security Guidelines ......................................................................... 17
3 Postinstallation Setup and Testing .......................................................................................... 19
   3.1 Initializing the Data Directory ............................................................................................. 19
      3.1.1 Initializing the Data Directory Manually Using mysqld ............................................... 21
   3.2 Starting the Server ............................................................................................................. 24
      3.2.1 Troubleshooting Problems Starting the MySQL Server .............................................. 25
   3.3 Testing the Server .............................................................................................................. 27
   3.4 Securing the Initial MySQL Account ................................................................................ 29
   3.5 Starting and Stopping MySQL Automatically ................................................................... 31
4 The MySQL Access Privilege System ..................................................................................... 33
   4.1 Privileges Provided by MySQL .......................................................................................... 34
   4.2 Grant Tables ....................................................................................................................... 40
   4.3 Specifying Account Names ............................................................................................... 46
   4.4 Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification ............................................................ 47
   4.5 Access Control, Stage 2: Request Verification .................................................................. 50
   4.6 When Privilege Changes Take Effect ................................................................................ 52
   4.7 Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL .......................................................... 52
5 MySQL User Account Management ......................................................................................... 59
   5.1 User Names and Passwords ............................................................................................... 59
   5.2 Adding User Accounts ....................................................................................................... 61
   5.3 Removing User Accounts .................................................................................................. 63
   5.4 Reserved User Accounts .................................................................................................... 63
   5.5 Setting Account Resource Limits ....................................................................................... 63
   5.6 Assigning Account Passwords .......................................................................................... 65
   5.7 Password Management ....................................................................................................... 66
   5.8 Password Expiration and Sandbox Mode ........................................................................ 68
   5.9 Pluggable Authentication .................................................................................................... 70
   5.10 Proxy Users ....................................................................................................................... 72
   5.11 User Account Locking ......................................................................................................... 78
   5.12 SQL-Based MySQL Account Activity Auditing ................................................................. 78
6 Using Encrypted Connections ................................................................................................. 81
   6.1 Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections ....................................................... 83
   6.2 Command Options for Encrypted Connections ............................................................... 86
   6.3 Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys .................................................................. 91
      6.3.1 Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL .................................... 91
      6.3.2 Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl .................................................. 94
      6.3.3 Creating RSA Keys Using openssl ............................................................................. 99
   6.4 SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities ............................................................................... 99
   6.5 Building MySQL with Support for Encrypted Connections ......................................... 100
   6.6 Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers ................................................................. 101
   6.7 Connecting to MySQL Remotely from Windows with SSH .............................................. 105
7 Security Plugins ...................................................................................................................... 107
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.1 Authentication Plugins</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.1 Native Pluggable Authentication</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.2 Old Native Pluggable Authentication</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.3 Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.4 SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.5 Caching SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.6 Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.7 PAM Pluggable Authentication</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.8 Windows Pluggable Authentication</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.9 LDAP Pluggable Authentication</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.10 No-Login Pluggable Authentication</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.11 Socket Peer-Credential Pluggable Authentication</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.12 Test Pluggable Authentication</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.13 Pluggable Authentication System Variables</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2 The Connection-Control Plugins</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.1 Connection-Control Plugin Installation</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2 Connection-Control System and Status Variables</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3 The Password Validation Plugin</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1 Password Validation Plugin Installation</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.2 Password Validation Plugin Options and Variables</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4 The MySQL Keyring</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.1 Keyring Plugin Installation</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.2 Using the keyring_file File-Based Plugin</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.3 Using the keyring_encrypted_file Keyring Plugin</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.4 Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.5 Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.6 Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.7 Supported Keyring Key Types</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.8 General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.9 Plugin-Specific Keyring Key-Management Functions</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.10 Keyring Command Options</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.11 Keyring System Variables</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5 MySQL Enterprise Audit</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.1 Audit Log Components</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.3 MySQL Enterprise Audit Security Considerations</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.4 Audit Log File Formats</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.5 Audit Log Logging Control</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.6 Audit Log Filtering</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.7 Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.8 Audit Log Reference</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5.9 Audit Log Restrictions</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6 MySQL Enterprise Firewall</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.1 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Components</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.3 Using MySQL Enterprise Firewall</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.4 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Reference</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7 MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7.1 MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification Components</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7.3 Using MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7.4 MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification User-Defined Function Reference</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A MySQL 5.7 FAQ: Security</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preface and Legal Notices

This is the MySQL Security Guide extract from the MySQL 5.7 Reference Manual.

Licensing information—MySQL 5.7. This product may include third-party software, used under license. If you are using a Commercial release of MySQL 5.7, see the MySQL 5.7 Commercial Release License Information User Manual for licensing information, including licensing information relating to third-party software that may be included in this Commercial release. If you are using a Community release of MySQL 5.7, see the MySQL 5.7 Community Release License Information User Manual for licensing information, including licensing information relating to third-party software that may be included in this Community release.

Licensing information—MySQL NDB Cluster 7.5. This product may include third-party software, used under license. If you are using a Commercial release of NDB Cluster 7.5, see the MySQL NDB Cluster 7.5 Commercial Release License Information User Manual for licensing information relating to third-party software that may be included in this Commercial release. If you are using a Community release of NDB Cluster 7.5, see the MySQL NDB Cluster 7.5 Community Release License Information User Manual for licensing information relating to third-party software that may be included in this Community release.

Licensing information—MySQL NDB Cluster 7.6. If you are using a Commercial release of MySQL NDB Cluster 7.6, see the MySQL NDB Cluster 7.6 Community Release License Information User Manual for licensing information, including licensing information relating to third-party software that may be included in this Commercial release. If you are using a Community release of MySQL NDB Cluster 7.6, see the MySQL NDB Cluster 7.6 Community Release License Information User Manual for licensing information, including licensing information relating to third-party software that may be included in this Community release.

Legal Notices

Copyright © 1997, 2019, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and
other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

This documentation is NOT distributed under a GPL license. Use of this documentation is subject to the following terms:

You may create a printed copy of this documentation solely for your own personal use. Conversion to other formats is allowed as long as the actual content is not altered or edited in any way. You shall not publish or distribute this documentation in any form or on any media, except if you distribute the documentation in a manner similar to how Oracle disseminates it (that is, electronically for download on a Web site with the software) or on a CD-ROM or similar medium, provided however that the documentation is disseminated together with the software on the same medium. Any other use, such as any dissemination of printed copies or use of this documentation, in whole or in part, in another publication, requires the prior written consent from an authorized representative of Oracle. Oracle and/or its affiliates reserve any and all rights to this documentation not expressly granted above.

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle’s commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc.

Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info or visit http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs if you are hearing impaired.
Chapter 1 Security

When thinking about security within a MySQL installation, you should consider a wide range of possible topics and how they affect the security of your MySQL server and related applications:

• General factors that affect security. These include choosing good passwords, not granting unnecessary privileges to users, ensuring application security by preventing SQL injections and data corruption, and others. See Chapter 2, General Security Issues.

• Security of the installation itself. The data files, log files, and all the application files of your installation should be protected to ensure that they are not readable or writable by unauthorized parties. For more information, see Chapter 3, Postinstallation Setup and Testing.

• Access control and security within the database system itself, including the users and databases granted with access to the databases, views and stored programs in use within the database. For more information, see Chapter 4, The MySQL Access Privilege System, and Chapter 5, MySQL User Account Management.

• The features offered by security-related plugins. See Chapter 7, Security Plugins.

• Network security of MySQL and your system. The security is related to the grants for individual users, but you may also wish to restrict MySQL so that it is available only locally on the MySQL server host, or to a limited set of other hosts.

• Ensure that you have adequate and appropriate backups of your database files, configuration and log files. Also be sure that you have a recovery solution in place and test that you are able to successfully recover the information from your backups. See Backup and Recovery.
Chapter 2 General Security Issues

Table of Contents

2.1 Security Guidelines .................................. 3
2.2 Keeping Passwords Secure .................................. 4
   2.2.1 End-User Guidelines for Password Security .......................... 5
   2.2.2 Administrator Guidelines for Password Security ......................... 6
   2.2.3 Passwords and Logging ........................................... 6
   2.2.4 Password Hashing in MySQL .................................... 7
2.3 Making MySQL Secure Against Attackers ........................... 13
2.4 Security-Related mysqld Options and Variables ......................... 15
2.5 How to Run MySQL as a Normal User ................................ 15
2.6 Security Issues with LOAD DATA LOCAL ................................ 16
2.7 Client Programming Security Guidelines ............................ 17

This section describes general security issues to be aware of and what you can do to make your MySQL installation more secure against attack or misuse. For information specifically about the access control system that MySQL uses for setting up user accounts and checking database access, see Chapter 3, Postinstallation Setup and Testing.

For answers to some questions that are often asked about MySQL Server security issues, see Appendix A, MySQL 5.7 FAQ: Security.

2.1 Security Guidelines

Anyone using MySQL on a computer connected to the Internet should read this section to avoid the most common security mistakes.

In discussing security, it is necessary to consider fully protecting the entire server host (not just the MySQL server) against all types of applicable attacks: eavesdropping, altering, playback, and denial of service. We do not cover all aspects of availability and fault tolerance here.

MySQL uses security based on Access Control Lists (ACLs) for all connections, queries, and other operations that users can attempt to perform. There is also support for SSL-encrypted connections between MySQL clients and servers. Many of the concepts discussed here are not specific to MySQL at all; the same general ideas apply to almost all applications.

When running MySQL, follow these guidelines:

- **Do not ever give anyone (except MySQL root accounts) access to the user table in the mysql system database!** This is critical.

- Learn how the MySQL access privilege system works (see Chapter 4, The MySQL Access Privilege System). Use the GRANT and REVOKE statements to control access to MySQL. Do not grant more privileges than necessary. Never grant privileges to all hosts.

  Checklist:

  - Try `mysql -u root`. If you are able to connect successfully to the server without being asked for a password, anyone can connect to your MySQL server as the MySQL root user with full privileges! Review the MySQL installation instructions, paying particular attention to the information about setting a root password. See Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account”.

  - **Use the SHOW GRANTS statement to check which accounts have access to what. Then use the REVOKE statement to remove those privileges that are not necessary.**
• Do not store cleartext passwords in your database. If your computer becomes compromised, the intruder can take the full list of passwords and use them. Instead, use SHA2() or some other one-way hashing function and store the hash value.

To prevent password recovery using rainbow tables, do not use these functions on a plain password; instead, choose some string to be used as a salt, and use hash(hash(password)+salt) values.

• Do not choose passwords from dictionaries. Special programs exist to break passwords. Even passwords like “xfish98” are very bad. Much better is “duag98” which contains the same word “fish” but typed one key to the left on a standard QWERTY keyboard. Another method is to use a password that is taken from the first characters of each word in a sentence (for example, “Four score and seven years ago” results in a password of “Fsasya”). The password is easy to remember and type, but difficult to guess for someone who does not know the sentence. In this case, you can additionally substitute digits for the number words to obtain the phrase “4 score and 7 years ago”, yielding the password “4sa7ya” which is even more difficult to guess.

• Invest in a firewall. This protects you from at least 50% of all types of exploits in any software. Put MySQL behind the firewall or in a demilitarized zone (DMZ).

Checklist:

• Try to scan your ports from the Internet using a tool such as nmap. MySQL uses port 3306 by default. This port should not be accessible from untrusted hosts. As a simple way to check whether your MySQL port is open, try the following command from some remote machine, where server_host is the host name or IP address of the host on which your MySQL server runs:

```
shell> telnet server_host 3306
```

If telnet hangs or the connection is refused, the port is blocked, which is how you want it to be. If you get a connection and some garbage characters, the port is open, and should be closed on your firewall or router, unless you really have a good reason to keep it open.

• Applications that access MySQL should not trust any data entered by users, and should be written using proper defensive programming techniques. See Section 2.7, “Client Programming Security Guidelines”.

• Do not transmit plain (unencrypted) data over the Internet. This information is accessible to everyone who has the time and ability to intercept it and use it for their own purposes. Instead, use an encrypted protocol such as SSL or SSH. MySQL supports internal SSL connections. Another technique is to use SSH port-forwarding to create an encrypted (and compressed) tunnel for the communication.

• Learn to use the tcpdump and strings utilities. In most cases, you can check whether MySQL data streams are unencrypted by issuing a command like the following:

```
shell> tcpdump -l -i eth0 -w - src or dst port 3306 | strings
```

This works under Linux and should work with small modifications under other systems.

**Warning**

If you do not see cleartext data, this does not always mean that the information actually is encrypted. If you need high security, consult with a security expert.

2.2 Keeping Passwords Secure

Passwords occur in several contexts within MySQL. The following sections provide guidelines that enable end users and administrators to keep these passwords secure and avoid exposing them. There
is also a discussion of how MySQL uses password hashing internally and of a plugin that you can use to enforce stricter passwords.

### 2.2.1 End-User Guidelines for Password Security

MySQL users should use the following guidelines to keep passwords secure.

When you run a client program to connect to the MySQL server, it is inadvisable to specify your password in a way that exposes it to discovery by other users. The methods you can use to specify your password when you run client programs are listed here, along with an assessment of the risks of each method. In short, the safest methods are to have the client program prompt for the password or to specify the password in a properly protected option file.

- Use the `mysql_config_editor` utility, which enables you to store authentication credentials in an encrypted login path file named `.mylogin.cnf`. The file can be read later by MySQL client programs to obtain authentication credentials for connecting to MySQL Server. See `mysql_config_editor — MySQL Configuration Utility`.

- Use a `-p your_pass` or `--password=your_pass` option on the command line. For example:

  ```shell
  mysql -u francis -pfrank db_name
  ```

  **Warning**
  This is convenient but insecure. On some systems, your password becomes visible to system status programs such as `ps` that may be invoked by other users to display command lines. MySQL clients typically overwrite the command-line password argument with zeros during their initialization sequence. However, there is still a brief interval during which the value is visible. Also, on some systems this overwriting strategy is ineffective and the password remains visible to `ps`. (SystemV Unix systems and perhaps others are subject to this problem.)

- Use the `-p` or `--password` option on the command line with no password value specified. In this case, the client program solicits the password interactively:

  ```shell
  mysql -u francis -p db_name
  Enter password: ********
  ```

  The `*` characters indicate where you enter your password. The password is not displayed as you enter it.

  It is more secure to enter your password this way than to specify it on the command line because it is not visible to other users. However, this method of entering a password is suitable only for programs that you run interactively. If you want to invoke a client from a script that runs noninteractively, there is no opportunity to enter the password from the keyboard. On some systems, you may even find that the first line of your script is read and interpreted (incorrectly) as your password.

- Store your password in an option file. For example, on Unix, you can list your password in the `client` section of the `.my.cnf` file in your home directory:

  ```ini
  [client]
  password=your_pass
  ```

  To keep the password safe, the file should not be accessible to anyone but yourself. To ensure this, set the file access mode to 400 or 600. For example:
2.2.2 Administrator Guidelines for Password Security

Database administrators should use the following guidelines to keep passwords secure.

MySQL stores passwords for user accounts in the `mysql.user` system table. Access to this table should never be granted to any nonadministrative accounts.

Account passwords can be expired so that users must reset them. See Section 5.7, “Password Management”, and Section 5.8, “Password Expiration and Sandbox Mode”.

The `validate_password` plugin can be used to enforce a policy on acceptable password. See Section 7.3, “The Password Validation Plugin”.

A user who has access to modify the plugin directory (the value of the `plugin_dir` system variable) or the `my.cnf` file that specifies the plugin directory location can replace plugins and modify the capabilities provided by plugins, including authentication plugins.

Files such as log files to which passwords might be written should be protected. See Section 2.2.3, “Passwords and Logging”.

2.2.3 Passwords and Logging

Passwords can be written as plain text in SQL statements such as `CREATE USER`, `GRANT`, `SET PASSWORD`, and statements that invoke the `PASSWORD()` function. If such statements are logged by the MySQL server as written, passwords in them become visible to anyone with access to the logs.

Statement logging avoids writing passwords in cleartext for the following statements:
Passwords in those statements are rewritten to not appear literally in statement text written to the
general query log, slow query log, and binary log. Rewriting does not apply to other statements.
In particular, INSERT or UPDATE statements for the mysql.user system table that refer to literal
passwords are logged as is, so you should avoid such statements. (Direct modification of grant tables
is discouraged, anyway.)

For the general query log, password rewriting can be suppressed by starting the server with the
--log-raw option. For security reasons, this option is not recommended for production use. For
diagnostic purposes, it may be useful to see the exact text of statements as received by the server.

Contents of the audit log file produced by the audit log plugin are not encrypted. For security reasons,
this file should be written to a directory accessible only to the MySQL server and users with a legitimate
reason to view the log. See Section 7.5.3, “MySQL Enterprise Audit Security Considerations”.

Statements received by the server may be rewritten if a query rewrite plugin is installed (see Query
Rewrite Plugins). In this case, the --log-raw option affects statement logging as follows:

- Without --log-raw, the server logs the statement returned by the query rewrite plugin. This may
differ from the statement as received.
- With --log-raw, the server logs the original statement as received.

An implication of password rewriting is that statements that cannot be parsed (due, for example, to
syntax errors) are not written to the general query log because they cannot be known to be password
free. Use cases that require logging of all statements including those with errors should use the --log-raw
option, bearing in mind that this also bypasses password rewriting.

Password rewriting occurs only when plain text passwords are expected. For statements with syntax
that expect a password hash value, no rewriting occurs. If a plain text password is supplied erroneously
for such syntax, the password is logged as given, without rewriting. For example, the following
statement is logged as shown because a password hash value is expected:

CREATE USER 'user1'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY PASSWORD 'not-so-secret';

To guard log files against unwarranted exposure, locate them in a directory that restricts access to the
server and the database administrator. If the server logs to tables in the mysql database, grant access
to those tables only to the database administrator.

Replication slaves store the password for the replication master in the master info repository, which can
be either a file or a table (see Replication Relay and Status Logs). Ensure that the repository can be
accessed only by the database administrator. An alternative to storing the password in a file is to use
the START SLAVE statement to specify credentials for connecting to the master.

Use a restricted access mode to protect database backups that include log tables or log files containing
passwords.

### 2.2.4 Password Hashing in MySQL

**Note**
The information in this section applies fully only before MySQL 5.7.5, and only for accounts that use the mysql_native_password or mysql_old_password authentication plugins. Support for pre-4.1
password hashes was removed in MySQL 5.7.5. This includes removal of the mysql_old_password authentication plugin and the OLD_PASSWORD() function. Also, secure_auth cannot be disabled, and old_passwords cannot be set to 1.

As of MySQL 5.7.5, only the information about 4.1 password hashes and the mysql_native_password authentication plugin remains relevant.

MySQL lists user accounts in the user table of the mysql database. Each MySQL account can be assigned a password, although the user table does not store the cleartext version of the password, but a hash value computed from it.

MySQL uses passwords in two phases of client/server communication:

- When a client attempts to connect to the server, there is an initial authentication step in which the client must present a password that has a hash value matching the hash value stored in the user table for the account the client wants to use.
- After the client connects, it can (if it has sufficient privileges) set or change the password hash for accounts listed in the user table. The client can do this by using the PASSWORD() function to generate a password hash, or by using a password-generating statement (CREATE USER, GRANT, or SET PASSWORD).

In other words, the server checks hash values during authentication when a client first attempts to connect. The server generates hash values if a connected client invokes the PASSWORD() function or uses a password-generating statement to set or change a password.

Password hashing methods in MySQL have the history described following. These changes are illustrated by changes in the result from the PASSWORD() function that computes password hash values and in the structure of the user table where passwords are stored.

The Original (Pre-4.1) Hashing Method

The original hashing method produced a 16-byte string. Such hashes look like this:

```sql
mysql> SELECT PASSWORD('mypass');
+-------------------+
| PASSWORD('mypass') |
| 6f8c114b58f2ce9e |
+-------------------+
```

To store account passwords, the Password column of the user table was at this point 16 bytes long.

The 4.1 Hashing Method

MySQL 4.1 introduced password hashing that provided better security and reduced the risk of passwords being intercepted. There were several aspects to this change:

- Different format of password values produced by the PASSWORD() function
- Widening of the Password column
- Control over the default hashing method
- Control over the permitted hashing methods for clients attempting to connect to the server

The changes in MySQL 4.1 took place in two stages:

- MySQL 4.1.0 used a preliminary version of the 4.1 hashing method. This method was short lived and the following discussion says nothing more about it.
• In MySQL 4.1.1, the hashing method was modified to produce a longer 41-byte hash value:

```
mysql> SELECT PASSWORD('mypass');
+-------------------------------------------+
| PASSWORD('mypass')                        |
+-------------------------------------------+
| *6C8989366EAF75BB670AD8EA7A7FC1176AA95CEF4 |
+-------------------------------------------+
```

The longer password hash format has better cryptographic properties, and client authentication based on long hashes is more secure than that based on the older short hashes.

To accommodate longer password hashes, the `password` column in the `user` table was changed at this point to be 41 bytes, its current length.

A widened `password` column can store password hashes in both the pre-4.1 and 4.1 formats. The format of any given hash value can be determined two ways:

• The length: 4.1 and pre-4.1 hashes are 41 and 16 bytes, respectively.

• Password hashes in the 4.1 format always begin with a * character, whereas passwords in the pre-4.1 format never do.

To permit explicit generation of pre-4.1 password hashes, two additional changes were made:

• The `OLD_PASSWORD()` function was added, which returns hash values in the 16-byte format.

• For compatibility purposes, the `old_passwords` system variable was added, to enable DBAs and applications control over the hashing method. The default `old_passwords` value of 0 causes hashing to use the 4.1 method (41-byte hash values), but setting `old_passwords=1` causes hashing to use the pre-4.1 method. In this case, `PASSWORD()` produces 16-byte values and is equivalent to `OLD_PASSWORD()`.

To permit DBAs control over how clients are permitted to connect, the `secure_auth` system variable was added. Starting the server with this variable disabled or enabled permits or prohibits clients to connect using the older pre-4.1 password hashing method. Before MySQL 5.6.5, `secure_auth` is disabled by default. As of 5.6.5, `secure_auth` is enabled by default to promote a more secure default configuration (DBAs can disable it at their discretion, but this is not recommended, and pre-4.1 password hashes are deprecated and should be avoided. (For account upgrade instructions, see Section 7.1.3, “Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the `mysql_old_password` Plugin”.)

In addition, the `mysql` client supports a `--secure-auth` option that is analogous to `secure_auth`, but from the client side. It can be used to prevent connections to less secure accounts that use pre-4.1 password hashing. This option is disabled by default before MySQL 5.6.7, enabled thereafter.

**Compatibility Issues Related to Hashing Methods**

The widening of the `password` column in MySQL 4.1 from 16 bytes to 41 bytes affects installation or upgrade operations as follows:

• If you perform a new installation of MySQL, the `password` column is made 41 bytes long automatically.

• Upgrades from MySQL 4.1 or later to current versions of MySQL should not give rise to any issues in regard to the `password` column because both versions use the same column length and password hashing method.

• For upgrades from a pre-4.1 release to 4.1 or later, you must upgrade the system tables after upgrading. (See `mysql_upgrade — Check and Upgrade MySQL Tables`.)

In addition, the `mysql` client supports a `--secure-auth` option that is analogous to `secure_auth`, but from the client side. It can be used to prevent connections to less secure accounts that use pre-4.1 password hashing. This option is disabled by default before MySQL 5.6.7, enabled thereafter.
The 4.1 hashing method is understood only by MySQL 4.1 (and higher) servers and clients, which can result in some compatibility problems. A 4.1 or higher client can connect to a pre-4.1 server, because the client understands both the pre-4.1 and 4.1 password hashing methods. However, a pre-4.1 client that attempts to connect to a 4.1 or higher server may run into difficulties. For example, a 4.0 mysql client may fail with the following error message:

```
shell> mysql -h localhost -u root
Client does not support authentication protocol requested by server; consider upgrading MySQL client
```

This phenomenon also occurs for attempts to use the older PHP mysql extension after upgrading to MySQL 4.1 or higher. (See Common Problems with MySQL and PHP.)

The following discussion describes the differences between the pre-4.1 and 4.1 hashing methods, and what you should do if you upgrade your server but need to maintain backward compatibility with pre-4.1 clients. (However, permitting connections by old clients is not recommended and should be avoided if possible.) This information is of particular importance to PHP programmers migrating MySQL databases from versions older than 4.1 to 4.1 or higher.

The differences between short and long password hashes are relevant both for how the server uses passwords during authentication and for how it generates password hashes for connected clients that perform password-changing operations.

The way in which the server uses password hashes during authentication is affected by the width of the `Password` column:

- If the column is short, only short-hash authentication is used.
- If the column is long, it can hold either short or long hashes, and the server can use either format:
  - Pre-4.1 clients can connect, but because they know only about the pre-4.1 hashing method, they can authenticate only using accounts that have short hashes.
  - 4.1 and later clients can authenticate using accounts that have short or long hashes.

Even for short-hash accounts, the authentication process is actually a bit more secure for 4.1 and later clients than for older clients. In terms of security, the gradient from least to most secure is:

- Pre-4.1 client authenticating with short password hash
- 4.1 or later client authenticating with short password hash
- 4.1 or later client authenticating with long password hash

The way in which the server generates password hashes for connected clients is affected by the width of the `Password` column and by the `old_passwords` system variable. A 4.1 or later server generates long hashes only if certain conditions are met: The `Password` column must be wide enough to hold long values and `old_passwords` must not be set to 1.

Those conditions apply as follows:

- The `Password` column must be wide enough to hold long hashes (41 bytes). If the column has not been updated and still has the pre-4.1 width of 16 bytes, the server notices that long hashes cannot fit into it and generates only short hashes when a client performs password-changing operations using the `PASSWORD()` function or a password-generating statement. This is the behavior that occurs if you have upgraded from a version of MySQL older than 4.1 to 4.1 or later but have not yet run the `mysql_upgrade` program to widen the `Password` column.
- If the `Password` column is wide, it can store either short or long password hashes. In this case, the `PASSWORD()` function and password-generating statements generate long hashes unless the server
was started with the `old_passwords` system variable set to 1 to force the server to generate short password hashes instead.

The purpose of the `old_passwords` system variable is to permit backward compatibility with pre-4.1 clients under circumstances where the server would otherwise generate long password hashes. The option does not affect authentication (4.1 and later clients can still use accounts that have long password hashes), but it does prevent creation of a long password hash in the `user` table as the result of a password-changing operation. Were that permitted to occur, the account could no longer be used by pre-4.1 clients. With `old_passwords` disabled, the following undesirable scenario is possible:

- An old pre-4.1 client connects to an account that has a short password hash.
- The client changes its own password. With `old_passwords` disabled, this results in the account having a long password hash.
- The next time the old client attempts to connect to the account, it cannot, because the account has a long password hash that requires the 4.1 hashing method during authentication. (Once an account has a long password hash in the user table, only 4.1 and later clients can authenticate for it because pre-4.1 clients do not understand long hashes.)

This scenario illustrates that, if you must support older pre-4.1 clients, it is problematic to run a 4.1 or higher server without `old_passwords` set to 1. By running the server with `old_passwords=1`, password-changing operations do not generate long password hashes and thus do not cause accounts to become inaccessible to older clients. (Those clients cannot inadvertently lock themselves out by changing their password and ending up with a long password hash.)

The downside of `old_passwords=1` is that any passwords created or changed use short hashes, even for 4.1 or later clients. Thus, you lose the additional security provided by long password hashes. To create an account that has a long hash (for example, for use by 4.1 clients) or to change an existing account to use a long password hash, an administrator can set the session value of `old_passwords` set to 0 while leaving the global value set to 1:

```
mysql> SET @@SESSION.old_passwords = 0;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)
mysql> SELECT @@SESSION.old_passwords, @@GLOBAL.old_passwords;
+-------------------------+------------------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>@@SESSION.old_passwords</th>
<th>@@GLOBAL.old_passwords</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+-------------------------+------------------------+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
mysql> CREATE USER 'newuser'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'newpass';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.03 sec)
mysql> SET PASSWORD FOR 'existinguser'@'localhost' = PASSWORD('existingpass');
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)
```

The following scenarios are possible in MySQL 4.1 or later. The factors are whether the `Password` column is short or long, and, if long, whether the server is started with `old_passwords` enabled or disabled.

**Scenario 1:** Short `Password` column in user table:

- Only short hashes can be stored in the `Password` column.
- The server uses only short hashes during client authentication.
- For connected clients, password hash-generating operations involving the `PASSWORD()` function or password-generating statements use short hashes exclusively. Any change to an account's password results in that account having a short password hash.
- The value of `old_passwords` is irrelevant because with a short `Password` column, the server generates only short password hashes anyway.
This scenario occurs when a pre-4.1 MySQL installation has been upgraded to 4.1 or later but mysql_upgrade has not been run to upgrade the system tables in the mysql database. (This is not a recommended configuration because it does not permit use of more secure 4.1 password hashing.)

**Scenario 2:** Long Password column; server started with old_passwords=1:

- Short or long hashes can be stored in the Password column.
- 4.1 and later clients can authenticate for accounts that have short or long hashes.
- Pre-4.1 clients can authenticate only for accounts that have short hashes.
- For connected clients, password hash-generating operations involving the PASSWORD() function or password-generating statements use short hashes exclusively. Any change to an account's password results in that account having a short password hash.

In this scenario, newly created accounts have short password hashes because old_passwords=1 prevents generation of long hashes. Also, if you create an account with a long hash before setting old_passwords to 1, changing the account's password while old_passwords=1 results in the account being given a short password, causing it to lose the security benefits of a longer hash.

To create a new account that has a long password hash, or to change the password of any existing account to use a long hash, first set the session value of old_passwords set to 0 while leaving the global value set to 1, as described previously.

In this scenario, the server has an up to date Password column, but is running with the default password hashing method set to generate pre-4.1 hash values. This is not a recommended configuration but may be useful during a transitional period in which pre-4.1 clients and passwords are upgraded to 4.1 or later. When that has been done, it is preferable to run the server with old_passwords=0 and secure_auth=1.

**Scenario 3:** Long Password column; server started with old_passwords=0:

- Short or long hashes can be stored in the Password column.
- 4.1 and later clients can authenticate using accounts that have short or long hashes.
- Pre-4.1 clients can authenticate only using accounts that have short hashes.
- For connected clients, password hash-generating operations involving the PASSWORD() function or password-generating statements use long hashes exclusively. A change to an account's password results in that account having a long password hash.

As indicated earlier, a danger in this scenario is that it is possible for accounts that have a short password hash to become inaccessible to pre-4.1 clients. A change to such an account's password made using the PASSWORD() function or a password-generating statement results in the account being given a long password hash. From that point on, no pre-4.1 client can connect to the server using that account. The client must upgrade to 4.1 or later.

If this is a problem, you can change a password in a special way. For example, normally you use SET PASSWORD as follows to change an account password:

```
SET PASSWORD FOR 'some_user'@'some_host' = PASSWORD('password');
```

To change the password but create a short hash, use the OLD_PASSWORD() function instead:

```
SET PASSWORD FOR 'some_user'@'some_host' = OLD_PASSWORD('password');
```

OLD_PASSWORD() is useful for situations in which you explicitly want to generate a short hash.
The disadvantages for each of the preceding scenarios may be summarized as follows:

In scenario 1, you cannot take advantage of longer hashes that provide more secure authentication.

In scenario 2, `old_passwords=1` prevents accounts with short hashes from becoming inaccessible, but password-changing operations cause accounts with long hashes to revert to short hashes unless you take care to change the session value of `old_passwords` to 0 first.

In scenario 3, accounts with short hashes become inaccessible to pre-4.1 clients if you change their passwords without explicitly using `OLD_PASSWORD()`.

The best way to avoid compatibility problems related to short password hashes is to not use them:

- Upgrade all client programs to MySQL 4.1 or later.
- Run the server with `old_passwords=0`.
- Reset the password for any account with a short password hash to use a long password hash.
- For additional security, run the server with `secure_auth=1`.

### 2.3 Making MySQL Secure Against Attackers

When you connect to a MySQL server, you should use a password. The password is not transmitted in clear text over the connection. Password handling during the client connection sequence was upgraded in MySQL 4.1.1 to be very secure. If you are still using pre-4.1.1-style passwords, the encryption algorithm is not as strong as the newer algorithm. With some effort, a clever attacker who can sniff the traffic between the client and the server can crack the password. (See Section 2.2.4, “Password Hashing in MySQL”, for a discussion of the different password handling methods.)

All other information is transferred as text, and can be read by anyone who is able to watch the connection. If the connection between the client and the server goes through an untrusted network, and you are concerned about this, you can use the compressed protocol to make traffic much more difficult to decipher. You can also use MySQL’s internal SSL support to make the connection even more secure. See Chapter 6, Using Encrypted Connections. Alternatively, use SSH to get an encrypted TCP/IP connection between a MySQL server and a MySQL client. You can find an Open Source SSH client at [http://www.openssh.org/](http://www.openssh.org/), and a comparison of both Open Source and Commercial SSH clients at [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_SSH_clients](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_SSH_clients).

To make a MySQL system secure, you should strongly consider the following suggestions:

- Require all MySQL accounts to have a password. A client program does not necessarily know the identity of the person running it. It is common for client/server applications that the user can specify any user name to the client program. For example, anyone can use the `mysql` program to connect as any other person simply by invoking it as `mysql -u other_user db_name` if `other_user` has no password. If all accounts have a password, connecting using another user’s account becomes much more difficult.

  For a discussion of methods for setting passwords, see Section 5.6, “Assigning Account Passwords”.

- Make sure that the only Unix user account with read or write privileges in the database directories is the account that is used for running `mysqld`.

- Never run the MySQL server as the Unix `root` user. This is extremely dangerous, because any user with the `FILE` privilege is able to cause the server to create files as `root` (for example, `~root/.bashrc`). To prevent this, `mysqld` refuses to run as `root` unless that is specified explicitly using the `--user=root` option.

  `mysqld` can (and should) be run as an ordinary, unprivileged user instead. You can create a separate Unix account named `mysql` to make everything even more secure. Use this account only for administering MySQL. To start `mysqld` as a different Unix user, add a `user` option that specifies
the user name in the [mysqld] group of the my.cnf option file where you specify server options. For example:

```
[mysqld]
user=mysql
```

This causes the server to start as the designated user whether you start it manually or by using mysqld_safe or mysql.server. For more details, see Section 2.5, “How to Run MySQL as a Normal User”.

Running mysqld as a Unix user other than root does not mean that you need to change the root user name in the user table. User names for MySQL accounts have nothing to do with user names for Unix accounts.

• Do not grant the FILE privilege to nonadministrative users. Any user that has this privilege can write a file anywhere in the file system with the privileges of the mysqld daemon. This includes the server's data directory containing the files that implement the privilege tables. To make FILE-privilege operations a bit safer, files generated with `SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE` do not overwrite existing files and are writable by everyone.

The FILE privilege may also be used to read any file that is world-readable or accessible to the Unix user that the server runs as. With this privilege, you can read any file into a database table. This could be abused, for example, by using LOAD DATA to load /etc/passwd into a table, which then can be displayed with `SELECT`.

To limit the location in which files can be read and written, set the `secure_file_priv` system to a specific directory. See Server System Variables.

• Do not grant the PROCESS or SUPER privilege to nonadministrative users. The output of `mysqladmin processlist` and SHOW PROCESSLIST shows the text of any statements currently being executed, so any user who is permitted to see the server process list might be able to see statements issued by other users such as `UPDATE user SET password=PASSWORD('not_secure')`.

mysqld reserves an extra connection for users who have the SUPER privilege, so that a MySQL root user can log in and check server activity even if all normal connections are in use.

The SUPER privilege can be used to terminate client connections, change server operation by changing the value of system variables, and control replication servers.

• Do not permit the use of symlinks to tables. (This capability can be disabled with the `--skip-symbolic-links` option.) This is especially important if you run mysqld as root, because anyone that has write access to the server’s data directory then could delete any file in the system! See Using Symbolic Links for MyISAM Tables on Unix.

• Stored programs and views should be written using the security guidelines discussed in Access Control for Stored Programs and Views.

• If you do not trust your DNS, you should use IP addresses rather than host names in the grant tables. In any case, you should be very careful about creating grant table entries using host name values that contain wildcards.

• If you want to restrict the number of connections permitted to a single account, you can do so by setting the `max_user_connections` variable in mysqld. The CREATE USER and ALTER USER statements also support resource control options for limiting the extent of server use permitted to an account. See CREATE USER Syntax, and ALTER USER Syntax.

• If the plugin directory is writable by the server, it may be possible for a user to write executable code to a file in the directory using `SELECT ... INTO DUMPFILE`. This can be prevented by making `plugin_dir` read only to the server or by setting `--secure-file-priv` to a directory where `SELECT` writes can be made safely.
2.4 Security-Related `mysqld` Options and Variables

The following table shows `mysqld` options and system variables that affect security. For descriptions of each of these, see Server Command Options, and Server System Variables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Cmd-Line</th>
<th>Option File</th>
<th>System Var</th>
<th>Status Var</th>
<th>Var Scope</th>
<th>Dyn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>allow-suspicious-udfs</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>automatic_sp_privileges</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chroot</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des-key-file</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_infile</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old_passwords</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Both</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe-user-create</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secure-auth</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Variable:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secure_auth</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secure-file-priv</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Variable:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>secure_file_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skip-grant-tables</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skip-name-resolve</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Variable:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skip_name_resolve</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skip-networking</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Variable:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skip_networking</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skip-show-database</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Variable:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skip_show_database</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.5 How to Run MySQL as a Normal User

On Windows, you can run the server as a Windows service using a normal user account.

On Linux, for installations performed using a MySQL repository, RPM packages, or Debian packages, the MySQL server `mysqld` should be started by the local `mysql` operating system user. Starting by another operating system user is not supported by the init scripts that are included as part of the installation.

On Unix (or Linux for installations performed using `tar` or `tar.gz` packages), the MySQL server `mysqld` can be started and run by any user. However, you should avoid running the server as the Unix `root` user for security reasons. To change `mysqld` to run as a normal unprivileged Unix user `user_name`, you must do the following:

1. Stop the server if it is running (use `mysqladmin shutdown`).

2. Change the database directories and files so that `user_name` has privileges to read and write files in them (you might need to do this as the Unix `root` user):
Security Issues with LOAD DATA LOCAL

The LOAD DATA statement can load a file located on the server host, or, if the LOCAL keyword is specified, on the client host.

There are two potential security issues with the LOCAL version of LOAD DATA:

- The transfer of the file from the client host to the server host is initiated by the MySQL server. In theory, a patched server could be built that would tell the client program to transfer a file of the server's choosing rather than the file named by the client in the LOAD DATA statement. Such a server could access any file on the client host to which the client user has read access. (A patched server could in fact reply with a file-transfer request to any statement, not just LOAD DATA LOCAL, so a more fundamental issue is that clients should not connect to untrusted servers.)

- In a Web environment where the clients are connecting from a Web server, a user could use LOAD DATA LOCAL to read any files that the Web server process has read access to (assuming that a user could run any statement against the SQL server). In this environment, the client with respect to the MySQL server actually is the Web server, not a remote program being run by users who connect to the Web server.

To avoid LOAD DATA issues, clients should avoid using LOCAL. To avoid connecting to untrusted servers, clients can establish a secure connection and verify the server identity by connecting using the --ssl-mode=VERIFY_IDENTITY option and the appropriate CA certificate.

To enable administrators and applications to manage the local data loading capability, LOCAL configuration works like this:

- On the server side:
  - The local_infile system variable controls server-side LOCAL capability. Depending on the local_infile setting, the server refuses or permits local data loading by clients that have LOCAL enabled on the client side. By default, local_infile is enabled.
To explicitly cause the server to refuse or permit `LOAD DATA LOCAL` statements (regardless of how client programs and libraries are configured at build time or runtime), start `mysqld` with `local_infile` disabled or enabled, respectively. `local_infile` can also be set at runtime.

On the client side:

The `ENABLED_LOCAL_INFILE CMake` option controls the compiled-in default `LOCAL` capability for the MySQL client library. Clients that make no explicit arrangements therefore have `LOCAL` capability disabled or enabled according to the `ENABLED_LOCAL_INFILE` setting specified at MySQL build time.

By default, the client library in MySQL binary distributions is compiled with `ENABLED_LOCAL_INFILE` enabled. If you compile MySQL from source, configure it with `ENABLED_LOCAL_INFILE` disabled or enabled based on whether clients that make no explicit arrangements should have `LOCAL` capability disabled or enabled, respectively.

Clients programs that use the C API can control load data loading explicitly by invoking `mysql_options()` to disable or enable the `MYSQL_OPT_LOCAL_INFILE` option. See `mysql_options()`.

For the `mysql` client, local data loading is disabled by default. To disable or enable it explicitly, use the `--local-infile=0` or `--local-infile[=1]` option.

For the `mysqlimport` client, local data loading is disabled by default. To disable or enable it explicitly, use the `--local=0` or `--local[=1]` option.

If you use `LOAD DATA LOCAL` in Perl scripts or other programs that read the `[client]` group from option files, you can add an `local-infile` option setting to that group. To prevent problems for programs that do not understand this option, specify it using the `loose-` prefix:

```
[client]
loose-local-infile=0
```

or:

```
[client]
loose-local-infile=1
```

In all cases, successful use of a `LOCAL` load operation by a client also requires that the server permits it.

If `LOCAL` capability is disabled, on either the server or client side, a client that attempts to issue a `LOAD DATA LOCAL` statement receives the following error message:

```
ERROR 1148: The used command is not allowed with this MySQL version
```

### 2.7 Client Programming Security Guidelines

Applications that access MySQL should not trust any data entered by users, who can try to trick your code by entering special or escaped character sequences in Web forms, URLs, or whatever application you have built. Be sure that your application remains secure if a user enters something like `; DROP DATABASE mysql;`. This is an extreme example, but large security leaks and data loss might occur as a result of hackers using similar techniques, if you do not prepare for them.

A common mistake is to protect only string data values. Remember to check numeric data as well. If an application generates a query such as `SELECT * FROM table WHERE ID=234` when a user enters the value `234`, the user can enter the value `234 OR 1=1` to cause the application to generate the
query SELECT * FROM table WHERE ID=234 OR 1=1. As a result, the server retrieves every row in the table. This exposes every row and causes excessive server load. The simplest way to protect from this type of attack is to use single quotation marks around the numeric constants: SELECT * FROM table WHERE ID='234'. If the user enters extra information, it all becomes part of the string. In a numeric context, MySQL automatically converts this string to a number and strips any trailing nonnumeric characters from it.

Sometimes people think that if a database contains only publicly available data, it need not be protected. This is incorrect. Even if it is permissible to display any row in the database, you should still protect against denial of service attacks (for example, those that are based on the technique in the preceding paragraph that causes the server to waste resources). Otherwise, your server becomes unresponsive to legitimate users.

Checklist:

- Enable strict SQL mode to tell the server to be more restrictive of what data values it accepts. See Server SQL Modes.
- Try to enter single and double quotation marks (’ and ") in all of your Web forms. If you get any kind of MySQL error, investigate the problem right away.
- Try to modify dynamic URLs by adding %22 ("), %23 (#), and %27 (’) to them.
- Try to modify data types in dynamic URLs from numeric to character types using the characters shown in the previous examples. Your application should be safe against these and similar attacks.
- Try to enter characters, spaces, and special symbols rather than numbers in numeric fields. Your application should remove them before passing them to MySQL or else generate an error. Passing unchecked values to MySQL is very dangerous!
- Check the size of data before passing it to MySQL.
- Have your application connect to the database using a user name different from the one you use for administrative purposes. Do not give your applications any access privileges they do not need.

Many application programming interfaces provide a means of escaping special characters in data values. Properly used, this prevents application users from entering values that cause the application to generate statements that have a different effect than you intend:

- MySQL C API: Use the mysql_real_escape_string_quote() API call.
- MySQL++: Use the escape and quote modifiers for query streams.
- PHP: Use either the mysqli or pdo_mysql extensions, and not the older ext/mysql extension. The preferred API's support the improved MySQL authentication protocol and passwords, as well as prepared statements with placeholders. See also Choosing an API.

If the older ext/mysql extension must be used, then for escaping use the mysql_real_escape_string_quote() function and not mysql_escape_string() or addslashes() because only mysql_real_escape_string_quote() is character set-aware; the other functions can be “bypassed” when using (invalid) multibyte character sets.

- Perl DBI: Use placeholders or the quote() method.
- Ruby DBI: Use placeholders or the quote() method.
- Java JDBC: Use a PreparedStatement object and placeholders.

Other programming interfaces might have similar capabilities.
Chapter 3 Postinstallation Setup and Testing

Table of Contents

3.1 Initializing the Data Directory ................................................................. 19
3.1.1 Initializing the Data Directory Manually Using mysqld .......................... 21
3.2 Starting the Server .................................................................................. 24
3.2.1 Troubleshooting Problems Starting the MySQL Server ......................... 25
3.3 Testing the Server .................................................................................. 27
3.4 Securing the Initial MySQL Account ....................................................... 29
3.5 Starting and Stopping MySQL Automatically .......................................... 31

This section discusses tasks that you should perform after installing MySQL:

- If necessary, initialize the data directory and create the MySQL grant tables. For some MySQL installation methods, data directory initialization may be done for you automatically:
  - Windows installation operations performed by MySQL Installer.
  - Installation on Linux using a server RPM or Debian distribution from Oracle.
  - Installation using the native packaging system on many platforms, including Debian Linux, Ubuntu Linux, Gentoo Linux, and others.
  - Installation on OS X using a DMG distribution.

For other platforms and installation types, including installation from generic binary and source distributions, you must initialize the data directory yourself. For instructions, see Section 3.1, “Initializing the Data Directory”.

- Start the server and make sure that it can be accessed. For instructions, see Section 3.2, “Starting the Server”, and Section 3.3, “Testing the Server”.

- Assign passwords to the initial root account in the grant tables, if that was not already done during data directory initialization. Passwords prevent unauthorized access to the MySQL server. For instructions, see Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account”.

- Optionally, arrange for the server to start and stop automatically when your system starts and stops. For instructions, see Section 3.5, “Starting and Stopping MySQL Automatically”.

- Optionally, populate time zone tables to enable recognition of named time zones. For instructions, see MySQL Server Time Zone Support.

When you are ready to create additional user accounts, you can find information on the MySQL access control system and account management in Chapter 4, The MySQL Access Privilege System, and Chapter 5, MySQL User Account Management.

3.1 Initializing the Data Directory

After installing MySQL, the data directory, including the tables in the mysql system database, must be initialized. For some MySQL installation methods, data directory initialization can be done automatically, as described in Chapter 3, Postinstallation Setup and Testing. For other installation methods, including installation from generic binary and source distributions, you must initialize the data directory yourself.

This section describes how to initialize the data directory on Unix and Unix-like systems. (For Windows, see Windows Postinstallation Procedures.) For some suggested commands that you can use to test whether the server is accessible and working properly, see Section 3.3, “Testing the Server”.

19
In the examples shown here, the server is going to run under the user ID of the mysql login account. This assumes that such an account exists. Either create the account if it does not exist, or substitute the name of a different existing login account that you plan to use for running the server. For information about creating the account, see Creating a mysql System User and Group, in Installing MySQL on Unix/Linux Using Generic Binaries.

1. Change location into the top-level directory of your MySQL installation directory, which is typically /usr/local/mysql:

   shell> cd /usr/local/mysql

   You will find several files and subdirectories inside the folder, including the bin subdirectory, which contains the server as well as the client and utility programs.

2. Create a directory whose location can be provided to the secure_file_priv system variable, which limits import/export operations to that specific directory:

   shell> mkdir mysql-files

   Grant ownership of the directory to the mysql user and group ownership to the mysql group, and set the right permissions for the directory:

   shell> chown mysql:mysql mysql-files
   shell> chmod 750 mysql-files

3. Initialize the data directory, including the mysql database containing the initial MySQL grant tables that determine how users are permitted to connect to the server.

   Typically, data directory initialization need be done only after you first installed MySQL. (If you are upgrading an existing installation, you should perform the upgrade procedure instead; see Upgrading MySQL.) However, the command that initializes the data directory does not overwrite any existing privilege tables, so it should be safe to run in any circumstances. Use the server to initialize the data directory; for example:

   shell> bin/mysqld --initialize --user=mysql

   See Section 3.1.1, “Initializing the Data Directory Manually Using mysqld” for some important information on the command, especially on the command options you might use.

   **Note**

   Initialization of the data directory might fail because some required software libraries are missing from your system. For example:

   shell> bin/mysqld --initialize --user=mysql
   bin/mysqld: error while loading shared libraries: libnuma.so.1: cannot open shared object file: No such file or directory

   When this happens, you have to install the missing libraries manually or with your system's package manager before retrying the data directory initialization.

4. If you want the server to be able to deploy with automatic support for secure connections, use the mysql_ssl_rsa_setup utility to create default SSL and RSA files:

   shell> bin/mysql_ssl_rsa_setup

   For more information, see mysql_ssl_rsa_setup — Create SSL/RSA Files.
5. If the plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable) is writable by the server, it may be possible for a user to write executable code to a file in the directory using `SELECT ... INTO DUMPFILE`. This can be prevented by making the plugin directory read only to the server or by setting the `secure_file_priv` system variable at server startup to a directory where `SELECT` writes can be performed safely. (For example, set it to the `mysql-files` directory created earlier.)

6. To specify options that the MySQL server should use at startup, put them in a `/etc/my.cnf` or `/etc/mysql/my.cnf` file. You can use such a file to set, for example, the `secure_file_priv` system variable. See `Server Configuration Defaults`. If you do not do this, the server starts with its default settings.

7. If you want MySQL to start automatically when you boot your machine, see Section 3.5, “Starting and Stopping MySQL Automatically”.

Data directory initialization creates time zone tables in the `mysql` database but does not populate them. To do so, use the instructions in `MySQL Server Time Zone Support`.

### 3.1.1 Initializing the Data Directory Manually Using `mysqld`

This section describes how to initialize the data directory using `mysqld`, the MySQL server.

The following instructions assume that your current location is the MySQL installation directory, represented here by `BASEDIR`:

```shell
shell> cd BASEDIR
```

To initialize the data directory, invoke `mysqld` with the `--initialize` or `--initialize-insecure` option, depending on whether you want the server to generate a random initial password for the `'root'@'localhost'` account.

On Windows, use one of these commands:

```text
C:\> bin\mysqld --initialize --console
C:\> bin\mysqld --initialize-insecure --console
```

On Unix and Unix-like systems, it is important to make sure that the database directories and files are owned by the `mysql` login account so that the server has read and write access to them when you run it later. To ensure this, start `mysqld` from the system `root` account and include the `--user` option as shown here:

```shell
shell> bin/mysqld --initialize --user=mysql
shell> bin/mysqld --initialize-insecure --user=mysql
```

Otherwise, execute the program while logged in as `mysql`, in which case you can omit the `--user` option from the command.

Regardless of platform, use `--initialize` for “secure by default” installation (that is, including generation of a random initial `root` password). In this case, the password is marked as expired and you will need to choose a new one. With the `--initialize-insecure` option, no `root` password is generated; it is assumed that you will assign a password to the account in timely fashion before putting the server into production use.

It might be necessary to specify other options such as `--basedir` or `--datadir` if `mysqld` cannot identify the correct locations for the installation directory or data directory. For example (enter the command on one line):

```shell
shell> bin/mysqld --initialize --user=mysql
     --basedir=/opt/mysql/mysql
     --datadir=/opt/mysql/mysql/data
```
Alternatively, put the relevant option settings in an option file and pass the name of that file to `mysqld`. For Unix and Unix-like systems, suppose that the option file name is `/opt/mysql/mysql/etc/my.cnf`. Put these lines in the file:

```plaintext
[mysqld]
basedir=/opt/mysql/mysql
datadir=/opt/mysql/mysql/data
```

Then invoke `mysqld` as follows (enter the command on a single line with the `--defaults-file` option first):

```bash
shell> bin/mysqld --defaults-file=/opt/mysql/mysql/etc/my.cnf --initialize --user=mysql
```

On Windows, suppose that `C:\my.ini` contains these lines:

```plaintext
[mysqld]
basedir=C:\Program Files\MySQL\MySQL Server 5.7
datadir=D:\MySQLdata
```

Then invoke `mysqld` as follows (the `--defaults-file` option must be first):

```bash
C:\> bin/mysqld --defaults-file=C:\my.ini --initialize --console
```

When invoked with the `--initialize` or `--initialize-insecure` option, `mysqld` performs the following initialization sequence.

### Note

The server writes any messages to its standard error output. This may be redirected to the error log, so look there if you do not see the messages on your screen. For information about the error log, including where it is located, see [The Error Log](#). On Windows, use the `--console` option to direct messages to the console.

1. The server checks for the existence of the data directory as follows:
   - If no data directory exists, the server creates it.
   - If a data directory exists but is not empty (that is, it contains files or subdirectories), the server exits after producing an error message:

   ```plaintext
   [ERROR] --initialize specified but the data directory exists. Aborting.
   ```

   In this case, remove or rename the data directory and try again.

   As of MySQL 5.7.11, an existing data directory is permitted to be nonempty if every entry either has a name that begins with a period (.) or is named using an `--ignore-db-dir` option.

   ### Note

   Avoid the use of the `--ignore-db-dir` option, which has been deprecated since MySQL 5.7.16.

2. Within the data directory, the server creates the `mysql` system database and its tables, including the grant tables, server-side help tables, and time zone tables. For a complete listing and description of the grant tables, see [Chapter 4, The MySQL Access Privilege System](#).
3. The server initializes the system tablespace and related data structures needed to manage InnoDB tables.

**Note**

After `mysqld` sets up the InnoDB system tablespace, changes to some tablespace characteristics require setting up a whole new instance. This includes the file name of the first file in the system tablespace and the number of undo logs. If you do not want to use the default values, make sure that the settings for the `innodb_data_file_path` and `innodb_log_file_size` configuration parameters are in place in the MySQL configuration file before running `mysqld`. Also make sure to specify as necessary other parameters that affect the creation and location of InnoDB files, such as `innodb_data_home_dir` and `innodb_log_group_home_dir`.

If those options are in your configuration file but that file is not in a location that MySQL reads by default, specify the file location using the `--defaults-extra-file` option when you run `mysqld`.

4. The server creates a 'root'@'localhost' superuser account and other reserved accounts (see Section 5.4, “Reserved User Accounts”). Some reserved accounts are locked and cannot be used by clients, but 'root'@'localhost' is intended for administrative use and you should assign it a password.

   The server's action with respect to a password for the 'root'@'localhost' account depends on how you invoke it:

   - With `--initialize` but not `--initialize-insecure`, the server generates a random password, marks it as expired, and writes a message displaying the password:

     ```
     [Warning] A temporary password is generated for root@localhost: 
     iTag*AfrH5ej
     ```

   - With `--initialize-insecure`, (either with or without `--initialize` because `--initialize-insecure` implies `--initialize`), the server does not generate a password or mark it expired, and writes a warning message:

     ```
     Warning] root@localhost is created with an empty password ! Please consider switching off the --initialize-insecure option.
     ```

     See later in this section for instructions on assigning a new 'root'@'localhost' password.

5. The server populates the server-side help tables if content is available (in the `fill_help_tables.sql` file). The server does not populate the time zone tables; to do so, see MySQL Server Time Zone Support.

6. If the `--init-file` option was given to name a file of SQL statements, the server executes the statements in the file. This option enables you to perform custom bootstrapping sequences.

   When the server operates in bootstrap mode, some functionality is unavailable that limits the statements permitted in the file. These include statements that relate to account management (such as `CREATE USER` or `GRANT`), replication, and global transaction identifiers.

7. The server exits.

   After you initialize the data directory by starting the server with `--initialize` or `--initialize-insecure`, start the server normally (that is, without either of those options) and assign the 'root'@'localhost' account a new password:

   1. Start the server. For instructions, see Section 3.2, “Starting the Server”.
2. Connect to the server:

- If you used `--initialize` but not `--initialize-insecure` to initialize the data directory, connect to the server as `root` using the random password that the server generated during the initialization sequence:

```
shell> mysql -u root -p
Enter password: (enter the random root password here)
```

Look in the server error log if you do not know this password.

- If you used `--initialize-insecure` to initialize the data directory, connect to the server as `root` without a password:

```
shell> mysql -u root --skip-password
```

3. After connecting, assign a new `root` password:

```
mysql> ALTER USER 'root'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'new_password';
```

**Note**

An attempt to connect to the host `127.0.0.1` normally resolves to the `localhost` account. However, this fails if the server is run with the `--skip-name-resolve` option. If you plan to do that, make sure that an account exists that can accept a connection. For example, to be able to connect as `root` using `--host=127.0.0.1` or `--host=:1`, create these accounts:

```
CREATE USER 'root'@'127.0.0.1' IDENTIFIED BY 'root-password';
CREATE USER 'root'@'::1' IDENTIFIED BY 'root-password';
```

It is possible to put those statements in a file to be executed by the `--init-file` option discussed previously.

**Note**

The data directory initialization sequence performed by the server does not substitute for the actions performed by `mysql_secure_installation` or `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup`. See `mysql_secure_installation — Improve MySQL Installation Security`, and `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup — Create SSL/RSA Files`.

### 3.2 Starting the Server

This section describes how start the server on Unix and Unix-like systems. (For Windows, see Starting the Server for the First Time.) For some suggested commands that you can use to test whether the server is accessible and working properly, see Section 3.3, “Testing the Server”.

Start the MySQL server like this if your installation includes `mysqld_safe`:

```
shell> bin/mysqld_safe --user=mysql &
```

**Note**

For Linux systems on which MySQL is installed using RPM packages, server startup and shutdown is managed using systemd rather than `mysqld_safe`, and `mysqld_safe` is not installed. See Managing MySQL Server with systemd.

Start the server like this if your installation includes systemd support:
Troubleshooting Problems Starting the MySQL Server

Shell> systemctl start mysqld

Substitute the appropriate service name if it differs from `mysqld`; for example, `mysql` on SLES systems.

It is important that the MySQL server be run using an unprivileged (non-root) login account. To ensure this, run `mysqld_safe` as root and include the `--user` option as shown. Otherwise, you should execute the program while logged in as `mysql`, in which case you can omit the `--user` option from the command.

For further instructions for running MySQL as an unprivileged user, see Section 2.5, “How to Run MySQL as a Normal User”.

If the command fails immediately and prints `mysqld ended`, look for information in the error log (which by default is the `host_name.err` file in the data directory).

If the server is unable to access the data directory it starts or read the grant tables in the `mysql` database, it writes a message to its error log. Such problems can occur if you neglected to create the grant tables by initializing the data directory before proceeding to this step, or if you ran the command that initializes the data directory without the `--user` option. Remove the data directory and run the command with the `--user` option.

If you have other problems starting the server, see Section 3.2.1, “Troubleshooting Problems Starting the MySQL Server”. For more information about `mysqld_safe`, see `mysqld_safe — MySQL Server Startup Script`. For more information about systemd support, see Managing MySQL Server with systemctl.

3.2.1 Troubleshooting Problems Starting the MySQL Server

This section provides troubleshooting suggestions for problems starting the server. For additional suggestions for Windows systems, see Troubleshooting a Microsoft Windows MySQL Server Installation.

If you have problems starting the server, here are some things to try:

- Check the error log to see why the server does not start. Log files are located in the data directory (typically `C:\Program Files\MySQL\MySQL Server 5.7\data` on Windows, `/usr/local/mysql/data` for a Unix/Linux binary distribution, and `/usr/local/var` for a Unix/Linux source distribution). Look in the data directory for files with names of the form `host_name.err` and `host_name.log`, where `host_name` is the name of your server host. Then examine the last few lines of these files. Use `tail` to display them:

  Shell> tail host_name.err
  Shell> tail host_name.log

- Specify any special options needed by the storage engines you are using. You can create a `my.cnf` file and specify startup options for the engines that you plan to use. If you are going to use storage engines that support transactional tables (InnoDB, NDB), be sure that you have configured them the way you want before starting the server. If you are using InnoDB tables, see InnoDB Configuration for guidelines and InnoDB Startup Options and System Variables for option syntax.

  Although storage engines use default values for options that you omit, Oracle recommends that you review the available options and specify explicit values for any options whose defaults are not appropriate for your installation.

- Make sure that the server knows where to find the data directory. The `mysqld` server uses this directory as its current directory. This is where it expects to find databases and where it expects to write log files. The server also writes the pid (process ID) file in the data directory.

  The default data directory location is hardcoded when the server is compiled. To determine what the default path settings are, invoke `mysqld` with the `--verbose` and `--help` options. If the data
directory is located somewhere else on your system, specify that location with the --datadir option to mysqld or mysqld_safe, on the command line or in an option file. Otherwise, the server will not work properly. As an alternative to the --datadir option, you can specify mysqld the location of the base directory under which MySQL is installed with the --basedir, and mysqld looks for the data directory there.

To check the effect of specifying path options, invoke mysqld with those options followed by the --verbose and --help options. For example, if you change location into the directory where mysqld is installed and then run the following command, it shows the effect of starting the server with a base directory of /usr/local:

```
shell> ./mysqld --basedir=/usr/local --verbose --help
```

You can specify other options such as --datadir as well, but --verbose and --help must be the last options.

Once you determine the path settings you want, start the server without --verbose and --help.

If mysql is currently running, you can find out what path settings it is using by executing this command:

```
shell> mysqladmin variables
```

Or:

```
shell> mysqladmin -h host_name variables
```

host_name is the name of the MySQL server host.

• Make sure that the server can access the data directory. The ownership and permissions of the data directory and its contents must allow the server to read and modify them.

If you get Errcode 13 (which means Permission denied) when starting mysqld, this means that the privileges of the data directory or its contents do not permit server access. In this case, you change the permissions for the involved files and directories so that the server has the right to use them. You can also start the server as root, but this raises security issues and should be avoided.

Change location into the data directory and check the ownership of the data directory and its contents to make sure the server has access. For example, if the data directory is /usr/local/mysql/var, use this command:

```
shell> ls -la /usr/local/mysql/var
```

If the data directory or its files or subdirectories are not owned by the login account that you use for running the server, change their ownership to that account. If the account is named mysql, use these commands:

```
shell> chown -R mysql /usr/local/mysql/var
shell> chgrp -R mysql /usr/local/mysql/var
```

Even with correct ownership, MySQL might fail to start up if there is other security software running on your system that manages application access to various parts of the file system. In this case, reconfigure that software to enable mysqld to access the directories it uses during normal operation.

• Verify that the network interfaces the server wants to use are available.

If either of the following errors occur, it means that some other program (perhaps another mysqld server) is using the TCP/IP port or Unix socket file that mysqld is trying to use:
Testing the Server

Can't start server: Bind on TCP/IP port: Address already in use
Can't start server: Bind on unix socket...

Use `ps` to determine whether you have another `mysqld` server running. If so, shut down the server before starting `mysqld` again. (If another server is running, and you really want to run multiple servers, you can find information about how to do so in Running Multiple MySQL Instances on One Machine.)

If no other server is running, execute the command `telnet your_host_name tcp_ip_port_number`. (The default MySQL port number is 3306.) Then press Enter a couple of times. If you do not get an error message like `telnet: Unable to connect to remote host: Connection refused`, some other program is using the TCP/IP port that `mysqld` is trying to use. Track down what program this is and disable it, or tell `mysqld` to listen to a different port with the `--port` option. In this case, specify the same non-default port number for client programs when connecting to the server using TCP/IP.

Another reason the port might be inaccessible is that you have a firewall running that blocks connections to it. If so, modify the firewall settings to permit access to the port.

If the server starts but you cannot connect to it, make sure that you have an entry in `/etc/hosts` that looks like this:

```
127.0.0.1 localhost
```

- If you cannot get `mysqld` to start, try to make a trace file to find the problem by using the `--debug` option. See The DBUG Package.

3.3 Testing the Server

After the data directory is initialized and you have started the server, perform some simple tests to make sure that it works satisfactorily. This section assumes that your current location is the MySQL installation directory and that it has a `bin` subdirectory containing the MySQL programs used here. If that is not true, adjust the command path names accordingly.

Alternatively, add the `bin` directory to your `PATH` environment variable setting. That enables your shell (command interpreter) to find MySQL programs properly, so that you can run a program by typing only its name, not its path name. See Setting Environment Variables.

Use `mysqladmin` to verify that the server is running. The following commands provide simple tests to check whether the server is up and responding to connections:

```
shell> bin/mysqladmin version
shell> bin/mysqladmin variables
```

If you cannot connect to the server, specify a `-u root` option to connect as `root`. If you have assigned a password for the `root` account already, you'll also need to specify `-p` on the command line and enter the password when prompted. For example:

```
shell> bin/mysqladmin -u root -p version
Enter password: (enter root password here)
```

The output from `mysqladmin version` varies slightly depending on your platform and version of MySQL, but should be similar to that shown here:

```
shell> bin/mysqladmin version
mysqladmin Ver 14.12 Distrib 5.7.26, for pc-linux-gnu on i686 ...
```
Testing the Server

Server version          5.7.26
Protocol version        10
Connection              Localhost via UNIX socket
UNIX socket             /var/lib/mysql/mysql.sock
Uptime:                 14 days 5 hours 5 min 21 sec
Threads: 1  Questions: 366  Slow queries: 0
Opens: 0  Flush tables: 1  Open tables: 19
Queries per second avg: 0.000

To see what else you can do with mysqladmin, invoke it with the --help option.

Verify that you can shut down the server (include a -p option if the root account has a password already):

shell> bin/mysqladmin -u root shutdown

Verify that you can start the server again. Do this by using mysqld_safe or by invoking mysqld directly. For example:

shell> bin/mysqld_safe --user=mysql &

If mysqld_safe fails, see Section 3.2.1, “Troubleshooting Problems Starting the MySQL Server”.

Run some simple tests to verify that you can retrieve information from the server. The output should be similar to that shown here.

Use mysqlshow to see what databases exist:

shell> bin/mysqlshow
+--------------------+
|     Databases      |
+--------------------+
| information_schema |
| mysql              |
| performance_schema |
| sys                |
+--------------------+

The list of installed databases may vary, but will always include the minimum of mysql and information_schema.

If you specify a database name, mysqlshow displays a list of the tables within the database:

shell> bin/mysqlshow mysql
Database: mysql
+---------------------------+
|          Tables           |
+---------------------------+
| columns_priv              |
| db                        |
| engine_cost               |
| event                     |
| func                      |
| general_log               |
| gtid_executed             |
| help_category             |
| help_keyword              |
| help_relation             |
| help_topic                |
| innodb_index_stats        |
| innodb_table_stats        |
| ndb_binlog_index          |
| plugin                    |
| proc                      |
| procs_priv                |
Securing the Initial MySQL Account

Use the `mysql` program to select information from a table in the `mysql` database:

```
shell> bin/mysql -e "SELECT User, Host, plugin FROM mysql.user" mysql
+------+-----------+-----------------------+
| User | Host      | plugin                |
+------+-----------+-----------------------+
| root | localhost | mysql_native_password |
```

At this point, your server is running and you can access it. To tighten security if you have not yet assigned a password to the initial account, follow the instructions in Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account”.

For more information about `mysql`, `mysqladmin`, and `mysqlshow`, see `mysql — The MySQL Command-Line Client`, `mysqladmin — Client for Administering a MySQL Server`, and `mysqlshow — Display Database, Table, and Column Information`.

3.4 Securing the Initial MySQL Account

The MySQL installation process involves initializing the data directory, including the `mysql` database containing the grant tables that define MySQL accounts. For details, see Chapter 3, Postinstallation Setup and Testing.

This section describes how to assign a password to the initial `root` account created during the MySQL installation procedure, if you have not already done so.

**Note**

On Windows, you can also perform the process described in this section during installation with MySQL Installer (see MySQL Installer for Windows). On all platforms, the MySQL distribution includes `mysql_secure_installation`, a command-line utility that automates much of the process of securing a MySQL installation. MySQL Workbench is available on all platforms, and also offers the ability to manage user accounts (see MySQL Workbench).

A password may already be assigned to the initial account under these circumstances:

- On Windows, installations performed using MySQL Installer give you the option of assigning a password.
- Installation using the macOS installer generates an initial random password, which the installer displays to the user in a dialog box.
- Installation using RPM packages generates an initial random password, which is written to the server error log.
- Installations using Debian packages give you the option of assigning a password.
Securing the Initial MySQL Account

- For data directory initialization performed manually using `mysqld --initialize`, `mysqld` generates an initial random password, marks it expired, and writes it to the server error log. For details, see Section 3.1.1, “Initializing the Data Directory Manually Using `mysqld`”.

The `mysql.user` grant table defines the initial MySQL user account and its access privileges. Installation of MySQL creates only a `root'@'localhost` superuser account that has all privileges and can do anything. If the `root` account has an empty password, your MySQL installation is unprotected: Anyone can connect to the MySQL server as `root` without a password and be granted all privileges.

The `root'@'localhost` account also has a row in the `mysql.proxies_priv` table that enables granting the `PROXY` privilege for `'@'`, that is, for all users and all hosts. This enables `root` to set up proxy users, as well as to delegate to other accounts the authority to set up proxy users. See Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”.

To assign a password for the initial MySQL `root` account, use the following procedure. Replace `new_password` in the examples with the password that you want to use.

Start the server if it is not running. For instructions, see Section 3.2, “Starting the Server”.

The initial `root` account may or may not have a password. Choose whichever of the following procedures applies:

- If the `root` account exists with an initial random password that has been expired, connect to the server as `root` using that password, then choose a new password. This is the case if the data directory was initialized using `mysqld --initialize`, either manually or using an installer that does not give you the option of specifying a password during the install operation. Because the password exists, you must use it to connect to the server. But because the password is expired, you cannot use the account for any purpose other than to choose a new password, until you do choose one.
  1. If you do not know the initial random password, look in the server error log.
  2. Connect to the server as `root` using the password:

```
shell> mysql -u root -p
Enter password: (enter the random root password here)
```

  3. Choose a new password to replace the random password:

```
mysql> ALTER USER 'root'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'new_password';
```

- If the `root` account exists but has no password, connect to the server as `root` using no password, then assign a password. This is the case if you initialized the data directory using `mysqld --initialize-insecure`.
  1. Connect to the server as `root` using no password:

```
shell> mysql --skip-password
```

  2. Assign a password:

```
mysql> ALTER USER 'root'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'new_password';
```

After assigning the `root` account a password, you must supply that password whenever you connect to the server using the account. For example, to connect to the server using the `mysql` client, use this command:
Starting and Stopping MySQL Automatically

3.5 Starting and Stopping MySQL Automatically

This section discusses methods for starting and stopping the MySQL server.

Generally, you start the `mysqld` server in one of these ways:

- Invoke `mysqld` directly. This works on any platform.
- On Windows, you can set up a MySQL service that runs automatically when Windows starts. See Starting MySQL as a Windows Service.
- On Unix and Unix-like systems, you can invoke `mysqld_safe`, which tries to determine the proper options for `mysqld` and then runs it with those options. See `mysqld_safe — MySQL Server Startup Script`.
- On Linux systems that support systemd, you can use it to control the server. See Managing MySQL Server with systemd.
- On systems that use System V-style run directories (that is, `/etc/init.d` and run-level specific directories), invoke `mysql.server`. This script is used primarily at system startup and shutdown. It usually is installed under the name `mysql`. The `mysql.server` script starts the server by invoking `mysqld_safe`. See `mysql.server — MySQL Server Startup Script`.
- On OS X, install a launchd daemon to enable automatic MySQL startup at system startup. The daemon starts the server by invoking `mysqld_safe`. For details, see Installing a MySQL Launch Daemon. A MySQL Preference Pane also provides control for starting and stopping MySQL through the System Preferences. See Installing and Using the MySQL Preference Pane.
- On Solaris, use the service management framework (SMF) system to initiate and control MySQL startup.

systemd, the `mysqld_safe` and `mysql.server` scripts, Solaris SMF, and the OS X Startup Item (or MySQL Preference Pane) can be used to start the server manually, or automatically at system startup time. systemd, `mysql.server`, and the Startup Item also can be used to stop the server.

The following table shows which option groups the server and startup scripts read from option files.

**Table 3.1 MySQL Startup Scripts and Supported Server Option Groups**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Script</th>
<th>Option Groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>mysqld</code></td>
<td><code>[mysqld],[server],[mysqld-major_version]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mysqld_safe</code></td>
<td><code>[mysqld],[server],[mysqld_safe]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mysql.server</code></td>
<td><code>[mysqld],[mysql.server],[server]</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
[mysqld-major_version] means that groups with names like [mysqld-5.6] and [mysqld-5.7] are read by servers having versions 5.6.x, 5.7.x, and so forth. This feature can be used to specify options that can be read only by servers within a given release series.

For backward compatibility, mysql.server also reads the [mysql_server] group and mysqld_safe also reads the [safe_mysqld] group. To be current, you should update your option files to use the [mysql.server] and [mysqld_safe] groups instead.

For more information on MySQL configuration files and their structure and contents, see Using Option Files.
Chapter 4 The MySQL Access Privilege System

Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.1 Privileges Provided by MySQL</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2 Grant Tables</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3 Specifying Account Names</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4 Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5 Access Control, Stage 2: Request Verification</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6 When Privilege Changes Take Effect</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7 Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The primary function of the MySQL privilege system is to authenticate a user who connects from a given host and to associate that user with privileges on a database such as `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE`. Additional functionality includes the ability to have anonymous users and to grant privileges for MySQL-specific functions such as `LOAD DATA` and administrative operations.

There are some things that you cannot do with the MySQL privilege system:

- You cannot explicitly specify that a given user should be denied access. That is, you cannot explicitly match a user and then refuse the connection.
- You cannot specify that a user has privileges to create or drop tables in a database but not to create or drop the database itself.
- A password applies globally to an account. You cannot associate a password with a specific object such as a database, table, or routine.

The user interface to the MySQL privilege system consists of SQL statements such as `CREATE USER`, `GRANT`, and `REVOKE`. See Account Management Statements.

Internally, the server stores privilege information in the grant tables of the `mysql` system database (that is, in the database named `mysql`). The MySQL server reads the contents of these tables into memory when it starts and bases access-control decisions on the in-memory copies of the grant tables.

The MySQL privilege system ensures that all users may perform only the operations permitted to them. As a user, when you connect to a MySQL server, your identity is determined by the host from which you connect and the user name you specify. When you issue requests after connecting, the system grants privileges according to your identity and what you want to do.

MySQL considers both your host name and user name in identifying you because there is no reason to assume that a given user name belongs to the same person on all hosts. For example, the user `joe` who connects from `office.example.com` need not be the same person as the user `joe` who connects from `home.example.com`. MySQL handles this by enabling you to distinguish users on different hosts that happen to have the same name: You can grant one set of privileges for connections by `joe` from `office.example.com`, and a different set of privileges for connections by `joe` from `home.example.com`. To see what privileges a given account has, use the `SHOW GRANTS` statement. For example:

```sql
SHOW GRANTS FOR 'joe'@'office.example.com';
SHOW GRANTS FOR 'joe'@'home.example.com';
```

MySQL access control involves two stages when you run a client program that connects to the server:

**Stage 1:** The server accepts or rejects the connection based on your identity and whether you can verify your identity by supplying the correct password.

**Stage 2:** Assuming that you can connect, the server checks each statement you issue to determine whether you have sufficient privileges to perform it. For example, if you try to select rows from a table...
in a database or drop a table from the database, the server verifies that you have the `SELECT` privilege for the table or the `DROP` privilege for the database.

For a more detailed description of what happens during each stage, see Section 4.4, “Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification”, and Section 4.5, “Access Control, Stage 2: Request Verification”.

If your privileges are changed (either by yourself or someone else) while you are connected, those changes do not necessarily take effect immediately for the next statement that you issue. For details about the conditions under which the server reloads the grant tables, see Section 4.6, “When Privilege Changes Take Effect”.

For general security-related advice, see Chapter 2, General Security Issues. For help in diagnosing privilege-related problems, see Section 4.7, “Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL”.

### 4.1 Privileges Provided by MySQL

The privileges granted to a MySQL account determine which operations the account can perform. MySQL privileges differ in the contexts in which they apply and at different levels of operation:

- Administrative privileges enable users to manage operation of the MySQL server. These privileges are global because they are not specific to a particular database.

- Database privileges apply to a database and to all objects within it. These privileges can be granted for specific databases, or globally so that they apply to all databases.

- Privileges for database objects such as tables, indexes, views, and stored routines can be granted for specific objects within a database, for all objects of a given type within a database (for example, all tables in a database), or globally for all objects of a given type in all databases.

Information about account privileges is stored in the grant tables in the `mysql` system database. For a description of the structure and contents of these tables, see Section 4.2, “Grant Tables”. The MySQL server reads the contents of the grant tables into memory when it starts, and reloads them under the circumstances indicated in Section 4.6, “When Privilege Changes Take Effect”. The server bases access-control decisions on the in-memory copies of the grant tables.

**Important**

Some MySQL releases introduce changes to the grant tables to add new privileges or features. To make sure that you can take advantage of any new capabilities, update your grant tables to the current structure whenever you upgrade MySQL. See `mysql_upgrade` — Check and Upgrade MySQL Tables.

The following sections summarize the available privileges, provide more detailed descriptions of each privilege, and offer usage guidelines.

- **Summary of Available Privileges**
- **Privilege Descriptions**
- **Privilege-Granting Guidelines**

### Summary of Available Privileges

The following table shows the privilege names used in `GRANT` and `REVOKE` statements, along with the column name associated with each privilege in the grant tables and the context in which the privilege applies.

**Table 4.1 Permissible Privileges for GRANT and REVOKE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege</th>
<th>Grant Table Column</th>
<th>Context</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ALL [PRIVILEGES]</code></td>
<td>Synonym for “all privileges”</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege</td>
<td>Grant Table Column</td>
<td>Context</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER</td>
<td>Alter_priv</td>
<td>Tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER ROUTINE</td>
<td>Alter_routine_priv</td>
<td>Stored routines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE</td>
<td>Create_priv</td>
<td>Databases, tables, or indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE ROUTINE</td>
<td>Create_routine_priv</td>
<td>Stored routines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TABLESPACE</td>
<td>Create_tablespace_priv</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TEMPORARY TABLES</td>
<td>Create_tmp_table_priv</td>
<td>Tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE USER</td>
<td>Create_user_priv</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE VIEW</td>
<td>Create_view_priv</td>
<td>Views</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELETE</td>
<td>Delete_priv</td>
<td>Tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP</td>
<td>Drop_priv</td>
<td>Databases, tables, or views</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT</td>
<td>Event_priv</td>
<td>Databases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>Execute_priv</td>
<td>Stored routines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FILE</td>
<td>File_priv</td>
<td>File access on server host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRANT OPTION</td>
<td>Grant_priv</td>
<td>Databases, tables, or stored routines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX</td>
<td>Index_priv</td>
<td>Tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INSERT</td>
<td>Insert_priv</td>
<td>Tables or columns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCK TABLES</td>
<td>Lock_tables_priv</td>
<td>Databases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROCESS</td>
<td>Process_priv</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROXY</td>
<td>See proxies_priv table</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFERENCES</td>
<td>References_priv</td>
<td>Databases or tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RELOAD</td>
<td>Reload_priv</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPLICATION CLIENT</td>
<td>Repl_client_priv</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPLICATION SLAVE</td>
<td>Repl_slave_priv</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECT</td>
<td>Select_priv</td>
<td>Tables or columns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHOW DATABASES</td>
<td>Show_db_priv</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHOW VIEW</td>
<td>Show_view_priv</td>
<td>Views</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHUTDOWN</td>
<td>Shutdown_priv</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPER</td>
<td>Super_priv</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRIGGER</td>
<td>Trigger_priv</td>
<td>Tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPDATE</td>
<td>Update_priv</td>
<td>Tables or columns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USAGE</td>
<td>Synonym for “no privileges”</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Privilege Descriptions**

The following list provides general descriptions of each privilege available in MySQL. Particular SQL statements might have more specific privilege requirements than indicated here. If so, the description for the statement in question provides the details.

- **ALL, ALL PRIVILEGES**

  These privilege specifiers are shorthand for “all privileges available at a given privilege level” (except GRANT OPTION). For example, granting ALL at the global or table level grants all global privileges or all table-level privileges, respectively.

- **ALTER**
Privilege Descriptions

Enables use of the ALTER_TABLE statement to change the structure of tables. ALTER_TABLE also requires the CREATE and INSERT privileges. Renaming a table requires ALTER and DROP on the old table, CREATE, and INSERT on the new table.

• ALTER ROUTINE

Enables use of statements that alter or drop stored routines (stored procedures and functions).

• CREATE

Enables use of statements that create new databases and tables.

• CREATE ROUTINE

Enables use of statements that create stored routines (stored procedures and functions).

• CREATE TABLESPACE

Enables use of statements that create, alter, or drop tablespaces and log file groups.

• CREATE TEMPORARY TABLES

Enables the creation of temporary tables using the CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE statement.

After a session has created a temporary table, the server performs no further privilege checks on the table. The creating session can perform any operation on the table, such as DROP TABLE, INSERT, UPDATE, or SELECT. For more information, see CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE Syntax.

• CREATE USER

Enables use of the ALTER_USER, CREATE_USER, DROP_USER, RENAME_USER, and REVOKE_ALL_PRIVILEGES statements.

• CREATE VIEW

Enables use of the CREATE VIEW statement.

• DELETE

Enables rows to be deleted from tables in a database.

• DROP

Enables use of statements that drop (remove) existing databases, tables, and views. The DROP privilege is required to use the ALTER_TABLE ... DROP_PARTITION statement on a partitioned table. The DROP privilege is also required for TRUNCATE TABLE.

• EVENT

Enables use of statements that create, alter, drop, or display events for the Event Scheduler.

• EXECUTE

Enables use of statements that execute stored routines (stored procedures and functions).

• FILE

Affects the following operations and server behaviors:

• Enables reading and writing files on the server host using the LOAD_DATA and SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE statements and the LOAD_FILE() function. A user who has the FILE privilege can read any file on the server host that is either world-readable or readable by the MySQL server.
(This implies the user can read any file in any database directory, because the server can access any of those files.)

- Enables creating new files in any directory where the MySQL server has write access. This includes the server's data directory containing the files that implement the privilege tables.

- As of MySQL 5.7.17, enables use of the `DATA DIRECTORY` or `INDEX DIRECTORY` table option for the `CREATE TABLE` statement.

As a security measure, the server does not overwrite existing files.

To limit the location in which files can be read and written, set the `secure_file_priv` system variable to a specific directory. See `Server System Variables`.

- **GRANT OPTION**
  Enables you to grant to or revoke from other users those privileges that you yourself possess.

- **INDEX**
  Enables use of statements that create or drop (remove) indexes. `INDEX` applies to existing tables. If you have the `CREATE` privilege for a table, you can include index definitions in the `CREATE TABLE` statement.

- **INSERT**
  Enables rows to be inserted into tables in a database. `INSERT` is also required for the `ANALYZE TABLE`, `OPTIMIZE TABLE`, and `REPAIR TABLE` table-maintenance statements.

- **LOCK TABLES**
  Enables use of explicit `LOCK TABLES` statements to lock tables for which you have the `SELECT` privilege. This includes use of write locks, which prevents other sessions from reading the locked table.

- **PROCESS**
  Enables display of information about the threads executing within the server (that is, information about the statements being executed by sessions). The privilege enables use of `SHOW PROCESSLIST` or `mysqladmin processlist` to see threads belonging to other accounts; you can always see your own threads. The `PROCESS` privilege also enables use of `SHOW ENGINE`.

- **PROXY**
  Enables one user to impersonate or become known as another user. See Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”.

- **REFERENCES**
  Creation of a foreign key constraint requires the `REFERENCES` privilege for the parent table.

- **RELOAD**
  Enables use of the `FLUSH` statement. It also enables `mysqladmin` commands that are equivalent to `FLUSH` operations: `flush-hosts`, `flush-logs`, `flush-privileges`, `flush-status`, `flush-tables`, `flush-threads`, `refresh`, and `reload`.

  The `reload` command tells the server to reload the grant tables into memory. `flush-privileges` is a synonym for `reload`. The `refresh` command closes and reopens the log files and flushes all tables. The other `flush-xxx` commands perform functions similar to `refresh`, but are more specific and may be preferable in some instances. For example, if you want to flush just the log files, `flush-logs` is a better choice than `refresh`. 
Privilege Descriptions

- **REPLICATION CLIENT**

  Enables use of the `SHOW MASTER STATUS`, `SHOW SLAVE STATUS`, and `SHOW BINARY LOGS` statements. Grant this privilege to accounts that are used by slave servers to connect to the current server as their master.

- **REPLICATION SLAVE**

  Enables the account to request updates that have been made to databases on the master server. Grant this privilege to accounts that are used by slave servers to connect to the current server as their master.

- **SELECT**

  Enables rows to be selected from tables in a database. `SELECT` statements require the `SELECT` privilege only if they actually access tables. Some `SELECT` statements do not access tables and can be executed without permission for any database. For example, you can use `SELECT` as a simple calculator to evaluate expressions that make no reference to tables:

  ```
  SELECT 1+1;
  SELECT PI()*2;
  ```

  The `SELECT` privilege is also needed for other statements that read column values. For example, `SELECT` is needed for columns referenced on the right hand side of `col_name=expr` assignment in `UPDATE` statements or for columns named in the `WHERE` clause of `DELETE` or `UPDATE` statements.

  The `SELECT` privilege is needed for tables or views used with `EXPLAIN`, including any underlying tables in view definitions.

- **SHOW DATABASES**

  Enables the account to see database names by issuing the `SHOW DATABASE` statement. Accounts that do not have this privilege see only databases for which they have some privileges, and cannot use the statement at all if the server was started with the `--skip-show-database` option. (Any global privilege is considered a privilege for all databases.)

- **SHOW VIEW**

  Enables use of the `SHOW CREATE VIEW` statement. This privilege is also needed for views used with `EXPLAIN`.

- **SHUTDOWN**

  Enables use of the `SHUTDOWN` statement, the `mysqladmin shutdown` command, and the `mysql_shutdown()` C API function.

- **SUPER**

  Affects the following operations and server behaviors:

  - Enables server configuration changes by modifying global system variables. For some system variables, setting the session value also requires the `SUPER` privilege. If a system variable is restricted and requires a special privilege to set the session value, the variable description indicates that restriction. Examples include `binlog_format`, `sql_log_bin`, and `sql_log_off`. See also System Variable Privileges.

  - Enables changes to global transaction characteristics (see SET TRANSACTION Syntax).

  - Enables the account to start and stop replication, including Group Replication.

  - Enables use of the `CHANGE MASTER TO` and `CHANGE REPLICATION FILTER` statements.
Privilege-Granting Guidelines

• Enables binary log control by means of the `PURGE BINARY LOGS` and `BINLOG` statements.

• Enables setting the effective authorization ID when executing a view or stored program. A user with this privilege can specify any account in the `DEFINER` attribute of a view or stored program.

• Enables use of the `CREATE_SERVER`, `ALTER_SERVER`, and `DROP_SERVER` statements.

• Enables use of the `mysqladmin debug` command.

• Enables use of the `mysqladmin debug` command by means of the `PURGE BINARY LOGS` and `BINLOG` statements.

• Enables reading the DES key file by the `DES_ENCRYPT()` function.

• Enables execution of Version Tokens user-defined functions.

• Enables control over client connections not permitted to non-SUPER accounts:
  - Enables use of the `KILL` statement or `mysqladmin kill` command to kill threads belonging to other accounts. (An account can always kill its own threads.)
  - The server does not execute `init_connect` system variable content when SUPER clients connect.
  - The server accepts one connection from a SUPER client even if the connection limit configured by the `max_connections` system variable is reached.
  - A server in offline mode (`offline_mode` enabled) does not terminate SUPER client connections at the next client request, and accepts new connections from SUPER clients.
  - Updates can be performed even when the `read_only` system variable is enabled. This applies to explicit table updates, and to use of account-management statements such as `GRANT` and `REVOKE` that update tables implicitly.

You may also need the SUPER privilege to create or alter stored functions if binary logging is enabled, as described in Binary Logging of Stored Programs.

• TRIGGER

   Enables trigger operations. You must have this privilege for a table to create, drop, execute, or display triggers for that table.

   When a trigger is activated (by a user who has privileges to execute `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` statements for the table associated with the trigger), trigger execution requires that the user who defined the trigger still have the TRIGGER privilege for the table.

• UPDATE

   Enables rows to be updated in tables in a database.

• USAGE

   This privilege specifier stands for “no privileges.” It is used at the global level with `GRANT` to modify account attributes such as resource limits or SSL characteristics without naming specific account privileges in the privilege list. `SHOW GRANTS` displays USAGE to indicate that an account has no privileges at a privilege level.

**Privilege-Granting Guidelines**

It is a good idea to grant to an account only those privileges that it needs. You should exercise particular caution in granting the FILE and administrative privileges:
• **FILE** can be abused to read into a database table any files that the MySQL server can read on the server host. This includes all world-readable files and files in the server’s data directory. The table can then be accessed using **SELECT** to transfer its contents to the client host.

• **GRANT OPTION** enables users to give their privileges to other users. Two users that have different privileges and with the **GRANT OPTION** privilege are able to combine privileges.

• **ALTER** may be used to subvert the privilege system by renaming tables.

• **SHUTDOWN** can be abused to deny service to other users entirely by terminating the server.

• **PROCESS** can be used to view the plain text of currently executing statements, including statements that set or change passwords.

• **SUPER** can be used to terminate other sessions or change how the server operates.

• Privileges granted for the **mysql** system database itself can be used to change passwords and other access privilege information:
  - Passwords are stored encrypted, so a malicious user cannot simply read them to know the plain text password. However, a user with write access to the **mysql.user** system table **authentication_string** column can change an account's password, and then connect to the MySQL server using that account.
  - **INSERT** or **UPDATE** granted for the **mysql** system database enable a user to add privileges or modify existing privileges, respectively.
  - **DROP** for the **mysql** system database enables a user to remote privilege tables, or even the database itself.

### 4.2 Grant Tables

The **mysql** system database includes several grant tables that contain information about user accounts and the privileges held by them. This section describes those tables. For information about other tables in the system database, see **The mysql System Database**.

To manipulate the contents of grant tables, modify them indirectly by using account-management statements such as **CREATE USER, GRANT,** and **REVOKE** to set up accounts and control the privileges available to each one. See **Account Management Statements**. The discussion here describes the underlying structure of the grant tables and how the server uses their contents when interacting with clients.

**Note**

Direct modification of grant tables using statements such as **INSERT, UPDATE,** or **DELETE** is discouraged and done at your own risk. The server is free to ignore rows that become malformed as a result of such modifications.

As of MySQL 5.7.18, for any operation that modifies a grant table, the server checks whether the table has the expected structure and produces an error if not. **mysql_upgrade** must be run to update the tables to the expected structure.

These **mysql** database tables contain grant information:

- **user**: User accounts, global privileges, and other non-privilege columns
- **db**: Database-level privileges
- **tables_priv**: Table-level privileges
- **columns_priv**: Column-level privileges
Grant Tables

- **procs_priv**: Stored procedure and function privileges
- **proxies_priv**: Proxy-user privileges

Each grant table contains scope columns and privilege columns:

- **Scope columns** determine the scope of each row in the tables; that is, the context in which the row applies. For example, a `user` table row with Host and User values of 'h1.example.net' and 'bob' applies to authenticating connections made to the server from the host h1.example.net by a client that specifies a user name of bob. Similarly, a `db` table row with Host, User, and Db column values of 'h1.example.net', 'bob' and 'reports' applies when bob connects from the host h1.example.net to access the reports database. The `tables_priv` and `columns_priv` tables contain scope columns indicating tables or table/column combinations to which each row applies. The `procs_priv` scope columns indicate the stored routine to which each row applies.

- **Privilege columns** indicate which privileges a table row grants; that is, which operations it permits to be performed. The server combines the information in the various grant tables to form a complete description of a user's privileges. Section 4.5, "Access Control, Stage 2: Request Verification", describes the rules for this.

The server uses the grant tables in the following manner:

- The `user` table scope columns determine whether to reject or permit incoming connections. For permitted connections, any privileges granted in the `user` table indicate the user's global privileges. Any privileges granted in this table apply to all databases on the server.

  **Caution**

  Because any global privilege is considered a privilege for all databases, any global privilege enables a user to see all database names with `SHOW DATABASES` or by examining the SCHEMATA table of INFORMATION_SCHEMA.

- The `db` table scope columns determine which users can access which databases from which hosts. The privilege columns determine the permitted operations. A privilege granted at the database level applies to the database and to all objects in the database, such as tables and stored programs.

- The `tables_priv` and `columns_priv` tables are similar to the `db` table, but are more fine-grained: They apply at the table and column levels rather than at the database level. A privilege granted at the table level applies to the table and to all its columns. A privilege granted at the column level applies only to a specific column.

- The `procs_priv` table applies to stored routines (stored procedures and functions). A privilege granted at the routine level applies only to a single procedure or function.

- The `proxies_priv` table indicates which users can act as proxies for other users and whether a user can grant the PROXY privilege to other users.

The server uses the `user` and `db` tables in the `mysql` database at both the first and second stages of access control (see Chapter 4, The MySQL Access Privilege System). The columns in the `user` and `db` tables are shown here.

**Table 4.2 user and db Table Columns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table Name</th>
<th>user</th>
<th>db</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scope columns</td>
<td>Host</td>
<td>Host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User</td>
<td>Db</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>User</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege columns</td>
<td>Select_priv</td>
<td>Select_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insert_priv</td>
<td>Insert_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Update_priv</td>
<td>Update_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table Name</td>
<td>user</td>
<td>db</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete_priv</td>
<td>Delete_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index_priv</td>
<td>Index_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alter_priv</td>
<td>Alter_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create_priv</td>
<td>Create_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drop_priv</td>
<td>Drop_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grant_priv</td>
<td>Grant_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create_view_priv</td>
<td>Create_view_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show_view_priv</td>
<td>Show_view_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create_routine_priv</td>
<td>Create_routine_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alter_routine_priv</td>
<td>Alter_routine_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execute_priv</td>
<td>Execute_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigger_priv</td>
<td>Trigger_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event_priv</td>
<td>Event_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create_tmp_table_priv</td>
<td>Create_tmp_table_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock_tables_priv</td>
<td>Lock_tables_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References_priv</td>
<td>References_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reload_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutdown_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>File_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show_db_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Super_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repl_slave_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repl_client_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create_user_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create_tablespace_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Security columns**

- ssl_type
- ssl_cipher
- x509_issuer
- x509_subject
- plugin
- authentication_string
- password_expired
- password_last_changed
- password_lifetime
- account_locked

**Resource control columns**

- max_questions
- max_updates
- max_connections
- max_user_connections
The `user` table `plugin` and `authentication_string` columns store authentication plugin and credential information.

The server uses the plugin named in the `plugin` column of an account row to authenticate connection attempts for the account.

The `plugin` column must be nonempty. At startup, and at runtime when `FLUSH PRIVILEGES` is executed, the server checks `user` table rows. For any row with an empty `plugin` column, the server writes a warning to the error log of this form:

```
[Warning] User entry 'user_name'@'host_name' has an empty plugin value. The user will be ignored and no one can login with this user anymore.
```

To address this problem, see Section 7.1.3, "Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin".

The `password_expired` column permits DBAs to expire account passwords and require users to reset their password. The default `password_expired` value is `'N'`, but can be set to `'Y'` with the `ALTER USER` statement. After an account's password has been expired, all operations performed by the account in subsequent connections to the server result in an error until the user issues an `ALTER USER` statement to establish a new account password.

It is possible after password expiration to “reset” a password by setting it to its current value. As a matter of good policy, it is preferable to choose a different password.

`password_last_changed` is a `TIMESTAMP` column indicating when the password was last changed. The value is non-`NULL` only for accounts that use MySQL built-in authentication methods (accounts that use an authentication plugin of `mysql_native_password` or `sha256_password`). The value is `NULL` for other accounts, such as those authenticated using an external authentication system.

`password_last_changed` is updated by the `CREATE USER`, `ALTER USER`, and `SET PASSWORD` statements, and by `GRANT` statements that create an account or change an account password.

`password_lifetime` indicates the account password lifetime, in days. If the password is past its lifetime (assessed using the `password_last_changed` column), the server considers the password expired when clients connect using the account. A value of `$N$` greater than zero means that the password must be changed every `$N$` days. A value of 0 disables automatic password expiration. If the value is `NULL` (the default), the global expiration policy applies, as defined by the `default_password_lifetime` system variable.

`account_locked` indicates whether the account is locked (see Section 5.11, “User Account Locking”).

During the second stage of access control, the server performs request verification to ensure that each client has sufficient privileges for each request that it issues. In addition to the `user` and `db` grant tables, the server may also consult the `tables_priv` and `columns_priv` tables for requests that involve tables. The latter tables provide finer privilege control at the table and column levels. They have the columns shown in the following table.

### Table 4.3 `tables_priv` and `columns_priv` Table Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table Name</th>
<th><code>tables_priv</code></th>
<th><code>columns_priv</code></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope columns</strong></td>
<td>Host</td>
<td>Host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Db</td>
<td>Db</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User</td>
<td>User</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Table_name</td>
<td>Table_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Column_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Privilege columns</strong></td>
<td>Table_priv</td>
<td>Column_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Column_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Timestamp and Grantor columns are set to the current timestamp and the CURRENT_USER value, respectively, but are otherwise unused.

For verification of requests that involve stored routines, the server may consult the procs_priv table, which has the columns shown in the following table.

### Table 4.4 procs_priv Table Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table Name</th>
<th>procs_priv</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scope columns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine_name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine_type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege columns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proc_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other columns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timestamp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grantor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Routine_type column is an ENUM column with values of 'FUNCTION' or 'PROCEDURE' to indicate the type of routine the row refers to. This column enables privileges to be granted separately for a function and a procedure with the same name.

The Timestamp and Grantor columns are unused.

The proxies_priv table records information about proxy accounts. It has these columns:

- **Host, User**: The proxy account; that is, the account that has the PROXY privilege for the proxied account.
- **Proxied_host, Proxied_user**: The proxied account.
- **Grantor, Timestamp**: Unused.
- **With_grant**: Whether the proxy account can grant the PROXY privilege to other accounts.

For an account to be able to grant the PROXY privilege to other accounts, it must have a row in the proxies_priv table with With_grant set to 1 and Proxied_host and Proxied_user set to indicate the account or accounts for which the privilege can be granted. For example, the 'root'@'localhost' account created during MySQL installation has a row in the proxies_priv table that enables granting the PROXY privilege for '%', that is, for all users and all hosts. This enables root to set up proxy users, as well as to delegate to other accounts the authority to set up proxy users. See Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”.

Scope columns in the grant tables contain strings. The default value for each is the empty string. The following table shows the number of characters permitted in each column.

### Table 4.5 Grant Table Scope Column Lengths

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Maximum Permitted Characters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host, Proxied_host</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User, Proxied_user</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For access-checking purposes, comparisons of User, Proxied_user, Password, authentication_string, Db, and Table_name values are case-sensitive. Comparisons of Host, Proxied_host, Column_name, and Routine_name values are not case-sensitive.

The user and db tables list each privilege in a separate column that is declared as ENUM('N', 'Y') DEFAULT 'N'. In other words, each privilege can be disabled or enabled, with the default being disabled.

The tables_priv, columns_priv, and procs_priv tables declare the privilege columns as SET columns. Values in these columns can contain any combination of the privileges controlled by the table. Only those privileges listed in the column value are enabled.

### Table 4.6 Set-Type Privilege Column Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table Name</th>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Possible Set Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tables_priv</td>
<td>Table_priv</td>
<td>'Select', 'Insert', 'Update', 'Delete', 'Create', 'Drop', 'Grant', 'References', 'Index', 'Alter', 'Create View', 'Show view', 'Trigger'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tables_priv</td>
<td>Column_priv</td>
<td>'Select', 'Insert', 'Update', 'References'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>columns_priv</td>
<td>Column_priv</td>
<td>'Select', 'Insert', 'Update', 'References'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>procs_priv</td>
<td>Proc_priv</td>
<td>'Execute', 'Alter Routine', 'Grant'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Only the user table specifies administrative privileges, such as RELOAD and SHUTDOWN. Administrative operations are operations on the server itself and are not database-specific, so there is no reason to list these privileges in the other grant tables. Consequently, the server need consult only the user table to determine whether a user can perform an administrative operation.

The FILE privilege also is specified only in the user table. It is not an administrative privilege as such, but a user’s ability to read or write files on the server host is independent of the database being accessed.

The server reads the contents of the grant tables into memory when it starts. You can tell it to reload the tables by issuing a FLUSH PRIVILEGES statement or executing a mysqladmin flush-privileges or mysqladmin reload command. Changes to the grant tables take effect as indicated in Section 4.6, "When Privilege Changes Take Effect".

When you modify an account, it is a good idea to verify that your changes have the intended effect. To check the privileges for a given account, use the SHOW GRANTS statement. For example, to determine the privileges that are granted to an account with user name and host name values of bob and pc84.example.com, use this statement:

```sql
SHOW GRANTS FOR 'bob'@'pc84.example.com';
```

To display nonprivilege properties of an account, use SHOW CREATE USER:

```sql
SHOW CREATE USER 'bob'@'pc84.example.com';
```
4.3 Specifying Account Names

MySQL account names consist of a user name and a host name. This enables creation of accounts for
users with the same name who can connect from different hosts. This section describes how to write
account names, including special values and wildcard rules.

In SQL statements such as `CREATE USER`, `GRANT`, and `SET PASSWORD`, account names follow these
rules:

- Account name syntax is `user_name`@`host_name`.
- An account name consisting only of a user name is equivalent to `user_name`@`%`. For example, `me` is equivalent to `me`@`%`.
- The user name and host name need not be quoted if they are legal as unquoted identifiers. Quotes
are necessary to specify a `user_name` string containing special characters (such as space or `-`), or a `host_name` string containing special characters or wildcard characters (such as `. or `%`); for example, `test-user`@`%.com`.
- Quote user names and host names as identifiers or as strings, using either backticks (``), single
quotation marks (``), or double quotation marks (``). For string-quoting and identifier-quoting
guidelines, see String Literals, and Schema Object Names.
- The user name and host name parts, if quoted, must be quoted separately. That is, write `me`@`localhost`, not `me@localhost`; the latter is actually equivalent to `me@localhost`@`%`.
- A reference to the `CURRENT_USER` or `CURRENT_USER()` function is equivalent to specifying the
current client's user name and host name literally.

MySQL stores account names in grant tables in the `mysql` system database using separate columns
for the user name and host name parts:

- The `user` table contains one row for each account. The `User` and `Host` columns store the user
name and host name. This table also indicates which global privileges the account has.
- Other grant tables indicate privileges an account has for databases and objects within databases.
These tables have `User` and `Host` columns to store the account name. Each row in these tables
associates with the account in the `user` table that has the same `User` and `Host` values.
- For access-checking purposes, comparisons of User values are case-sensitive. Comparisons of Host
values are not case sensitive.

For additional detail about grant table structure, see Section 4.2, “Grant Tables”.

User names and host names have certain special values or wildcard conventions, as described
following.

The user name part of an account name is either a nonblank value that literally matches the user
name for incoming connection attempts, or a blank value (empty string) that matches any user name.
An account with a blank user name is an anonymous user. To specify an anonymous user in SQL
statements, use a quoted empty user name part, such as `'@'localhost`.

The host name part of an account name can take many forms, and wildcards are permitted:

- A host value can be a host name or an IP address (IPv4 or IPv6). The name `localhost` indicates the local host. The IP address `127.0.0.1` indicates the IPv4 loopback interface. The IP
address `::1` indicates the IPv6 loopback interface.
- The `%` and `_` wildcard characters are permitted in host name or IP address values. These have the
same meaning as for pattern-matching operations performed with the `LIKE` operator. For example, a
host value of `.%` matches any host name, whereas a value of `%.mysql.com` matches any host
in the `mysql.com` domain. `198.51.100.%` matches any host in the 198.51.100 class C network.
Because IP wildcard values are permitted in host values (for example, '198.51.100.\%' to
match every host on a subnet), someone could try to exploit this capability by naming a host
198.51.100.somewhere.com. To foil such attempts, MySQL does not perform matching on host
names that start with digits and a dot. For example, if a host is named 1.2.example.com, its name
never matches the host part of account names. An IP wildcard value can match only IP addresses,
not host names.

- For a host value specified as an IPv4 address, a netmask can be given to indicate how many
  address bits to use for the network number. Netmask notation cannot be used for IPv6 addresses.

The syntax is **host_ip/netmask.** For example:

```
CREATE USER 'david'@'198.51.100.0/255.255.255.0';
```

This enables **david** to connect from any client host having an IP address **client_ip** for which the
following condition is true:

```
client_ip & netmask = host_ip
```

That is, for the **CREATE USER** statement just shown:

```
client_ip & 255.255.255.0 = 198.51.100.0
```

IP addresses that satisfy this condition range from **198.51.100.0** to **198.51.100.255.**

A netmask typically begins with bits set to 1, followed by bits set to 0. Examples:

- **198.0.0.0/255.0.0.0:** Any host on the 198 class A network
- **198.51.0.0/255.0.0.0:** Any host on the 198.51 class B network
- **198.51.100.0/255.0.0.0:** Any host on the 198.51.100 class C network
- **198.51.100.1:** Only the host with this specific IP address

The server performs matching of host values in account names against the client host using the value
returned by the system DNS resolver for the client host name or IP address. Except in the case that the
account host value is specified using netmask notation, the server performs this comparison as a string
match, even for an account host value given as an IP address. This means that you should specify
account host values in the same format used by DNS. Here are examples of problems to watch out for:

- Suppose that a host on the local network has a fully qualified name of **host1.example.com.** If DNS
  returns name lookups for this host as **host1.example.com,** use that name in account host values.
  If DNS returns just **host1,** use **host1** instead.

- If DNS returns the IP address for a given host as **198.51.100.2,** that will match an account host
  value of **198.51.100.2** but not **198.051.100.2.** Similarly, it will match an account host pattern
  like **198.51.100.\%** but not **198.051.100.\%**.

To avoid problems like these, it is advisable to check the format in which your DNS returns host names
and addresses. Use values in the same format in MySQL account names.

### 4.4 Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification

When you attempt to connect to a MySQL server, the server accepts or rejects the connection based
on these conditions:

- Your identity and whether you can verify your identity by supplying the correct password
• Whether your account is locked or unlocked

The server checks credentials first, then account locking state. A failure for either step causes the server to deny access to you completely. Otherwise, the server accepts the connection, and then enters Stage 2 and waits for requests.

Credential checking is performed using the three user table scope columns (Host, User, and authentication_string). Locking state is recorded in the user table account_locked column. The server accepts the connection only if the Host and User columns in some user table row match the client host name and user name, the client supplies the password specified in that row, and the account_locked value is 'N'. The rules for permissible Host and User values are given in Section 4.3, “Specifying Account Names”. Account locking can be changed with the ALTER USER statement.

Your identity is based on two pieces of information:

• The client host from which you connect
• Your MySQL user name

If the User column value is nonblank, the user name in an incoming connection must match exactly. If the User value is blank, it matches any user name. If the user table row that matches an incoming connection has a blank user name, the user is considered to be an anonymous user with no name, not a user with the name that the client actually specified. This means that a blank user name is used for all further access checking for the duration of the connection (that is, during Stage 2).

The authentication_string column can be blank. This is not a wildcard and does not mean that any password matches. It means that the user must connect without specifying a password. If the server authenticates a client using a plugin, the authentication method that the plugin implements may or may not use the password in the authentication_string column. In this case, it is possible that an external password is also used to authenticate to the MySQL server.

Nonblank authentication_string values in the user table represent encrypted passwords. MySQL does not store passwords in cleartext form for anyone to see. Rather, the password supplied by a user who is attempting to connect is encrypted (using the password hashing method implemented by the account authentication plugin). The encrypted password then is used during the connection process when checking whether the password is correct. This is done without the encrypted password ever traveling over the connection. See Section 5.1, “User Names and Passwords”.

From MySQL’s point of view, the encrypted password is the real password, so you should never give anyone access to it. In particular, do not give nonadministrative users read access to tables in the mysql system database.

The following table shows how various combinations of User and Host values in the user table apply to incoming connections.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Value</th>
<th>Host Value</th>
<th>Permissible Connections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'fred'</td>
<td>'h1.example.net'</td>
<td>fred, connecting from h1.example.net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>''</td>
<td>'h1.example.net'</td>
<td>Any user, connecting from h1.example.net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'fred'</td>
<td>'%'</td>
<td>fred, connecting from any host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>''</td>
<td>'%'</td>
<td>Any user, connecting from any host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'fred'</td>
<td>'%.example.net'</td>
<td>fred, connecting from any host in the example.net domain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'fred'</td>
<td>'x.example.%'</td>
<td>fred, connecting from x.example.net, x.example.com, x.example.edu, and so on; this is probably not useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>''</td>
<td>'198.51.100.177'</td>
<td>fred, connecting from the host with IP address 198.51.100.177</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

48
User Value | Host Value | Permissible Connections
--- | --- | ---
'fred' | '198.51.100.%' | fred, connecting from any host in the 198.51.100 class C subnet
'fred' | '198.51.100.0/255.255.255.0' | Same as previous example

It is possible for the client host name and user name of an incoming connection to match more than one row in the user table. The preceding set of examples demonstrates this: Several of the entries shown match a connection from h1.example.net by fred.

When multiple matches are possible, the server must determine which of them to use. It resolves this issue as follows:

- Whenever the server reads the user table into memory, it sorts the rows.
- When a client attempts to connect, the server looks through the rows in sorted order.
- The server uses the first row that matches the client host name and user name.

The server uses sorting rules that order rows with the most-specific Host values first. Literal host names and IP addresses are the most specific. (The specificity of a literal IP address is not affected by whether it has a netmask, so 198.51.100.13 and 198.51.100.0/255.255.255.0 are considered equally specific.) The pattern '%' means "any host" and is least specific. The empty string '' also means "any host" but sorts after '%'. Rows with the same Host value are ordered with the most-specific User values first (a blank User value means "any user" and is least specific). For rows with equally-specific Host and User values, the order is nondeterministic.

To see how this works, suppose that the user table looks like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>User</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>jeffrey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localhost</td>
<td>root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localhost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the server reads the table into memory, it sorts the rows using the rules just described. The result after sorting looks like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>User</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>localhost</td>
<td>root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localhost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>jeffrey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>root</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a client attempts to connect, the server looks through the sorted rows and uses the first match found. For a connection from localhost by jeffrey, two of the rows from the table match: the one with Host and User values of 'localhost' and '', and the one with values of '%' and 'jeffrey'. The 'localhost' row appears first in sorted order, so that is the one the server uses.

Here is another example. Suppose that the user table looks like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>User</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>jeffrey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h1.example.net</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>User</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>jeffrey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h1.example.net</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The sorted table looks like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>User</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>h1.example.net</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@</td>
<td>jeffrey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A connection by jeffrey from h1.example.net is matched by the first row, whereas a connection by jeffrey from any host is matched by the second.

**Note**

It is a common misconception to think that, for a given user name, all rows that explicitly name that user are used first when the server attempts to find a match for the connection. This is not true. The preceding example illustrates this, where a connection from h1.example.net by jeffrey is first matched not by the row containing 'jeffrey' as the User column value, but by the row with no user name. As a result, jeffrey is authenticated as an anonymous user, even though he specified a user name when connecting.

If you are able to connect to the server, but your privileges are not what you expect, you probably are being authenticated as some other account. To find out what account the server used to authenticate you, use the CURRENT_USER() function. (See Information Functions.) It returns a value in user_name@host_name format that indicates the User and Host values from the matching user table row. Suppose that jeffrey connects and issues the following query:

```sql
mysql> SELECT CURRENT_USER();
+----------------+
| CURRENT_USER() |
+----------------+
| @localhost     |
```

The result shown here indicates that the matching user table row had a blank User column value. In other words, the server is treating jeffrey as an anonymous user.

Another way to diagnose authentication problems is to print out the user table and sort it by hand to see where the first match is being made.

### 4.5 Access Control, Stage 2: Request Verification

After you establish a connection, the server enters Stage 2 of access control. For each request that you issue through that connection, the server determines what operation you want to perform, then checks whether you have sufficient privileges to do so. This is where the privilege columns in the grant tables come into play. These privileges can come from any of the user, db, tables_priv, columns_priv, or procs_priv tables. (You may find it helpful to refer to Section 4.2, “Grant Tables”, which lists the columns present in each of the grant tables.)

The user table grants privileges that are assigned to you on a global basis and that apply no matter what the default database is. For example, if the user table grants you the DELETE privilege, you can delete rows from any table in any database on the server host! It is wise to grant privileges in the user table only to people who need them, such as database administrators. For other users, you should leave all privileges in the user table set to 'N' and grant privileges at more specific levels only. You can grant privileges for particular databases, tables, columns, or routines.

The db table grants database-specific privileges. Values in the scope columns of this table can take the following forms:

- A blank User value matches the anonymous user. A nonblank value matches literally; there are no wildcards in user names.
Access Control, Stage 2: Request Verification

- The wildcard characters % and _ can be used in the Host and Db columns. These have the same meaning as for pattern-matching operations performed with the LIKE operator. If you want to use either character literally when granting privileges, you must escape it with a backslash. For example, to include the underscore character (_) as part of a database name, specify it as \_ in the GRANT statement.

- A '%%' or blank Host value means “any host.”

- A '%%' or blank Db value means “any database.”

The server reads the db table into memory and sorts it at the same time that it reads the user table. The server sorts the db table based on the Host, Db, and User scope columns. As with the user table, sorting puts the most-specific values first and least-specific values last, and when the server looks for matching rows, it uses the first match that it finds.

The tables_priv, columns_priv, and procs_priv tables grant table-specific, column-specific, and routine-specific privileges. Values in the scope columns of these tables can take the following forms:

- The wildcard characters % and _ can be used in the Host column. These have the same meaning as for pattern-matching operations performed with the LIKE operator.

- A '%%' or blank Host value means “any host.”

- The Db, Table_name, Column_name, and Routine_name columns cannot contain wildcards or be blank.

The server sorts the tables_priv, columns_priv, and procs_priv tables based on the Host, Db, and User columns. This is similar to db table sorting, but simpler because only the Host column can contain wildcards.

The server uses the sorted tables to verify each request that it receives. For requests that require administrative privileges such as SHUTDOWN or RELOAD, the server checks only the user table row because that is the only table that specifies administrative privileges. The server grants access if the row permits the requested operation and denies access otherwise. For example, if you want to execute mysqladmin shutdown but your user table row does not grant the SHUTDOWN privilege to you, the server denies access without even checking the db table. (It contains no Shutdown_priv column, so there is no need to do so.)

For database-related requests (INSERT, UPDATE, and so on), the server first checks the user’s global privileges by looking in the user table row. If the row permits the requested operation, access is granted. If the global privileges in the user table are insufficient, the server determines the user’s database-specific privileges by checking the db table:

The server looks in the db table for a match on the Host, Db, and User columns. The Host and User columns are matched to the connecting user's host name and MySQL user name. The Db column is matched to the database that the user wants to access. If there is no row for the Host and User, access is denied.

After determining the database-specific privileges granted by the db table rows, the server adds them to the global privileges granted by the user table. If the result permits the requested operation, access is granted. Otherwise, the server successively checks the user's table and column privileges in the tables_priv and columns_priv tables, adds those to the user’s privileges, and permits or denies access based on the result. For stored-routine operations, the server uses the procs_priv table rather than tables_priv and columns_priv.

Expressed in boolean terms, the preceding description of how a user’s privileges are calculated may be summarized like this:

global privileges
OR (database privileges AND host privileges)
OR table privileges
OR column privileges
OR routine privileges

It may not be apparent why, if the global user row privileges are initially found to be insufficient for the requested operation, the server adds those privileges to the database, table, and column privileges later. The reason is that a request might require more than one type of privilege. For example, if you execute an `INSERT INTO ... SELECT` statement, you need both the `INSERT` and the `SELECT` privileges. Your privileges might be such that the user table row grants one privilege and the db table row grants the other. In this case, you have the necessary privileges to perform the request, but the server cannot tell that from either table by itself; the privileges granted by the rows in both tables must be combined.

### 4.6 When Privilege Changes Take Effect

When `mysqld` starts, it reads all grant table contents into memory. The in-memory tables become effective for access control at that point.

If you modify the grant tables indirectly using an account-management statement, the server notices these changes and loads the grant tables into memory again immediately. Account-management statements are described in [Account Management Statements](#). Examples include `GRANT`, `REVOKE`, `SET PASSWORD`, and `RENAME USER`.

If you modify the grant tables directly using statements such as `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` (which is not recommended), your changes have no effect on privilege checking until you either restart the server or tell it to reload the tables. If you change the grant tables directly but forget to reload them, your changes have no effect until you restart the server. This may leave you wondering why your changes seem to make no difference!

To tell the server to reload the grant tables, perform a flush-privileges operation. This can be done by issuing a `FLUSH PRIVILEGES` statement or by executing a `mysqladmin flush-privileges` or `mysqladmin reload` command.

A grant table reload affects privileges for each existing client connection as follows:

- Table and column privilege changes take effect with the client's next request.
- Database privilege changes take effect the next time the client executes a `USE db_name` statement.

**Note**

Client applications may cache the database name; thus, this effect may not be visible to them without actually changing to a different database.

- Global privileges and passwords are unaffected for a connected client. These changes take effect only for subsequent connections.

If the server is started with the `--skip-grant-tables` option, it does not read the grant tables or implement any access control. Anyone can connect and do anything, which is insecure. To cause a server thus started to read the tables and enable access checking, flush the privileges.

### 4.7 Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL

If you encounter problems when you try to connect to the MySQL server, the following items describe some courses of action you can take to correct the problem.

- Make sure that the server is running. If it is not, clients cannot connect to it. For example, if an attempt to connect to the server fails with a message such as one of those following, one cause might be that the server is not running:

```shell
shell> mysql
```
Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL

• It might be that the server is running, but you are trying to connect using a TCP/IP port, named pipe, or Unix socket file different from the one on which the server is listening. To correct this when you invoke a client program, specify a --port option to indicate the proper port number, or a --socket option to indicate the proper named pipe or Unix socket file. To find out where the socket file is, you can use this command:

```
shell> netstat -ln | grep mysql
```

• Make sure that the server has not been configured to ignore network connections or (if you are attempting to connect remotely) that it has not been configured to listen only locally on its network interfaces. If the server was started with --skip-networking, it will not accept TCP/IP connections at all. If the server was started with --bind-address=127.0.0.1, it will listen for TCP/IP connections only locally on the loopback interface and will not accept remote connections.

• Check to make sure that there is no firewall blocking access to MySQL. Your firewall may be configured on the basis of the application being executed, or the port number used by MySQL for communication (3306 by default). Under Linux or Unix, check your IP tables (or similar) configuration to ensure that the port has not been blocked. Under Windows, applications such as ZoneAlarm or Windows Firewall may need to be configured not to block the MySQL port.

• The grant tables must be properly set up so that the server can use them for access control. For some distribution types (such as binary distributions on Windows, or RPM distributions on Linux), the installation process initializes the MySQL data directory, including the mysql system database containing the grant tables. For distributions that do not do this, you must initialize the data directory manually. For details, see Chapter 3, Postinstallation Setup and Testing.

To determine whether you need to initialize the grant tables, look for a mysql directory under the data directory. (The data directory normally is named data or var and is located under your MySQL installation directory.) Make sure that you have a file named user.MYD in the mysql database directory. If not, initialize the data directory. After doing so and starting the server, you should be able to connect to the server.

• After a fresh installation, if you try to log on to the server as root without using a password, you might get the following error message.

```
shell> mysql -u root
ERROR 1045 (28000): Access denied for user 'root'@'localhost' (using password: NO)
```

It means a root password has already been assigned during installation and it has to be supplied. See Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account” on the different ways the password could have been assigned and, in some cases, how to find it. If you need to reset the root password, see instructions in How to Reset the Root Password. After you have found or reset your password, log on again as root using the --password (or -p) option:

```
shell> mysql -u root -p
Enter password:
```

However, the server is going to let you connect as root without using a password if you have initialized MySQL using mysqlld --initialize-insecure (see Section 3.1.1, “Initializing the Data Directory Manually Using mysqlld” for details). That is a security risk, so you should set a password for the root account; see Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account” for instructions.

• If you have updated an existing MySQL installation to a newer version, did you run the mysql_upgrade command? If not, do so. The structure of the grant tables changes occasionally
when new capabilities are added, so after an upgrade you should always make sure that your tables have the current structure. For instructions, see `mysql_upgrade` — Check and Upgrade MySQL Tables.

- If a client program receives the following error message when it tries to connect, it means that the server expects passwords in a newer format than the client is capable of generating:

```
shell> mysql
Client does not support authentication protocol requested by server; consider upgrading MySQL client
```

For information on how to deal with this, see Section 7.1.3, “Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin”.

- Remember that client programs use connection parameters specified in option files or environment variables. If a client program seems to be sending incorrect default connection parameters when you have not specified them on the command line, check any applicable option files and your environment. For example, if you get Access denied when you run a client without any options, make sure that you have not specified an old password in any of your option files!

You can suppress the use of option files by a client program by invoking it with the `--no-defaults` option. For example:

```
shell> mysqladmin --no-defaults -u root version
```

The option files that clients use are listed in Using Option Files. Environment variables are listed in MySQL Program Environment Variables.

- If you get the following error, it means that you are using an incorrect root password:

```
shell> mysqladmin -u root -p
Access denied for user 'root'@'localhost' (using password: YES)
```

If the preceding error occurs even when you have not specified a password, it means that you have an incorrect password listed in some option file. Try the `--no-defaults` option as described in the previous item.

For information on changing passwords, see Section 5.6, “Assigning Account Passwords”.

If you have lost or forgotten the root password, see How to Reset the Root Password.

- localhost is a synonym for your local host name, and is also the default host to which clients try to connect if you specify no host explicitly.

You can use a `--host=127.0.0.1` option to name the server host explicitly. This will make a TCP/IP connection to the local `mysqld` server. You can also use TCP/IP by specifying a `--host` option that uses the actual host name of the local host. In this case, the host name must be specified in a user table row on the server host, even though you are running the client program on the same host as the server.

- The Access denied error message tells you who you are trying to log in as, the client host from which you are trying to connect, and whether you were using a password. Normally, you should have one row in the user table that exactly matches the host name and user name that were given in the error message. For example, if you get an error message that contains using password: NO, it means that you tried to log in without a password.

- If you get an Access denied error when trying to connect to the database with `mysql -u user_name`, you may have a problem with the user table. Check this by executing `mysql -u root mysql` and issuing this SQL statement:
SELECT * FROM user;

The result should include a row with the **Host** and **User** columns matching your client's host name and your MySQL user name.

- If the following error occurs when you try to connect from a host other than the one on which the MySQL server is running, it means that there is no row in the **user** table with a **Host** value that matches the client host:

```
Host ... is not allowed to connect to this MySQL server
```

You can fix this by setting up an account for the combination of client host name and user name that you are using when trying to connect.

If you do not know the IP address or host name of the machine from which you are connecting, you should put a row with '%' as the **Host** column value in the **user** table. After trying to connect from the client machine, use a `SELECT USER()` query to see how you really did connect. Then change the '%' in the **user** table row to the actual host name that shows up in the log. Otherwise, your system is left insecure because it permits connections from any host for the given user name.

On Linux, another reason that this error might occur is that you are using a binary MySQL version that is compiled with a different version of the **glibc** library than the one you are using. In this case, you should either upgrade your operating system or **glibc**, or download a source distribution of MySQL version and compile it yourself. A source RPM is normally trivial to compile and install, so this is not a big problem.

- If you specify a host name when trying to connect, but get an error message where the host name is not shown or is an IP address, it means that the MySQL server got an error when trying to resolve the IP address of the client host to a name:

  ```
  shell> mysqladmin -u root -p xxxxx -h some_hostname ver
  Access denied for user 'root'@'' (using password: YES)
  ```

If you try to connect as **root** and get the following error, it means that you do not have a row in the **user** table with a **User** column value of 'root' and that **mysqld** cannot resolve the host name for your client:

```
Access denied for user ''@'unknown'
```

These errors indicate a DNS problem. To fix it, execute `mysqladmin flush-hosts` to reset the internal DNS host cache. See [DNS Lookup Optimization and the Host Cache](#).

Some permanent solutions are:

- Determine what is wrong with your DNS server and fix it.
- Specify IP addresses rather than host names in the MySQL grant tables.
- Put an entry for the client machine name in `/etc/hosts` on Unix or `\windows\hosts` on Windows.
- Start **mysqld** with the **--skip-name-resolve** option.
- Start **mysqld** with the **--skip-host-cache** option.
- On Unix, if you are running the server and the client on the same machine, connect to **localhost**. For connections to **localhost**, MySQL programs attempt to connect to the local server by using a Unix socket file, unless there are connection parameters specified to ensure that the client makes a TCP/IP connection. For more information, see [Connecting to the MySQL Server](#).
Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL

• On Windows, if you are running the server and the client on the same machine and the server supports named pipe connections, connect to the host name . (period). Connections to . use a named pipe rather than TCP/IP.

• If mysql -u root works but mysql -h your_hostname -u root results in Access denied (where your_hostname is the actual host name of the local host), you may not have the correct name for your host in the user table. A common problem here is that the Host value in the user table row specifies an unqualified host name, but your system’s name resolution routines return a fully qualified domain name (or vice versa). For example, if you have a row with host 'pluto' in the user table, but your DNS tells MySQL that your host name is 'pluto.example.com', the row does not work. Try adding a row to the user table that contains the IP address of your host as the Host column value. (Alternatively, you could add a row to the user table with a Host value that contains a wildcard; for example, 'pluto.%'. However, use of Host values ending with % is insecure and is not recommended)

• If mysql -u user_name works but mysql -u user_name some_db does not, you have not granted access to the given user for the database named some_db.

• If mysql -u user_name works when executed on the server host, but mysql -h host_name -u user_name does not work when executed on a remote client host, you have not enabled access to the server for the given user name from the remote host.

• If you cannot figure out why you get Access denied, remove from the user table all rows that have Host values containing wildcards (rows that contain '%') or '_' characters. A very common error is to insert a new row with Host='%' and User='some_user', thinking that this enables you to specify localhost to connect from the same machine. The reason that this does not work is that the default privileges include a row with Host='localhost' and User=''. Because that row has a Host value 'localhost' that is more specific than '%', it is used in preference to the new row when connecting from localhost! The correct procedure is to insert a second row with Host='localhost' and User='some_user', or to delete the row with Host='localhost' and User=''. After deleting the row, remember to issue a FLUSH PRIVILEGES statement to reload the grant tables. See also Section 4.4, "Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification".

• If you are able to connect to the MySQL server, but get an Access denied message whenever you issue a SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE or LOAD DATA statement, your row in the user table does not have the FILE privilege enabled.

• If you change the grant tables directly (for example, by using INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statements) and your changes seem to be ignored, remember that you must execute a FLUSH PRIVILEGES statement or a mysqladmin flush-privileges command to cause the server to reload the privilege tables. Otherwise, your changes have no effect until the next time the server is restarted. Remember that after you change the root password with an UPDATE statement, you will not need to specify the new password until after you flush the privileges, because the server will not know you’ve changed the password yet!

• If your privileges seem to have changed in the middle of a session, it may be that a MySQL administrator has changed them. Reloading the grant tables affects new client connections, but it also affects existing connections as indicated in Section 4.6, “When Privilege Changes Take Effect”.

• If you have access problems with a Perl, PHP, Python, or ODBC program, try to connect to the server with mysql -u user_name db_name or mysql -u user_name -pyour_pass db_name. If you are able to connect using the mysql client, the problem lies with your program, not with the access privileges. (There is no space between -p and the password; you can also use the --password=your_pass syntax to specify the password. If you use the -p or --password option with no password value, MySQL prompts you for the password.)

• For testing purposes, start the mysqld server with the --skip-grant-tables option. Then you can change the MySQL grant tables and use the SHOW GRANTS statement to check whether your modifications have the desired effect. When you are satisfied with your changes, execute
`mysqladmin flush-privileges` to tell the `mysqld` server to reload the privileges. This enables you to begin using the new grant table contents without stopping and restarting the server.

- If everything else fails, start the `mysqld` server with a debugging option (for example, `--debug=d,general,query`). This prints host and user information about attempted connections, as well as information about each command issued. See The DBUG Package.

- If you have any other problems with the MySQL grant tables and feel you must post the problem to the mailing list, always provide a dump of the MySQL grant tables. You can dump the tables with the `mysqldump mysql` command. To file a bug report, see the instructions at How to Report Bugs or Problems. In some cases, you may need to restart `mysqld` with `--skip-grant-tables` to run `mysqldump`.
Chapter 5 MySQL User Account Management

Table of Contents

5.1 User Names and Passwords ................................................................. 59
5.2 Adding User Accounts ................................................................. 61
5.3 Removing User Accounts .............................................................. 63
5.4 Reserved User Accounts ................................................................. 63
5.5 Setting Account Resource Limits .................................................. 63
5.6 Assigning Account Passwords ....................................................... 65
5.7 Password Management ................................................................. 66
5.8 Password Expiration and Sandbox Mode ........................................ 68
5.9 Pluggable Authentication .............................................................. 70
5.10 Proxy Users .................................................................................. 72
5.11 User Account Locking ................................................................. 78
5.12 SQL-Based MySQL Account Activity Auditing ................................. 78

This section describes how to set up accounts for clients of your MySQL server. It discusses the following topics:

• The meaning of account names and passwords as used in MySQL and how that compares to names and passwords used by your operating system

• How to set up new accounts and remove existing accounts

• How to change passwords

• Guidelines for using passwords securely

See also Account Management Statements, which describes the syntax and use for all user-management SQL statements.

5.1 User Names and Passwords

MySQL stores accounts in the user table of the mysql system database. An account is defined in terms of a user name and the client host or hosts from which the user can connect to the server. For information about account representation in the user table, see Section 4.2, “Grant Tables”.

The account may also have a password. MySQL supports authentication plugins, so it is possible that an account authenticates using some external authentication method. See Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”.

There are several distinctions between the way user names and passwords are used by MySQL and your operating system:

• User names, as used by MySQL for authentication purposes, have nothing to do with user names (login names) as used by Windows or Unix. On Unix, most MySQL clients by default try to log in using the current Unix user name as the MySQL user name, but that is for convenience only. The default can be overridden easily, because client programs permit any user name to be specified with a -u or --user option. This means that anyone can attempt to connect to the server using any user name, so you cannot make a database secure in any way unless all MySQL accounts have passwords. Anyone who specifies a user name for an account that has no password is able to connect successfully to the server.

• MySQL user names can be up to 32 characters long Operating system user names may be of a different maximum length. For example, Unix user names typically are limited to eight characters.
**Warning**

The limit on MySQL user name length is hardcoded in MySQL servers and clients, and trying to circumvent it by modifying the definitions of the tables in the `mysql` database does not work.

You should never alter the structure of tables in the `mysql` database in any manner whatsoever except by means of the procedure that is described in *mysql_upgrade — Check and Upgrade MySQL Tables*. Attempting to redefine MySQL’s system tables in any other fashion results in undefined (and unsupported!) behavior. The server is free to ignore rows that become malformed as a result of such modifications.

- To authenticate client connections for accounts that use MySQL native authentication (implemented by the `mysql_native_password` authentication plugin), the server uses passwords stored in the `user` table. These passwords are distinct from passwords for logging in to your operating system. There is no necessary connection between the “external” password you use to log in to a Windows or Unix machine and the password you use to access the MySQL server on that machine.

  If the server authenticates a client using some other plugin, the authentication method that the plugin implements may or may not use a password stored in the `user` table. In this case, it is possible that an external password is also used to authenticate to the MySQL server.

- Passwords stored in the `user` table are encrypted using plugin-specific algorithms. For information about MySQL native password hashing, see Section 2.2.4, “Password Hashing in MySQL”.

- If the user name and password contain only ASCII characters, it is possible to connect to the server regardless of character set settings. To connect when the user name or password contain non-ASCII characters, the client should call the `mysql_options()` C API function with the `MYSQL_SET_CHARSET_NAME` option and appropriate character set name as arguments. This causes authentication to take place using the specified character set. Otherwise, authentication will fail unless the server default character set is the same as the encoding in the authentication defaults.

  Standard MySQL client programs support a `--default-character-set` option that causes `mysql_options()` to be called as just described. In addition, character set autodetection is supported as described in Connection Character Sets and Collations. For programs that use a connector that is not based on the C API, the connector may provide an equivalent to `mysql_options()` that can be used instead. Check the connector documentation.

  The preceding notes do not apply for `ucs2`, `utf16`, and `utf32`, which are not permitted as client character sets.

The MySQL installation process populates the grant tables with an initial `root` account, as described in Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account”, which also discusses how to assign passwords to it. Thereafter, you normally set up, modify, and remove MySQL accounts using statements such as `CREATE USER`, `DROP USER`, `GRANT`, and `REVOKE`. See Account Management Statements.

To connect to a MySQL server with a command-line client, specify user name and password options as necessary for the account that you want to use:

```shell
shell> mysql --user=finley --password db_name
```

If you prefer short options, the command looks like this:

```shell
shell> mysql -u finley -p db_name
```

If you omit the password value following the `--password` or `-p` option on the command line (as just shown), the client prompts for one. Alternatively, the password can be specified on the command line:
Adding User Accounts

You can create MySQL accounts two ways:

- By using account-management statements intended for creating accounts and establishing their privileges, such as `CREATE USER` and `GRANT`. These statements cause the server to make appropriate modifications to the underlying grant tables.

- By manipulating the MySQL grant tables directly with statements such as `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`.

The preferred method is to use account-management statements because they are more concise and less error-prone than manipulating the grant tables directly. All such statements are described in Account Management Statements. Direct grant table modification is discouraged, and is not described here. The server is free to ignore rows that become malformed as a result of such modifications.

Another option for creating accounts is to use the GUI tool MySQL Workbench. Also, several third-party programs offer capabilities for MySQL account administration. `phpMyAdmin` is one such program.

The following examples show how to use the `mysql` client program to set up new accounts. These examples assume that privileges have been set up according to the defaults described in Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account”. This means that to make changes, you must connect to the MySQL server as the MySQL root user, which has the `CREATE USER` privilege.

First, use the `mysql` program to connect to the server as the MySQL root user:

```shell
shell> mysql --user=root mysql
```

If you have assigned a password to the root account, you must also supply a `--password` or `-p` option.

After connecting to the server as root, you can add new accounts. The following example uses `CREATE USER` and `GRANT` statements to set up four accounts:

```sql
mysql> CREATE USER 'finley'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
mysql> GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON *.* TO 'finley'@'localhost'
  WITH GRANT OPTION;
mysql> CREATE USER 'finley'@'%' IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
mysql> GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON *.* TO 'finley'@'%
  WITH GRANT OPTION;
mysql> CREATE USER 'admin'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
mysql> GRANT RELOAD,PROCESS ON *.* TO 'admin'@'localhost';
mysql> CREATE USER 'dummy'@'localhost';
```

The accounts created by those statements have the following properties:

- Two accounts have a user name of finley. Both are superuser accounts with full privileges to do anything. The 'finley'@'localhost' account can be used only when connecting from the local
Adding User Accounts

The 'finley'@'%' account uses the '%' wildcard for the host part, so it can be used to connect from any host.

The 'finley'@'localhost' account is necessary if there is an anonymous-user account for localhost. Without the 'finley'@'localhost' account, that anonymous-user account takes precedence when finley connects from the local host and finley is treated as an anonymous user. The reason for this is that the anonymous-user account has a more specific Host column value than the 'finley'@'%' account and thus comes earlier in the user table sort order. (user table sorting is discussed in Section 4.4, "Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification").

• The 'admin'@'localhost' account can be used only by admin to connect from the local host. It is granted the RELOAD and PROCESS administrative privileges. These privileges enable the admin user to execute the mysqladmin reload, mysqladmin refresh, and mysqladmin flush-xxx commands, as well as mysqladmin processlist. No privileges are granted for accessing any databases. You could add such privileges using GRANT statements.

• The 'dummy'@'localhost' account has no password (which is insecure and not recommended). This account can be used only to connect from the local host. No privileges are granted. It is assumed that you will grant specific privileges to the account using GRANT statements.

The next examples create three accounts and grant them access to specific databases. Each of them has a user name of custom and password of password:

The three accounts can be used as follows:

• The first account can access the bankaccount database, but only from the local host.

• The second account can access the expenses database, but only from the host host47.example.com.

• The third account can access the customer database, from any host in the example.com domain. This account has access from all machines in the domain due to use of the % wildcard character in the host part of the account name.
5.3 Removing User Accounts

To remove an account, use the DROP USER statement, which is described in DROP USER Syntax. For example:

```sql
mysql> DROP USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost';
```

5.4 Reserved User Accounts

One part of the MySQL installation process is data directory initialization (see Section 3.1.1, “Initializing the Data Directory Manually Using mysqld”). During data directory initialization, MySQL creates user accounts that should be considered reserved:

- `'root'@'localhost'`: Used for administrative purposes. This account has all privileges and can perform any operation.
  
  Strictly speaking, this account name is not reserved, in the sense that some installations rename the root account to something else to avoid exposing a highly privileged account with a well-known name.

- `'mysql.sys'@'localhost'`: Used as the DEFINER for sys schema objects. Use of the mysql.sys account avoids problems that occur if a DBA renames or removes the root account. This account is locked so that it cannot be used for client connections.

- `'mysql.session'@'localhost'`: Used internally by plugins to access the server. This account is locked so that it cannot be used for client connections.

5.5 Setting Account Resource Limits

One means of restricting client use of MySQL server resources is to set the global max_user_connections system variable to a nonzero value. This limits the number of simultaneous connections that can be made by any given account, but places no limits on what a client can do once connected. In addition, setting `max_user_connections` does not enable management of individual accounts. Both types of control are of interest to MySQL administrators.

To address such concerns, MySQL permits limits for individual accounts on use of these server resources:

- The number of queries an account can issue per hour
- The number of updates an account can issue per hour
- The number of times an account can connect to the server per hour
- The number of simultaneous connections to the server by an account

Any statement that a client can issue counts against the query limit, unless its results are served from the query cache. Only statements that modify databases or tables count against the update limit.

An “account” in this context corresponds to a row in the mysql.user system table. That is, a connection is assessed against the User and Host values in the user table row that applies to the connection. For example, an account 'usera'@'%.example.com' corresponds to a row in the user table that has User and Host values of usera and %.example.com, to permit usera to connect from any host in the example.com domain. In this case, the server applies resource limits in this row collectively to all connections by usera from any host in the example.com domain because all such connections use the same account.

Before MySQL 5.0, an “account” was assessed against the actual host from which a user connects. This older method of accounting may be selected by starting the server with the `--old-style-user-limits` option. In this case, if usera connects simultaneously from host1.example.com and
host2.example.com, the server applies the account resource limits separately to each connection. If usera connects again from host1.example.com, the server applies the limits for that connection together with the existing connection from that host.

To establish resource limits for an account at account-creation time, use the CREATE USER statement. To modify the limits for an existing account, use ALTER USER. Provide a WITH clause that names each resource to be limited. The default value for each limit is zero (no limit). For example, to create a new account that can access the customer database, but only in a limited fashion, issue these statements:

```sql
mysql> CREATE USER 'francis'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'frank'
    -> WITH MAX_QUERIES_PER_HOUR 20
    -> MAX_UPDATES_PER_HOUR 10
    -> MAX_CONNECTIONS_PER_HOUR 5
    -> MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS 2;
```

The limit types need not all be named in the WITH clause, but those named can be present in any order. The value for each per-hour limit should be an integer representing a count per hour. For MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS, the limit is an integer representing the maximum number of simultaneous connections by the account. If this limit is set to zero, the global max_user_connections system variable value determines the number of simultaneous connections. If max_user_connections is also zero, there is no limit for the account.

To modify limits for an existing account, use an ALTER USER statement. The following statement changes the query limit for francis to 100:

```sql
mysql> ALTER USER 'francis'@'localhost' WITH MAX_QUERIES_PER_HOUR 100;
```

The statement modifies only the limit value specified and leaves the account otherwise unchanged.

To remove a limit, set its value to zero. For example, to remove the limit on how many times per hour francis can connect, use this statement:

```sql
mysql> ALTER USER 'francis'@'localhost' WITH MAX_CONNECTIONS_PER_HOUR 0;
```

As mentioned previously, the simultaneous-connection limit for an account is determined from the MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS limit and the max_user_connections system variable. Suppose that the global max_user_connections value is 10 and three accounts have individual resource limits specified as follows:

```sql
ALTER USER 'user1'@'localhost' WITH MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS 0;
ALTER USER 'user2'@'localhost' WITH MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS 5;
ALTER USER 'user3'@'localhost' WITH MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS 20;
```

user1 has a connection limit of 10 (the global max_user_connections value) because it has a MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS limit of zero. user2 and user3 have connection limits of 5 and 20, respectively, because they have nonzero MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS limits.

The server stores resource limits for an account in the user table row corresponding to the account. The max_questions, max_updates, and max_connections columns store the per-hour limits, and the max_user_connections column stores the MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS limit. (See Section 4.2, “Grant Tables”.)

Resource-use counting takes place when any account has a nonzero limit placed on its use of any of the resources.

As the server runs, it counts the number of times each account uses resources. If an account reaches its limit on number of connections within the last hour, the server rejects further connections for the account until that hour is up. Similarly, if the account reaches its limit on the number of queries or updates, the server rejects further queries or updates until the hour is up. In all such cases, the server issues appropriate error messages.
Resource counting occurs per account, not per client. For example, if your account has a query limit of 50, you cannot increase your limit to 100 by making two simultaneous client connections to the server. Queries issued on both connections are counted together.

The current per-hour resource-use counts can be reset globally for all accounts, or individually for a given account:

- To reset the current counts to zero for all accounts, issue a `FLUSH USER_RESOURCES` statement. The counts also can be reset by reloading the grant tables (for example, with a `FLUSH PRIVILEGES` statement or a `mysqladmin reload` command).

- The counts for an individual account can be reset to zero by setting any of its limits again. Specify a limit value equal to the value currently assigned to the account.

Per-hour counter resets do not affect the `MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS` limit.

All counts begin at zero when the server starts. Counts do not carry over through server restarts.

For the `MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS` limit, an edge case can occur if the account currently has open the maximum number of connections permitted to it: A disconnect followed quickly by a connect can result in an error (`ER_TOO_MANY_USER_CONNECTIONS` or `ER_USER_LIMIT_REACHED`) if the server has not fully processed the disconnect by the time the connect occurs. When the server finishes disconnect processing, another connection will once more be permitted.

### 5.6 Assigning Account Passwords

Required credentials for clients that connect to the MySQL server can include a password. This section describes how to assign passwords for MySQL accounts.

MySQL stores credentials in the `user` table in the `mysql` system database. Operations that assign or modify passwords are permitted only to users with the `CREATE USER` privilege, or, alternatively, privileges for the `mysql` database (`INSERT` privilege to create new accounts, `UPDATE` privilege to modify existing accounts). If the `read_only` system variable is enabled, use of account-modification statements such as `CREATE USER` or `ALTER USER` additionally requires the `SUPER` privilege.

The discussion here summarizes syntax only for the most common password-assignment statements. For complete details on other possibilities, see `CREATE USER Syntax`, `ALTER USER Syntax`, `GRANT Syntax`, and `SET PASSWORD Syntax`.

MySQL uses plugins to perform client authentication; see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”. In password-assigning statements, the authentication plugin associated with an account performs any hashing required of a cleartext password specified. This enables MySQL to obfuscate passwords prior to storing them in the `mysql.user` system table. For the statements described here, MySQL automatically hashes the password specified. There are also syntaxes for `CREATE USER` and `ALTER USER` that permit hashed values to be specified literally. For details, see the descriptions of those statements.

To assign a password when you create a new account, use `CREATE USER` and include an `IDENTIFIED BY` clause:

```sql
CREATE USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
```

`CREATE USER` also supports syntax for specifying the account authentication plugin. See `CREATE USER Syntax`.

To assign or change a password for an existing account, use the `ALTER USER` statement with an `IDENTIFIED BY` clause:

```sql
ALTER USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
```
If you are not connected as an anonymous user, you can change your own password without naming your own account literally:

```sql
ALTER USER USER() IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
```

To change an account password from the command line, use the `mysqladmin` command:

```bash
mysqladmin -u user_name -h host_name password "password"
```

The account for which this command sets the password is the one with a row in the `mysql.user` system table that matches `user_name` in the `User` column and the client host `from which you connect` in the `Host` column.

**Warning**

Setting a password using `mysqladmin` should be considered **insecure**. On some systems, your password becomes visible to system status programs such as `ps` that may be invoked by other users to display command lines. MySQL clients typically overwrite the command-line password argument with zeros during their initialization sequence. However, there is still a brief interval during which the value is visible. Also, on some systems this overwriting strategy is ineffective and the password remains visible to `ps` (SystemV Unix systems and perhaps others are subject to this problem).

If you are using MySQL Replication, be aware that, currently, a password used by a replication slave as part of a `CHANGE MASTER TO` statement is effectively limited to 32 characters in length; if the password is longer, any excess characters are truncated. This is not due to any limit imposed by the MySQL Server generally, but rather is an issue specific to MySQL Replication. (For more information, see Bug #43439.)

### 5.7 Password Management

MySQL enables database administrators to expire account passwords manually, and to establish a policy for automatic password expiration. Expiration policy can be established globally, and individual accounts can be set to either defer to the global policy or override the global policy with specific per-account behavior.

**Note**

Password-expiration capabilities apply only to accounts that store credentials internally in the `mysql.user` system table (`mysql_native_password` or `sha256_password`). For accounts that use plugins that perform authentication against an external credential system, password management must be handled externally against that system as well.

To expire an account password manually, use the `ALTER USER` statement:

```sql
ALTER USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE;
```

This operation marks the password expired in the corresponding `mysql.user` system table row.

Password expiration according to policy is automatic and is based on password age, which for a given account is assessed from the date and time of its most recent password change. The `mysql.user` system table indicates for each account when its password was last changed, and the server automatically treats the password as expired at client connection time if its age is greater than its permitted lifetime. This works with no explicit manual password expiration.

To establish automatic password-expiration policy globally, use the `default_password_lifetime` system variable. Its default value is 0, which disables automatic password expiration. If the value of
**default_password_lifetime** is a positive integer $N$, it indicates the permitted password lifetime, such that passwords must be changed every $N$ days.

**Note**

Prior to 5.7.11, the default **default_password_lifetime** value is 360 (passwords must be changed approximately once per year). For such versions, be aware that, if you make no changes to the **default_password_lifetime** variable or to individual user accounts, each user password expires after 360 days and the account starts running in restricted mode. Clients that connect to the server using the account then get an error indicating that the password must be changed: **ERROR 1820 (HY000): You must reset your password using ALTER USER statement before executing this statement.**

However, this is easy to miss for clients that automatically connect to the server, such as connections made from scripts. To avoid having such clients suddenly stop working due to a password expiring, make sure to change the password expiration settings for those clients, like this:

```
ALTER USER 'script'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE NEVER
```

Alternatively, set the **default_password_lifetime** variable to 0, thus disabling automatic password expiration for all users.

Examples:

- To establish a global policy that passwords have a lifetime of approximately six months, start the server with these lines in a server **my.cnf** file:

  ```
  [mysqld]
  default_password_lifetime=180
  ```

- To establish a global policy such that passwords never expire, set **default_password_lifetime** to 0:

  ```
  [mysqld]
  default_password_lifetime=0
  ```

- **default_password_lifetime** can also be changed at runtime:

  ```
  SET GLOBAL default_password_lifetime = 180;
  SET GLOBAL default_password_lifetime = 0;
  ```

The global password-expiration policy applies to all accounts that have not been set to override it. To establish policy for individual accounts, use the PASSWORD_EXPIRE options of the **CREATE USER** and **ALTER USER** statements. See **CREATE USER Syntax**, and **ALTER USER Syntax**.

Example account-specific statements:

- Require the password to be changed every 90 days:

  ```
  CREATE USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE INTERVAL 90 DAY;
  ALTER USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE INTERVAL 90 DAY;
  ```

  This expiration option overrides the global policy for all accounts named by the statement.

- Disable password expiration:

  ```
  CREATE USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE NEVER;
  ```
Password Expiration and Sandbox Mode

ALTER USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE NEVER;

This expiration option overrides the global policy for all accounts named by the statement.

• Defer to the global expiration policy for all accounts named by the statement:

CREATE USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE DEFAULT;
ALTER USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE DEFAULT;

When a client successfully connects, the server determines whether the account password has expired:

• The server checks whether the password has been manually expired.

• Otherwise, the server checks whether the password age is greater than its permitted lifetime according to the automatic password expiration policy. If so, the server considers the password expired.

If the password is expired (whether manually or automatically), the server either disconnects the client or restricts the operations permitted to it (see Section 5.8, “Password Expiration and Sandbox Mode”). Operations performed by a restricted client result in an error until the user establishes a new account password:

```
mysql> SELECT 1;
ERROR 1820 (HY000): You must reset your password using ALTER USER statement before executing this statement.
```

```
mysql> ALTER USER USER() IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)
```

```
mysql> SELECT 1;
+---+
| 1 |
+---+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

This restricted mode of operation permits SET statements, which is useful before MySQL 5.7.6 if SET PASSWORD must be used instead of ALTER USER and the account password has a hashing format that requires old_passwords to be set to a value different from its default.

After the client resets the password, the server restores normal access for the session, as well as for subsequent connections that use the account. It is also possible for an administrative user to reset the account password, but any existing restricted sessions for that account remain restricted. A client using the account must disconnect and reconnect before statements can be executed successfully.

Note

It is possible to “reset” a password by setting it to its current value. As a matter of good policy, it is preferable to choose a different password.

5.8 Password Expiration and Sandbox Mode

MySQL provides password-expiration capability, which enables database administrators to require that users reset their password. Passwords can be expired manually, and on the basis of a policy for automatic expiration (see Section 5.7, “Password Management”).

For each connection that uses an account with an expired password, the server either disconnects the client or restricts the client to “sandbox mode,” in which the server permits to the client only those operations necessary to reset the expired password. Which action is taken by the server depends on both client and server settings, as discussed later.

If the server disconnects the client, it returns an ER_MUST_CHANGE_PASSWORD_LOGIN error:
Password Expiration and Sandbox Mode

If the server restricts the client to sandbox mode, these operations are permitted within the client session:

- The client can reset the account password with `ALTER USER` or `SET PASSWORD`. After the password has been reset, the server restores normal access for the session, as well as for subsequent connections that use the account.

  It is possible to "reset" a password by setting it to its current value. As a matter of good policy, it is preferable to choose a different password.

- The client can use `SET` statements, which is useful before MySQL 5.7.6 if `SET PASSWORD` must be used instead of `ALTER USER` and the account password has a hashing format that requires `old_passwords` to be set to a value different from its default.

For any operation not permitted within the session, the server returns an `ER_MUST_CHANGE_PASSWORD` error:

```sql
mysql> USE performance_schema;
ERROR 1820 (HY000): You must reset your password using ALTER USER statement before executing this statement.
```

That is what normally happens for interactive invocations of the `mysql` client because by default such invocations are put in sandbox mode. To clear the error and resume normal functioning, select a new password.

For noninteractive invocations of the `mysql` client (for example, in batch mode), the server normally disconnects the client if the password is expired. To permit noninteractive `mysql` invocations to stay connected so that the password can be changed (using the statements just described), add the `--connect-expired-password` option to the `mysql` command.

As mentioned previously, whether the server disconnects an expired-password client or restricts it to sandbox mode depends on a combination of client and server settings. The following discussion describes the relevant settings and how they interact. The discussion applies only for accounts with expired passwords. If a client connects using a nonexpired password, the server handles the client normally.

On the client side, a given client indicates whether it can handle sandbox mode for expired passwords. For clients that use the C client library, there are two ways to do this:

- Pass the `MYSQL_OPT_CAN_HANDLE_EXPIRED_PASSWORDS` flag to `mysql_options()` prior to connecting:

```c
arg = 1;
result = mysql_options(mysql,
    MYSQL_OPT_CAN_HANDLE_EXPIRED_PASSWORDS,
    &arg);
```

The `mysql` client enables `MYSQL_OPT_CAN_HANDLE_EXPIRED_PASSWORDS` if invoked interactively or the `--connect-expired-password` option is given.

- Pass the `CLIENT_CAN_HANDLE_EXPIRED_PASSWORDS` flag to `mysql_real_connect()` at connection time:
Other MySQL Connectors have their own conventions for indicating readiness to handle sandbox mode. See the documentation for the Connector in which you are interested.

On the server side, if a client indicates that it can handle expired passwords, the server puts it in sandbox mode.

If a client does not indicate that it can handle expired passwords (or uses an older version of the client library that cannot so indicate), the server action depends on the value of the `disconnect_on_expired_password` system variable:

- If `disconnect_on_expired_password` is enabled (the default), the server disconnects the client with an `ER_MUST_CHANGE_PASSWORD_LOGIN` error.
- If `disconnect_on_expired_password` is disabled, the server puts the client in sandbox mode.

### 5.9 Pluggable Authentication

When a client connects to the MySQL server, the server uses the user name provided by the client and the client host to select the appropriate account row from the `mysql.user` system table. The server then authenticates the client, determining from the account row which authentication plugin applies to the client:

- If the server cannot find the plugin, an error occurs and the connection attempt is rejected.
- Otherwise, the server invokes that plugin to authenticate the user, and the plugin returns a status to the server indicating whether the user provided the correct password and is permitted to connect.

Pluggable authentication enables these important capabilities:

- **Choice of authentication methods.** Pluggable authentication makes it easy for DBAs to choose and change the authentication method used for individual MySQL accounts.

- **External authentication.** Pluggable authentication makes it possible for clients to connect to the MySQL server with credentials appropriate for authentication methods that store credentials elsewhere than in the `mysql.user` system table. For example, plugins can be created to use external authentication methods such as PAM, Windows login IDs, LDAP, or Kerberos.

- **Proxy users:** If a user is permitted to connect, an authentication plugin can return to the server a user name different from the name of the connecting user, to indicate that the connecting user is a proxy for another user (the proxied user). While the connection lasts, the proxy user is treated, for purposes of access control, as having the privileges of the proxied user. In effect, one user impersonates another. For more information, see Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”.

**Note**

If you start the server with the `--skip-grant-tables` option, authentication plugins are not used even if loaded because the server performs no client authentication and permits any client to connect. Because this is insecure, you might want to use `--skip-grant-tables` in conjunction with `--skip-networking` to prevent remote clients from connecting.

- **Available Authentication Plugins**

- **Authentication Plugin Usage**

### Available Authentication Plugins

MySQL 5.7 provides these authentication plugins:
• Plugins that perform native authentication: that is, authentication based on the password hashing methods in use from before the introduction of pluggable authentication in MySQL. The `mysql_native_password` plugin implements authentication based on the native password hashing method. The `mysql_old_password` plugin implements native authentication based on the older (pre-4.1) password hashing method (and is deprecated and removed in MySQL 5.7.5). See Section 7.1.1, “Native Pluggable Authentication”, and Section 7.1.2, “Old Native Pluggable Authentication”.

• Plugins that perform authentication using SHA-256 password hashing. This is stronger encryption than that available with native authentication. See Section 7.1.4, “SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication”, and Section 7.1.5, “Caching SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication”.

• A client-side plugin that sends the password to the server without hashing or encryption. This plugin is used in conjunction with server-side plugins that require access to the password exactly as provided by the client user. See Section 7.1.6, “Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication”.

• A plugin that performs external authentication using PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules), enabling MySQL Server to use PAM to authenticate MySQL users. This plugin supports proxy users as well. See Section 7.1.7, “PAM Pluggable Authentication”.

• A plugin that performs external authentication on Windows, enabling MySQL Server to use native Windows services to authenticate client connections. Users who have logged in to Windows can connect from MySQL client programs to the server based on the information in their environment without specifying an additional password. This plugin supports proxy users as well. See Section 7.1.8, “Windows Pluggable Authentication”.

• Plugins that perform authentication using LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) to authenticate MySQL users by accessing directory services such as X.500. These plugins support proxy users as well. See Section 7.1.9, “LDAP Pluggable Authentication”.

• A plugin that prevents all client connections to any account that uses it. Use cases for this plugin include proxied accounts that should never permit direct login but are accessed only through proxy accounts and accounts that must be able to execute stored programs and views with elevated privileges without exposing those privileges to ordinary users. See Section 7.1.10, “No-Login Pluggable Authentication”.

• A plugin that authenticates clients that connect from the local host through the Unix socket file. See Section 7.1.11, “Socket Peer-Credential Pluggable Authentication”.

• A test plugin that checks account credentials and logs success or failure to the server error log. This plugin is intended for testing and development purposes, and as an example of how to write an authentication plugin. See Section 7.1.12, “Test Pluggable Authentication”.

Note

For information about current restrictions on the use of pluggable authentication, including which connectors support which plugins, see Restrictions on Pluggable Authentication.

Third-party connector developers should read that section to determine the extent to which a connector can take advantage of pluggable authentication capabilities and what steps to take to become more compliant.

If you are interested in writing your own authentication plugins, see Writing Authentication Plugins.

Authentication Plugin Usage

This section provides general instructions for installing and using authentication plugins. For instructions specific to a given plugin, see the section that describes that plugin under Section 7.1, “Authentication Plugins”.
In general, pluggable authentication uses a pair of corresponding plugins on the server and client sides, so you use a given authentication method like this:

- If necessary, install the plugin library or libraries containing the appropriate plugins. On the server host, install the library containing the server-side plugin, so that the server can use it to authenticate client connections. Similarly, on each client host, install the library containing the client-side plugin for use by client programs. Authentication plugins that are built in need not be installed.

- For each MySQL account that you create, specify the appropriate server-side plugin to use for authentication. If the account is to use the default authentication plugin, the account-creation statement need not specify the plugin explicitly. The `default_authentication_plugin` system variable configures the default authentication plugin.

- When a client connects, the server-side plugin tells the client program which client-side plugin to use for authentication.

In the case that an account uses an authentication method that is the default for both the server and the client program, the server need not communicate to the client which client-side plugin to use, and a round trip in client/server negotiation can be avoided. This is true for accounts that use native MySQL authentication.

For standard MySQL clients such as `mysql` and `mysqladmin`, the `--default-auth=plugin_name` option can be specified on the command line as a hint about which client-side plugin the program can expect to use, although the server will override this if the server-side plugin associated with the user account requires a different client-side plugin.

If the client program does not find the client-side plugin library file, specify a `--plugin-dir=dir_name` option to indicate the plugin library directory location.

### 5.10 Proxy Users

The MySQL server authenticates client connections using authentication plugins. The plugin that authenticates a given connection may request that the connecting (external) user be treated as a different user for privilege-checking purposes. This enables the external user to be a proxy for the second user;

- The external user is a “proxy user” (a user who can impersonate or become known as another user).
- The second user is a “proxied user” (a user whose identity and privileges can be assumed by a proxy user).

This section describes how the proxy user capability works. For general information about authentication plugins, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”. For information about specific plugins, see Section 7.1, “Authentication Plugins”. For information about writing authentication plugins that support proxy users, see Implementing Proxy User Support in Authentication Plugins.

- Requirements for Proxy User Support
- Granting the Proxy Privilege
- Default Proxy Users
- Default Proxy User and Anonymous User Conflicts
- Server Support for Proxy User Mapping
- Proxy User System Variables

### Requirements for Proxy User Support

For proxying to occur for a given authentication plugin, these conditions must be satisfied:
Requirements for Proxy User Support

- Proxying must be supported, either by the plugin itself, or by the MySQL server on behalf of the plugin. In the latter case, server support may need to be enabled explicitly; see Server Support for Proxy User Mapping.

- The proxy user account must be set up to be authenticated by the plugin. Use the `CREATE USER` statement to associate an account with an authentication plugin, or `ALTER USER` to change its plugin.

- The proxied user account must be created and granted the privileges to be assumed by the proxy user. Use the `CREATE USER` and `GRANT` statements for this.

- The proxy user account must have the `PROXY` privilege for the proxied account. Use the `GRANT` statement for this.

- For a client connecting to the proxy account to be treated as a proxy user, the authentication plugin must return a user name different from the client user name, to indicate the user name of the proxied account that defines the privileges to be assumed by the proxy user.

  Alternatively, for plugins that are provided proxy mapping by the server, the proxied user is determined from the `PROXY` privilege held by the proxy user.

The proxy mechanism permits mapping only the client user name to the proxied user name. There is no provision for mapping host names. When a connecting client matches a proxy account, the server attempts to find a match for a proxied account using the user name returned by the authentication plugin and the host name of the proxy account.

Consider the following account definitions:

```
-- create proxy account
CREATE USER 'employee_ext'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED WITH my_auth_plugin AS 'my_auth_string';
-- create proxied account and grant its privileges
CREATE USER 'employee'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED BY 'employee_pass';
  GRANT ALL ON employees.*
    TO 'employee'@'localhost';
-- grant PROXY privilege to proxy account for proxied account
GRANT PROXY
  ON 'employee'@'localhost'
  TO 'employee_ext'@'localhost';
```

When a client connects as `employee_ext` from the local host, MySQL uses the plugin named `my_auth_plugin` to perform authentication. Suppose that `my_auth_plugin` returns a user name of `employee` to the server, based on the content of `my_auth_string` and perhaps by consulting some external authentication system. The name `employee` differs from `employee_ext`, so returning `employee` serves as a request to the server to treat the `employee_ext` client, for purposes of privilege checking, as the `employee` local user.

In this case, `employee_ext` is the proxy user and `employee` is the proxied user.

The server verifies that proxy authentication for `employee` is possible for the `employee_ext` user by checking whether `employee_ext` (the proxy user) has the `PROXY` privilege for `employee` (the proxied user). If this privilege has not been granted, an error occurs. Otherwise, `employee_ext` assumes the privileges of `employee`. The server checks statements executed during the client session by `employee_ext` against the privileges granted to `employee`. In this case, `employee_ext` can access tables in the `employees` database.

When proxying occurs, the `USER()` and `CURRENT_USER()` functions can be used to see the difference between the connecting user (the proxy user) and the account whose privileges apply during the current session (the proxied user). For the example just described, those functions return these values:
Granting the Proxy Privilege

The `PROXY` privilege is needed to enable an external user to connect as and have the privileges of another user. To grant this privilege, use the `GRANT` statement. For example:

```
grant proxy on 'proxied_user' to 'proxy_user';
```

The statement creates a row in the `mysql.proxies_priv` grant table.

At connection time, `proxy_user` must represent a valid externally authenticated MySQL user, and `proxied_user` must represent a valid locally authenticated user. Otherwise, the connection attempt fails.

The corresponding `REVOKE` syntax is:

```
revoke proxy on 'proxied_user' from 'proxy_user';
```

MySQL `GRANT` and `REVOKE` syntax extensions work as usual. For example:

```
grant proxy on 'a' to 'b', 'c', 'd';
grant proxy on 'a' to 'd' with grant option;
grant proxy on 'a' to '%';
revoke proxy on 'a' from 'b', 'c', 'd';
```

The `PROXY` privilege can be granted in these cases:

- By a user that has `GRANT PROXY ... WITH GRANT OPTION` for `proxied_user`.
- By `proxied_user` for itself: The value of `USER()` must exactly match `CURRENT_USER()` and `proxied_user`, for both the user name and host name parts of the account name.

The initial `root` account created during MySQL installation has the `PROXY ... WITH GRANT OPTION` privilege for `''@'`, that is, for all users and all hosts. This enables `root` to set up proxy users, as well as to delegate to other accounts the authority to set up proxy users. For example, `root` can do this:

```
create user 'admin''@'localhost' identified by 'test';
grant proxy on '%' to 'admin''@'localhost' with grant option;
```

Those statements create an `admin` user that can manage all `GRANT PROXY` mappings. For example, `admin` can do this:

```
grant proxy on sally to joe;
```
Default Proxy Users

To specify that some or all users should connect using a given authentication plugin, create a “blank” MySQL account (’@’), associate it with that plugin, and let the plugin return the real authenticated user name (if different from the blank user). For example, suppose that there exists a plugin named ldap_auth that implements LDAP authentication and maps connecting users onto either a developer or manager account. To set up proxying of users onto these accounts, use the following statements:

```sql
-- create default proxy account
CREATE USER '@' IDENTIFIED WITH ldap_auth AS 'O=Oracle, OU=MySQL';
-- create proxied accounts
CREATE USER 'developer'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'developer_pass';
CREATE USER 'manager'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'manager_pass';
-- grant PROXY privilege to default proxy account for proxied accounts
GRANT PROXY ON 'manager'@'localhost' TO '@';
GRANT PROXY ON 'developer'@'localhost' TO '@';
```

Now assume that a client connects as follows:

```
shell> mysql --user=myuser --password ...
Enter password: myuser_pass
```

The server will not find myuser defined as a MySQL user. But because there is a blank user account (’@’) that matches the client user name and host name, the server authenticates the client against that account: The server invokes the ldap_auth authentication plugin and passes myuser and myuser_pass to it as the user name and password.

If the ldap_auth plugin finds in the LDAP directory that myuser_pass is not the correct password for myuser, authentication fails and the server rejects the connection.

If the password is correct and ldap_auth finds that myuser is a developer, it returns the user name developer to the MySQL server, rather than myuser. Returning a user name different from the client user name of myuser signals to the server that it should treat myuser as a proxy. The server verifies that '@' can authenticate as developer (because that account has the PROXY privilege to do so) and accepts the connection. The session proceeds with myuser having the privileges of developer, the proxied user. (These privileges should be set up by the DBA using GRANT statements, not shown.) The USER() and CURRENT_USER() functions return these values:

```
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER();
+------------------+---------------------+
| USER()           | CURRENT_USER()      |
+------------------+---------------------+
| myuser@localhost | developer@localhost |
```

If the plugin instead finds in the LDAP directory that myuser is a manager, it returns manager as the user name and the session proceeds with myuser having the privileges of manager.

```
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER();
+------------------+-------------------+
| USER()           | CURRENT_USER()    |
+------------------+-------------------+
| myuser@localhost | manager@localhost |
```

For simplicity, external authentication cannot be multilevel: Neither the credentials for developer nor those for manager are taken into account in the preceding example. However, they are still used if a client tries to connect and authenticate directly as the developer or manager account, which is why those accounts should be assigned passwords.

**Default Proxy User and Anonymous User Conflicts**
If you intend to create a default proxy user, check for other existing “match any user” accounts that take precedence over the default proxy user because they can prevent that user from working as intended.

In the preceding discussion, the default proxy user account has `'` in the host part, which matches any host. If you set up a default proxy user, take care to also check whether nonproxy accounts exist with the same user part and `'%'` in the host part, because `'%'` also matches any host, but has precedence over `'` by the rules that the server uses to sort account rows internally (see Section 4.4, “Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification”).

Suppose that a MySQL installation includes these two accounts:

```sql
-- create default proxy account
CREATE USER ''@''
  IDENTIFIED WITH some_plugin AS 'some_auth_string';

-- create anonymous account
CREATE USER ''@'%'`
  IDENTIFIED BY 'some_password';
```

The first account (`''@''`) is intended as the default proxy user, used to authenticate connections for users who do not otherwise match a more-specific account. The second account (`''@'%'`) is an anonymous-user account, which might have been created, for example, to enable users without their own account to connect anonymously.

Both accounts have the same user part (`''`), which matches any user. And each account has a host part that matches any host. Nevertheless, there is a priority in account matching for connection attempts because the matching rules sort a host of `'%'` ahead of `'`. For accounts that do not match any more-specific account, the server attempts to authenticate them against `'@'%'` (the anonymous user) rather than `'@'` (the default proxy user). The result is that the default proxy account is never used.

To avoid this problem, use one of the following strategies:

- Remove the anonymous account so that it does not conflict with the default proxy user. This might be a good idea anyway if you want to associate every connection with a named user.

- Use a more-specific default proxy user that matches ahead of the anonymous user. For example, to permit only `localhost` proxy connections, use `'@=localhost'`:

  ```sql
  CREATE USER ''@=localhost'
    IDENTIFIED WITH some_plugin AS 'some_auth_string';
  ```

  In addition, modify any GRANT PROXY statements to name `'@=localhost'` rather than `'@'` as the proxy user.

  Be aware that this strategy prevents anonymous-user connections from `localhost`.

- Create multiple proxy users, one for local connections and one for “everything else” (remote connections). This can be useful particularly when local users should have different privileges from remote users.

  Create the proxy users:

  ```sql
  -- create proxy user for local connections
  CREATE USER ''@=localhost'
    IDENTIFIED WITH some_plugin AS 'some_auth_string';

  -- create proxy user for remote connections
  CREATE USER ''@'%'`
    IDENTIFIED WITH some_plugin AS 'some_auth_string';
  ```

Create the proxied users:
Server Support for Proxy User Mapping

```
-- create proxied user for local connections
CREATE USER 'developer'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED BY 'some_password';

-- create proxied user for remote connections
CREATE USER 'developer'@'%' IDENTIFIED BY 'some_password';
```

Grant the proxy privilege to each proxy user for the corresponding proxied user:

```
GRANT PROXY ON 'developer'@'localhost' TO ''@'localhost';
GRANT PROXY ON 'developer'@'%' TO ''@'%';
```

Finally, grant appropriate privileges to the local and remote proxied users (not shown).

Assume that the `some_plugin'/some_auth_string' combination causes `some_plugin' to map the client user name to `developer'. Local connections match the ''@'localhost' proxy user, which maps to the 'developer'@'localhost' proxied user. Remote connections match the ''@'%' proxy user, which maps to the 'developer'@'%' proxied user.

**Server Support for Proxy User Mapping**

Some authentication plugins implement proxy user mapping for themselves (for example, the PAM and Windows authentication plugins). Other authentication plugins do not support proxy users by default. Of these, some can request that the MySQL server itself map proxy users according to granted proxy privileges: `mysql_native_password', `sha256_password'. If the `check_proxy_users' system variable is enabled, the server performs proxy user mapping for any authentication plugins that make such a request:

- By default, `check_proxy_users' is disabled, so the server performs no proxy user mapping even for authentication plugins that request server support for proxy users.
- If `check_proxy_users' is enabled, it may also be necessary to enable plugin-specific system variables to take advantage of server proxy user mapping support:
  - For the `mysql_native_password' plugin, enable `mysql_native_password_proxy_users'.
  - For the `sha256_password' plugin, enable `sha256_password_proxy_users'.

Proxy user mapping performed by the server is subject to these restrictions:

- The server will not proxy to or from an anonymous user, even if the associated `PROXY' privilege is granted.
- When a single account has been granted proxy privileges for more than one proxied account, server proxy user mapping is nondeterministic. Therefore, granting to a single account proxy privileges for multiple proxied accounts is discouraged.

**Proxy User System Variables**

Two system variables help trace the proxy login process:

- `proxy_user`: This value is `NULL` if proxying is not used. Otherwise, it indicates the proxy user account. For example, if a client authenticates through the ''@' proxy account, this variable is set as follows:

  ```
  mysql> SELECT @@proxy_user;
  +-----------------+
  | @@proxy_user   |
  | ''@'           |
  +-----------------+
  ```
• **external_user**: Sometimes the authentication plugin may use an external user to authenticate to the MySQL server. For example, when using Windows native authentication, a plugin that authenticates using the windows API does not need the login ID passed to it. However, it still uses a Windows user ID to authenticate. The plugin may return this external user ID (or the first 512 UTF-8 bytes of it) to the server using the `external_user` read-only session variable. If the plugin does not set this variable, its value is **NULL**.

### 5.11 User Account Locking

As of version 5.7.6, MySQL supports locking and unlocking user accounts using the `ACCOUNT LOCK` and `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` clauses for the `CREATE USER` and `ALTER USER` statements:

- When used with `CREATE USER`, these clauses specify the initial locking state for a new account. In the absence of either clause, the account is created in an unlocked state.
- When used with `ALTER USER`, these clauses specify the new locking state for an existing account. In the absence of either clause, the account locking state remains unchanged.

Account locking state is recorded in the `account_locked` column of the `mysql.user` system table. The output from `SHOW CREATE USER` indicates whether an account is locked or unlocked.

If a client attempts to connect to a locked account, the attempt fails. The server increments the `Locked_connects` status variable that indicates the number of attempts to connect to a locked account, returns an `ER_ACCOUNT_HAS_BEEN_LOCKED` error, and writes a message to the error log:

```
Access denied for user 'user_name'@'host_name'.
Account is locked.
```

Locking an account does not affect being able to connect using a proxy user that assumes the identity of the locked account. It also does not affect the ability to execute stored programs or views that have a `DEFINER` clause naming the locked account. That is, the ability to use a proxied account or stored programs or views is not affected by locking the account.

The account-locking capability depends on the presence of the `account_locked` column in the `mysql.user` system table. For upgrades from MySQL versions older than 5.7.6, run `mysql_upgrade` to ensure that this column exists. For nonupgraded installations that have no `account_locked` column, the server treats all accounts as unlocked, and using the `ACCOUNT LOCK` or `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` clauses produces an error.

### 5.12 SQL-Based MySQL Account Activity Auditing

Applications can use the following guidelines to perform SQL-based auditing that ties database activity to MySQL accounts.

MySQL accounts correspond to rows in the `mysql.user` system table. When a client connects successfully, the server authenticates the client to a particular row in this table. The `User` and `Host` column values in this row uniquely identify the account and correspond to the `user_name'@'host_name'` format in which account names are written in SQL statements.

The account used to authenticate a client determines which privileges the client has. Normally, the `CURRENT_USER()` function can be invoked to determine which account this is for the client user. Its value is constructed from the `User` and `Host` columns of the `user` table row for the account.

However, there are circumstances under which the `CURRENT_USER()` value corresponds not to the client user but to a different account. This occurs in contexts when privilege checking is not based the client's account:

- Stored routines (procedures and functions) defined with the `SQL SECURITY DEFINER` characteristic
- Views defined with the `SQL SECURITY DEFINER` characteristic
• Triggers and events

In those contexts, privilege checking is done against the `DEFINER` account and `CURRENT_USER()` refers to that account, not to the account for the client who invoked the stored routine or view or who caused the trigger to activate. To determine the invoking user, you can call the `USER()` function, which returns a value indicating the actual user name provided by the client and the host from which the client connected. However, this value does not necessarily correspond directly to an account in the `user` table, because the `USER()` value never contains wildcards, whereas account values (as returned by `CURRENT_USER()`) may contain user name and host name wildcards.

For example, a blank user name matches any user, so an account of `'@localhost'` enables clients to connect as an anonymous user from the local host with any user name. In this case, if a client connects as `user1` from the local host, `USER()` and `CURRENT_USER()` return different values:

```sql
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER();
+-----------------+----------------+
| USER()          | CURRENT_USER() |
+-----------------+----------------+
| user1@localhost | @localhost     |
+-----------------+----------------+
```

The host name part of an account can contain wildcards, too. If the host name contains a `%` or `_` pattern character or uses netmask notation, the account can be used for clients connecting from multiple hosts and the `CURRENT_USER()` value will not indicate which one. For example, the account `'user2'@'%.example.com'` can be used by `user2` to connect from any host in the `example.com` domain. If `user2` connects from `remote.example.com`, `USER()` and `CURRENT_USER()` return different values:

```sql
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER();
+--------------------------+---------------------+
| USER()                   | CURRENT_USER()      |
+--------------------------+---------------------+
| user2@remote.example.com | user2@%.example.com |
+--------------------------+---------------------+
```

If an application must invoke `USER()` for user auditing (for example, if it does auditing from within triggers) but must also be able to associate the `USER()` value with an account in the `user` table, it is necessary to avoid accounts that contain wildcards in the `User` or `Host` column. Specifically, do not permit `User` to be empty (which creates an anonymous-user account), and do not permit pattern characters or netmask notation in `Host` values. All accounts must have a nonempty `User` value and literal `Host` value.

With respect to the previous examples, the `'@localhost'` and `'user2'@'%.example.com'` accounts should be changed not to use wildcards:

```sql
RENAME USER ''@'localhost' TO 'user1'@'localhost';
RENAME USER 'user2'@'%.example.com' TO 'user2'@'remote.example.com';
```

If `user2` must be able to connect from several hosts in the `example.com` domain, there should be a separate account for each host.

To extract the user name or host name part from a `CURRENT_USER()` or `USER()` value, use the `SUBSTRING_INDEX()` function:

```sql
mysql> SELECT SUBSTRING_INDEX(CURRENT_USER(),'@',1);
+---------------------------------------+
| SUBSTRING_INDEX(CURRENT_USER(),'@',1) |
+---------------------------------------+
| user1                                 |
+---------------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT SUBSTRING_INDEX(CURRENT_USER(),'@',-1);
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBSTRING_INDEX(CURRENT_USER(), '@', -1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>localhost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 6 Using Encrypted Connections

Table of Contents

6.1 Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections ................................................................. 83
6.2 Command Options for Encrypted Connections ................................................................................. 86
6.3 Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys ................................................................................. 91
  6.3.1 Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL ...................................................... 91
  6.3.2 Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl ................................................................... 94
  6.3.3 Creating RSA Keys Using openssl ............................................................................................. 99
6.4 SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities ............................................................................................... 99
6.5 Building MySQL with Support for Encrypted Connections ............................................................. 100
6.6 Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers ............................................................................. 101
6.7 Connecting to MySQL Remotely from Windows with SSH ............................................................. 105

With an unencrypted connection between the MySQL client and the server, someone with access to
the network could watch all your traffic and inspect the data being sent or received between client and
server.

When you must move information over a network in a secure fashion, an unencrypted connection
is unacceptable. To make any kind of data unreadable, use encryption. Encryption algorithms must
include security elements to resist many kinds of known attacks such as changing the order of
encrypted messages or replaying data twice.

MySQL supports encrypted connections between clients and the server using the TLS (Transport
Layer Security) protocol. TLS is sometimes referred to as SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) but MySQL
does not actually use the SSL protocol for encrypted connections because its encryption is weak (see
Section 6.6, “Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers”).

TLS uses encryption algorithms to ensure that data received over a public network can be trusted. It
has mechanisms to detect data change, loss, or replay. TLS also incorporates algorithms that provide
identity verification using the X.509 standard.

X.509 makes it possible to identify someone on the Internet. In basic terms, there should be some
entity called a “Certificate Authority” (or CA) that assigns electronic certificates to anyone who needs
them. Certificates rely on asymmetric encryption algorithms that have two encryption keys (a public key
and a secret key). A certificate owner can present the certificate to another party as proof of identity. A
certificate consists of its owner’s public key. Any data encrypted using this public key can be decrypted
only using the corresponding secret key, which is held by the owner of the certificate.

MySQL can be compiled for encrypted-connection support using OpenSSL or yaSSL. For a
comparison of the two packages, see Section 6.4, “SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities” For
information about the encryption protocols and ciphers each package supports, see Section 6.6,
“Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers”.

By default, MySQL programs attempt to connect using encryption if the server supports encrypted
connections, falling back to an unencrypted connection if an encrypted connection cannot be
established. For information about options that affect use of encrypted connections, see Section 6.1,
“Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections” and Section 6.2, “Command Options for
Encrypted Connections”.

MySQL performs encryption on a per-connection basis, and use of encryption for a given user can be
optional or mandatory. This enables you to choose an encrypted or unencrypted connection according
to the requirements of individual applications. For information on how to require users to use encrypted
connections, see the discussion of the REQUIRE clause of the CREATE USER statement in CREATE
USER Syntax. See also the description of the require_secure_transport system variable at
Server System Variables.
Encrypted connections can be used between master and slave replication servers. See Setting Up Replication to Use Encrypted Connections.

For information about using encrypted connections from the MySQL C API, see C API Encrypted Connection Support.

It is also possible to connect using encryption from within an SSH connection to the MySQL server host. For an example, see Section 6.7, “Connecting to MySQL Remotely from Windows with SSH”.

Several improvements were made to encrypted-connection support in MySQL 5.7. The following timeline summarizes the changes:

- **5.7.3:** On the client side, an explicit `--ssl` option is no longer advisory but prescriptive. Given a server enabled to support encrypted connections, a client program can require an encrypted connection by specifying only the `--ssl` option. (Previously, it was necessary for the client to specify either the `--ssl-ca` option, or all three of the `--ssl-ca`, `--ssl-key`, and `--ssl-cert` options.) The connection attempt fails if an encrypted connection cannot be established. Other `--ssl-xxx` options on the client side are advisory in the absence of `--ssl`: The client attempts to connect using encryption but falls back to an unencrypted connection if an encrypted connection cannot be established.

- **5.7.5:** The server-side `--ssl` option value is enabled by default.

For servers compiled using OpenSSL, the `auto_generate_certs` and `sha256_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys` system variables are available to enable autogeneration and autodiscovery of SSL/RSA certificate and key files at startup. For certificate and key autodiscovery, if `--ssl` is enabled and other `--ssl-xxx` options are not given to configure encrypted connections explicitly, the server attempts to enable support for encrypted connections automatically at startup if it discovers the requisite certificate and key files in the data directory.

- **5.7.6:** The `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` utility is available to make it easier to manually generate SSL/RSA certificate and key files. Autodiscovery of SSL/RSA files at startup is expanded to apply to all servers, whether compiled using OpenSSL or yaSSL. (This means that `auto_generate_certs` need not be enabled for autodiscovery to occur.) If the server discovers at startup that the CA certificate is self-signed, it writes a warning to the error log. (The certificate is self-signed if created automatically by the server, or manually using `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup`.)

- **5.7.7:** The C client library attempts to establish an encrypted connection by default if the server supports encrypted connections. This affects client programs as follows:
  
  - In the absence of an `--ssl` option, clients attempt to connect using encryption, falling back to an unencrypted connection if an encrypted connection cannot be established.
  
  - The presence of an explicit `--ssl` option or a synonym (`--ssl=1, --enable-ssl`) is prescriptive: Clients require an encrypted connection and fail if one cannot be established.
  
  - With an `--ssl=0` option or a synonym (``--skip-ssl, --disable-ssl``), clients use an unencrypted connection.

This change also affects subsequent releases of MySQL Connectors that are based on the C client library: Connector/C, Connector/C++, and Connector/ODBC.

- **5.7.8:** The `require_secure_transport` system variable is available to control whether client connections to the server must use some form of secure transport.

- **5.7.10:** TLS protocol support is extended from TLSv1 to also include TLSv1.1 and TLSv1.2. The `tls_version` system variable on the server side and `--tls-version` option on the client side enable the level of support to be selected. See Section 6.6, “Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers”.
Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections

• 5.7.11: MySQL client programs support an `--ssl-mode` option that enables you to specify the security state of the connection to the server. The `--ssl-mode` option comprises the capabilities of the client-side `--ssl` and `--ssl-verify-server-cert` options. Consequently, `--ssl` and `--ssl-verify-server-cert` are deprecated, and are removed in MySQL 8.0.

6.1 Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections

Several options are available to indicate whether to use encrypted connections, and to specify the appropriate certificate and key files. This section provides general guidance about configuring the server and clients for encrypted connections:

• Server-Side Startup Configuration for Encrypted Connections

• Client-Side Configuration for Encrypted Connections

For a complete list of options related to establishment of encrypted connections, see Section 6.2, “Command Options for Encrypted Connections”. To create any required certificate and key files, see Section 6.3, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys”.

Encrypted connections can be used between master and slave replication servers. See Setting Up Replication to Use Encrypted Connections.

Encrypted connections are available through the MySQL C API. See C API Encrypted Connection Support.

Server-Side Startup Configuration for Encrypted Connections

On the server side, the `--ssl` option specifies that the server permits but does not require encrypted connections. This option is enabled by default.

These options on the server side identify the certificate and key files the server uses when permitting clients to establish encrypted connections:

• `--ssl-ca`: The path name of the Certificate Authority (CA) certificate file. (`--ssl-capath` is similar but specifies the path name of a directory of CA certificate files.)

• `--ssl-cert`: The path name of the server public key certificate file. This can be sent to the client and authenticated against the CA certificate that it has.

• `--ssl-key`: The path name of the server private key file.

For example, to enable the server for encrypted connections, start it with these lines in the `my.cnf` file, changing the file names as necessary:

```
[mysqld]
ssl-ca=ca.pem
ssl-cert=server-cert.pem
ssl-key=server-key.pem
```

Each option names a file in PEM format. If you need to create the required certificate and key files, see Section 6.3, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys”. Alternatively, if you have a MySQL source distribution, you can test your setup using the demonstration certificate and key files in its `mysql-test/std_data` directory.

MySQL servers compiled using OpenSSL can generate missing certificate and key files automatically at startup. See Section 6.3.1, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL”.

The server performs certificate and key file autodiscovery. If `--ssl` is enabled (possibly along with `--ssl-cipher`) and other `--ssl-xxx` options are not given to configure encrypted connections explicitly, the server attempts to enable support for encrypted connections automatically at startup:
Client-Side Configuration for Encrypted Connections

- If the server discovers valid certificate and key files named `ca.pem`, `server-cert.pem`, and `server-key.pem` in the data directory, it enables support for encrypted connections by clients. (The files need not have been generated automatically; what matters is that they have the indicated names and are valid.)

- If the server does not find valid certificate and key files in the data directory, it continues executing but without support for encrypted connections.

If the server automatically enables support for encrypted connections, it writes a note to the error log. If the server discovers that the CA certificate is self-signed, it writes a warning to the error log. (The certificate is self-signed if created automatically by the server, or manually using `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup`).

MySQL also provides these options for server-side SSL control:

- `--ssl-cipher`: The list of permitted ciphers for connection encryption.
- `--ssl-crl`: The path name of the file containing certificate revocation lists. (`--ssl-crlpath` is similar but specifies the path name of a directory of certificate revocation-list files.)

The server uses the values of the `--ssl-xxx` options as the values of the used certificate and key files to set the corresponding system variables (`ssl_ca`, `ssl_cert`, `ssl_key`, and so forth).

These system variables provide additional configuration control for encrypted connections:

- For further control over whether clients must connect using encryption, use the `require_secure_transport` system variable; see Server System Variables.
- To explicitly specify which encryption protocols the server permits, use the `tls_version` system variable; see Section 6.6, “Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers”.

Client-Side Configuration for Encrypted Connections

By default, MySQL client programs attempt to establish an encrypted connection if the server supports encrypted connections, with further control available through the `--ssl-mode` option:

- In the absence of an `--ssl-mode` option, clients attempt to connect using encryption, falling back to an unencrypted connection if an encrypted connection cannot be established. This is also the behavior with an explicit `--ssl-mode=PREFFERED` option.

- With `--ssl-mode=REQUIRED`, clients require an encrypted connection and fail if one cannot be established.

- With `--ssl-mode=DISABLED`, clients use an unencrypted connection.

- With `--ssl-mode=VERIFY_CA` or `--ssl-mode=VERIFY_IDENTITY`, clients require an encrypted connection, and also perform verification against the server CA certificate and (with `VERIFY_IDENTITY`) against the server host name in its certificate.

The following options on the client side identify the certificate and key files clients use when establishing encrypted connections to the server. They are similar to the options used on the server side, but `--ssl-cert` and `--ssl-key` identify the client public and private key:

- `--ssl-ca`: The path name of the Certificate Authority (CA) certificate file. This option, if used, must specify the same certificate used by the server. (`--ssl-capath` is similar but specifies the path name of a directory of CA certificate files.)

- `--ssl-cert`: The path name of the client public key certificate file.

- `--ssl-key`: The path name of the client private key file.

For additional security relative to that provided by the default encryption, clients can supply a CA certificate matching the one used by the server and enable host name identity verification. In this way,
the server and client place their trust in the same CA certificate and the client verifies that the host to which it connected is the one intended:

- To specify the CA certificate, use `--ssl-ca` (or `--ssl-capath`), and specify `--ssl-mode=VERIFY_CA`.

- To enable host name identity verification as well, use `--ssl-mode=VERIFY_IDENTITY` rather than `--ssl-mode=VERIFY_CA`.

**Note**

Host name identity verification with `VERIFY_IDENTITY` does not work with self-signed certificates created automatically by the server, or manually using `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` (see Section 6.3.1, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL”). Such self-signed certificates do not contain the server name as the Common Name value.

Host name identity verification also does not work with certificates that specify the Common Name using wildcards because that name is compared verbatim to the server name.

Depending on the encryption requirements of the MySQL account used by a client, the client may be required to specify certain options to connect using encryption to a MySQL server that supports encrypted connections.

Suppose that you want to connect using an account that has no special encryption requirements or was created using a `CREATE USER` statement that includes the `REQUIRE SSL` option. Assuming that the server supports encrypted connections, a client can connect using encryption with no `--ssl-mode` option or with an explicit `--ssl-mode=PREFERRED` option:

```
mysql
```

Or:

```
mysql --ssl-mode=PREFERRED
```

For an account with `REQUIRE SSL`, the connection attempt fails if an encrypted connection cannot be established. For an account with no special encryption requirements, the attempt falls back to an unencrypted connection if an encrypted connection cannot be established. To prevent fallback and fail if an encrypted connection cannot be obtained, connect like this:

```
mysql --ssl-mode=REQUIRED
```

If the account has more stringent security requirements, other options must be specified to establish an encrypted connection:

- For accounts with `REQUIRE X509`, clients must specify at least `--ssl-cert` and `--ssl-key`. In addition, `--ssl-ca` (or `--ssl-capath`) is recommended so that the public certificate provided by the server can be verified. For example:

```
mysql --ssl-ca=ca.pem \
    --ssl-cert=client-cert.pem \
    --ssl-key=client-key.pem
```

- For accounts that have `REQUIRE ISSUER` or `REQUIRE SUBJECT`, the option requirements are the same as for `REQUIRE X509`, but the certificate must match the issue or subject, respectively, specified in the account definition.

For additional information about the `REQUIRE` clause, see the discussion in CREATE USER Syntax.
To prevent use of encryption and override other `--ssl-xxx` options, invoke the client program with `--ssl-mode=DISABLED`:

```
mysql --ssl-mode=DISABLED
```

MySQL also provides these options for client-side SSL control:

- `--ssl-cipher`: The list of permitted ciphers for connection encryption.
- `--ssl-crl`: The path name of the file containing certificate revocation lists. (`--ssl-crlpath` is similar but specifies the path name of a directory of certificate revocation-list files.)

To specify permitted encryption protocols explicitly, use the `--tls-version` option; see Section 6.6, “Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers”.

To determine whether the current connection with the server uses encryption, check the session value of the `Ssl_cipher` status variable. If the value is empty, the connection is not encrypted. Otherwise, the connection is encrypted and the value indicates the encryption cipher. For example:

```
mysql> SHOW SESSION STATUS LIKE 'Ssl_cipher';
+---------------+---------------------------+
| Variable_name | Value                     |
+---------------+---------------------------+
| Ssl_cipher    | DHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256 |
+---------------+---------------------------+
```

For the `mysql` client, an alternative is to use the `STATUS` or `\s` command and check the `SSL` line:

```
mysql> \s
...
SSL: Not in use
...
```

Or:

```
mysql> \s
...
SSL: Cipher in use is DHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
...
```

### 6.2 Command Options for Encrypted Connections

This section describes options that specify whether to use encrypted connections, the names of certificate and key files, and other parameters related to encrypted-connection support. These options can be given on the command line or in an option file. For examples of suggested use and how to check whether a connection is encrypted, see Section 6.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

For information about using encrypted connections from the MySQL C API, see C API Encrypted Connection Support.

#### Table 6.1 Encrypted-Connection Option Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Introduced</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--skip-ssl</td>
<td>Do not use encrypted connection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--ssl</td>
<td>Enable encrypted connection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--ssl-ca</td>
<td>File that contains list of trusted SSL Certificate Authorities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Command Options for Encrypted Connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Introduced</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--ssl-capath</td>
<td>Directory that contains trusted SSL Certificate Authority certificate files</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--ssl-cert</td>
<td>File that contains X.509 certificate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--ssl-cipher</td>
<td>List of permitted ciphers for connection encryption</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--ssl-crl</td>
<td>File that contains certificate revocation lists</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--ssl-crlpath</td>
<td>Directory that contains certificate revocation-list files</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--ssl-key</td>
<td>File that contains X.509 key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--ssl-mode</td>
<td>Security state of connection to server</td>
<td>5.7.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--ssl-verify-server-cert</td>
<td>Verify host name against server certificate Common Name identity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--tls-version</td>
<td>Protocols permitted for encrypted connections</td>
<td>5.7.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **--ssl**

  This option has different effects on the client and server sides.

  **Note**

  The client-side **--ssl** option is deprecated as of MySQL 5.7.11 and is removed in MySQL 8.0. For client programs, use **--ssl-mode** instead:

  - Use **--ssl-mode=REQUIRED** instead of **--ssl=1** or **--enable-ssl**.
  - Use **--ssl-mode=DISABLED** instead of **--ssl=0**, **--skip-ssl**, or **--disable-ssl**.
  - No explicit **--ssl-mode** option is equivalent to no explicit **--ssl** option.

  The server-side **--ssl** option is *not* deprecated.

By default, MySQL client programs attempt to establish an encrypted connection if the server supports encrypted connections, with further control available through the **--ssl** option: The client-side **--ssl** option works as follows:

- In the absence of an **--ssl** option, clients attempt to connect using encryption, falling back to an unencrypted connection if an encrypted connection cannot be established.

- The presence of an explicit **--ssl** option or a synonym (**--ssl=1**, **--enable-ssl**) is prescriptive: Clients require an encrypted connection and fail if one cannot be established.

- With an **--ssl=0** option or a synonym (**--skip-ssl**, **--disable-ssl**), clients use an unencrypted connection.

To require use of encrypted connections by a MySQL account, use **CREATE USER** to create the account with a **REQUIRE SSL** clause, or use **ALTER USER** for an existing account to add a **REQUIRE SSL** clause. Connection attempts by clients that use the account will be rejected unless MySQL supports encrypted connections and an encrypted connection can be established.

The **REQUIRE** clause permits other encryption-related options, which can be used to enforce security requirements stricter than **REQUIRE SSL**. For additional details about which command options may or must be specified by clients that connect using accounts configured using the various **REQUIRE** options, see the description of **REQUIRE** in **CREATE USER Syntax**.

On the server side, the **--ssl** option specifies that the server permits but does not require encrypted connections. The option is enabled on the server side by default. **--ssl** is implied by other **--ssl-xxx** options, as indicated in the descriptions for those options.
The `--ssl` option in negated form indicates that encryption should not be used and overrides other `--ssl-xxx` options. Specify the option as `--ssl=0` or a synonym (`--skip-ssl`, `--disable-ssl`).

To specify additional parameters for encrypted connections, use at least `--ssl-cert` and `--ssl-key` on the server side and `--ssl-ca` on the client side. See Section 6.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”. That section also describes server capabilities for certificate and key file autogeneration and autodiscovery.

- **--ssl-ca=file_name**
  
  The path name of the Certificate Authority (CA) certificate file in PEM format. On the server side, this option implies `--ssl`.
  
  To tell the client not to authenticate the server certificate when establishing an encrypted connection to the server, specify neither `--ssl-ca` nor `--ssl-capath`. The server still verifies the client according to any applicable requirements established for the client account, and it still uses any `--ssl-ca` or `--ssl-capath` option values specified on the server side.

- **--ssl-capath=dir_name**
  
  The path name of the directory that contains trusted SSL certificate authority (CA) certificate files in PEM format. On the server side, this option implies `--ssl`.
  
  To tell the client not to authenticate the server certificate when establishing an encrypted connection to the server, specify neither `--ssl-ca` nor `--ssl-capath`. The server still verifies the client according to any applicable requirements established for the client account, and it still uses any `--ssl-ca` or `--ssl-capath` option values specified on the server side.

Support for this option depends on the SSL library used to compile MySQL. See Section 6.4, “SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities”.

- **--ssl-cert=file_name**
  
  The path name of the SSL public key certificate file in PEM format. On the client side, this is the client public key certificate. On the server side, this is the server public key certificate. On the server side, this option implies `--ssl`.

- **--ssl-cipher=cipher_list**
  
  The list of permitted ciphers for connection encryption. If no cipher in the list is supported, encrypted connections will not work. On the server side, this option implies `--ssl`.

  For greatest portability, `cipher_list` should be a list of one or more cipher names, separated by colons. This format is understood both by OpenSSL and yaSSL. Examples:

  ```
  --ssl-cipher=AES128-SHA
  --ssl-cipher=DHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256:AES128-SHA
  ```

  OpenSSL supports a more flexible syntax for specifying ciphers, as described in the OpenSSL documentation at https://www.openssl.org/docs/manmaster/man1/ciphers.html. yaSSL does not, so attempts to use that extended syntax fail for a MySQL distribution compiled using yaSSL.

  For information about which encryption ciphers MySQL supports, see Section 6.6, “Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers”.

- **--ssl-crl=file_name**
  
  The path name of the file containing certificate revocation lists in PEM format. On the server side, this option implies `--ssl`.
If neither \texttt{--ssl-crl} nor \texttt{--ssl-crlpath} is given, no CRL checks are performed, even if the CA path contains certificate revocation lists.

Support for this option depends on the SSL library used to compile MySQL. See Section 6.4, “SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities”.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{--ssl-crlpath=dir_name}
\end{itemize}

The path name of the directory that contains certificate revocation-list files in PEM format. On the server side, this option implies \texttt{--ssl}.

If neither \texttt{--ssl-crl} nor \texttt{--ssl-crlpath} is given, no CRL checks are performed, even if the CA path contains certificate revocation lists.

Support for this option depends on the SSL library used to compile MySQL. See Section 6.4, “SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities”.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{--ssl-key=file_name}
\end{itemize}

The path name of the SSL private key file in PEM format. On the client side, this is the client private key. On the server side, this is the server private key. On the server side, this option implies \texttt{--ssl}.

If the key file is protected by a passphrase, the program prompts the user for the passphrase. The password must be given interactively; it cannot be stored in a file. If the passphrase is incorrect, the program continues as if it could not read the key.

For better security, use a certificate with an RSA key size of at least 2048 bits.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{--ssl-mode=mode}
\end{itemize}

This option is available only for client programs, not the server. It specifies the security state of the connection to the server. These option values are permitted:

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{PREFERRED}: Establish an encrypted connection if the server supports encrypted connections, falling back to an unencrypted connection if an encrypted connection cannot be established. This is the default if \texttt{--ssl-mode} is not specified.

Encrypted connections over Unix sockets are disabled by default, so \texttt{PREFERRED} does not establish an encrypted connection. To enforce encryption for Unix socket connections, use \texttt{REQUIRED} or above.

\item \texttt{REQUIRED}: Establish an encrypted connection if the server supports encrypted connections. The connection attempt fails if an encrypted connection cannot be established.

\item \texttt{VERIFY_CA}: Like \texttt{REQUIRED}, but additionally verify the server Certificate Authority (CA) certificate against the configured CA certificates. The connection attempt fails if no valid matching CA certificates are found.

\item \texttt{VERIFY_IDENTITY}: Like \texttt{VERIFY_CA}, but additionally perform host name identity verification by checking the host name the client uses for connecting to the server against the identity in the certificate that the server sends to the client:

\begin{itemize}
\item As of MySQL 5.7.23, if the client uses OpenSSL 1.0.2 or higher, the client checks whether the host name that it uses for connecting matches either the Subject Alternative Name value or the Common Name value in the server certificate.

\item Otherwise, the client checks whether the host name that it uses for connecting matches the Common Name value in the server certificate.
\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
Command Options for Encrypted Connections

The connection fails if there is a mismatch. For encrypted connections, this option helps prevent man-in-the-middle attacks. This is like the legacy `--ssl-verify-server-cert` option.

### Note

Host name identity verification with `VERIFY_IDENTITY` does not work with self-signed certificates created automatically by the server, or manually using `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` (see Section 6.3.1, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL”). Such self-signed certificates do not contain the server name as the Common Name value.

Host name identity verification also does not work with certificates that specify the Common Name using wildcards because that name is compared verbatim to the server name.

- **DISABLED**: Establish an unencrypted connection. This is like the legacy `--ssl=0` option or its synonyms (`--skip-ssl`, `--disable-ssl`).

The `--ssl-mode` option interacts with CA certificate options as follows:

- If `--ssl-mode` is not explicitly set otherwise, use of `--ssl-ca` or `--ssl-capath` implies `--ssl-mode=VERIFY_CA`.

- For `--ssl-mode` values of `VERIFY_CA` or `VERIFY_IDENTITY`, `--ssl-ca` or `--ssl-capath` is also required, to supply a CA certificate that matches the one used by the server.

- An explicit `--ssl-mode` option with a value other than `VERIFY_CA` or `VERIFY_IDENTITY`, together with an explicit `--ssl-ca` or `--ssl-capath` option, produces a warning that no verification of the server certificate will be done, despite a CA certificate option being specified.

The `--ssl-mode` option was added in MySQL 5.7.11.

To require use of encrypted connections by a MySQL account, use `CREATE USER` to create the account with a `REQUIRE SSL` clause, or use `ALTER USER` for an existing account to add a `REQUIRE SSL` clause. Connection attempts by clients that use the account will be rejected unless MySQL supports encrypted connections and an encrypted connection can be established.

The `REQUIRE` clause permits other encryption-related options, which can be used to enforce security requirements stricter than `REQUIRE SSL`. For additional details about which command options may or must be specified by clients that connect using accounts configured using the various `REQUIRE` options, see the description of `REQUIRE` in `CREATE USER Syntax`.

- `--ssl-verify-server-cert`

### Note

The `--ssl-verify-server-cert` option is deprecated as of MySQL 5.7.11 and is removed in MySQL 8.0. Use `--ssl-mode=VERIFY_IDENTITY` instead.

This option is available only for client programs, not the server. It causes the client to perform host name identity verification by checking the host name the client uses for connecting to the server against the identity in the certificate that the server sends to the client:

- As of MySQL 5.7.23, if the client uses OpenSSL 1.0.2 or higher, the client checks whether the host name that it uses for connecting matches either the Subject Alternative Name value or the Common Name value in the server certificate.

- Otherwise, the client checks whether the host name that it uses for connecting matches the Common Name value in the server certificate.
The connection fails if there is a mismatch. For encrypted connections, this option helps prevent man-in-the-middle attacks. Host name identity verification is disabled by default.

**Note**

Host name identity verification does not work with self-signed certificates created automatically by the server, or manually using `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` (see Section 6.3.1, "Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL"). Such self-signed certificates do not contain the server name as the Common Name value.

Host name identity verification also does not work with certificates that specify the Common Name using wildcards because that name is compared verbatim to the server name.

• **--tls-version=protocol_list**

For client programs, specifies which protocols the client permits for encrypted connections. The value is a list of one or more comma-separated protocol names. For example:

```
mysql --tls-version="TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2"
```

The protocols that can be named for this option depend on the SSL library used to compile MySQL. For details, see Section 6.6, "Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers".

This option was added in MySQL 5.7.10.

To specify which protocols the server permits, use the `tls_version` system variable instead.

6.3 Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys

The following discussion describes how to create the files required for SSL and RSA support in MySQL. File creation can be performed using facilities provided by MySQL itself, or by invoking the `openssl` command directly.

SSL certificate and key files enable MySQL to support encrypted connections using SSL. See Section 6.1, "Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections".

RSA key files enable MySQL to support secure password exchange over unencrypted connections for accounts authenticated by the `sha256_password` plugin. See Section 7.1.4, "SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication".

6.3.1 Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL

MySQL provides these ways to create the SSL certificate and key files and RSA key-pair files required to support encrypted connections using SSL and secure password exchange using RSA over unencrypted connections, if those files are missing:

• The server can autogenerate these files at startup, for MySQL distributions compiled using OpenSSL.

• Users can invoke the `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` utility manually.

• For some distribution types, such as RPM packages, `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` invocation occurs during data directory initialization. In this case, the MySQL distribution need not have been compiled using OpenSSL as long as the `openssl` command is available.
Important

Server autogeneration and `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` help lower the barrier to using SSL by making it easier to generate the required files. However, certificates generated by these methods are self-signed, which may not be very secure. After you gain experience using such files, consider obtaining certificate/key material from a registered certificate authority.

- Automatic SSL and RSA File Generation
- Manual SSL and RSA File Generation Using `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup`
- SSL and RSA File Characteristics

**Automatic SSL and RSA File Generation**

For MySQL distributions compiled using OpenSSL, the MySQL server has the capability of automatically generating missing SSL and RSA files at startup. The `auto_generate_certs` and `sha256_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys` system variables control automatic generation of these files. These variables are enabled by default. They can be enabled at startup and inspected but not set at runtime.

At startup, the server automatically generates server-side and client-side SSL certificate and key files in the data directory if the `auto_generate_certs` system variable is enabled, no SSL options other than `--ssl` are specified, and the server-side SSL files are missing from the data directory. These files enable encrypted client connections using SSL; see Section 6.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

1. The server checks the data directory for SSL files with the following names:

```plaintext
ca.pem
server-cert.pem
server-key.pem
```

2. If any of those files are present, the server creates no SSL files. Otherwise, it creates them, plus some additional files:

```plaintext
ca.pem               Self-signed CA certificate
ca-key.pem           CA private key
server-cert.pem      Server certificate
server-key.pem       Server private key
client-cert.pem      Client certificate
client-key.pem       Client private key
```

3. If the server autogenerates SSL files, it uses the names of the `ca.pem, server-cert.pem,` and `server-key.pem` files to set the corresponding system variables (`ssl_ca, ssl_cert, ssl_key`).

At startup, the server automatically generates RSA private/public key-pair files in the data directory if all of these conditions are true: The `sha256_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys` system variable is enabled; no RSA options are specified; the RSA files are missing from the data directory. These key-pair files enable secure password exchange using RSA over unencrypted connections for accounts authenticated by the `sha256_password` plugin; see Section 7.1.4, “SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication”.

1. The server checks the data directory for RSA files with the following names:

```plaintext
private_key.pem      Private member of private/public key pair
public_key.pem       Public member of private/public key pair
```

2. If any of these files are present, the server creates no RSA files. Otherwise, it creates them.
3. If the server autogenerates the RSA files, it uses their names to set the corresponding system variables (sha256_password_private_key_path, sha256_password_public_key_path).

**Manual SSL and RSA File Generation Using mysql_ssl_rsa_setup**

MySQL distributions include a `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` utility that can be invoked manually to generate SSL and RSA files. This utility is included with all MySQL distributions (whether compiled using OpenSSL or yaSSL), but it does require that the `openssl` command be available. For usage instructions, see `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup — Create SSL/RSA Files`.

**SSL and RSA File Characteristics**

SSL and RSA files created automatically by the server or by invoking `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` have these characteristics:

- SSL and RSA keys are have a size of 2048 bits.
- The SSL CA certificate is self signed.
- The SSL server and client certificates are signed with the CA certificate and key, using the `sha256WithRSAEncryption` signature algorithm.
- SSL certificates use these Common Name (CN) values, with the appropriate certificate type (CA, Server, Client):
  - `ca.pem`: MySQL_Server_suffix_Auto_Generated_CA_Certificate
  - `server-cert.pem`: MySQL_Server_suffix_Auto_Generated_Server_Certificate
  - `client-cert.pem`: MySQL_Server_suffix_Auto_Generated_Client_Certificate

  The `suffix` value is based on the MySQL version number. For files generated by `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup`, the suffix can be specified explicitly using the `--suffix` option.

  For files generated by the server, if the resulting CN values exceed 64 characters, the `_suffix` portion of the name is omitted.

- SSL files have blank values for Country (C), State or Province (ST), Organization (O), Organization Unit Name (OU) and email address.
- SSL files created by the server or by `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` are valid for ten years from the time of generation.
- RSA files do not expire.
- SSL files have different serial numbers for each certificate/key pair (1 for CA, 2 for Server, 3 for Client).
- Files created automatically by the server are owned by the account that runs the server. Files created using `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` are owned by the user who invoked that program. This can be changed on systems that support the `chown()` system call if the program is invoked by `root` and the `--uid` option is given to specify the user who should own the files.
- On Unix and Unix-like systems, the file access mode is 644 for certificate files (that is, world readable) and 600 for key files (that is, accessible only by the account that runs the server).

To see the contents of an SSL certificate (for example, to check the range of dates over which it is valid), invoke `openssl` directly:

```
openssl x509 -text -in ca.pem
openssl x509 -text -in server-cert.pem
openssl x509 -text -in client-cert.pem
```

It is also possible to check SSL certificate expiration information using this SQL statement:
6.3.2 Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl

This section describes how to use the openssl command to set up SSL certificate and key files for use by MySQL servers and clients. The first example shows a simplified procedure such as you might use from the command line. The second shows a script that contains more detail. The first two examples are intended for use on Unix and both use the openssl command that is part of OpenSSL. The third example describes how to set up SSL files on Windows.

Note
There are easier alternatives to generating the files required for SSL than the procedure described here: Let the server autogenerate them or use the mysql_ssl_rsa_setup program. See Section 6.3.1, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL”.

Important
Whatever method you use to generate the certificate and key files, the Common Name value used for the server and client certificates/keys must each differ from the Common Name value used for the CA certificate. Otherwise, the certificate and key files will not work for servers compiled using OpenSSL. A typical error in this case is:

```
ERROR 2026 (HY000): SSL connection error:
error:00000001:lib(0):func(0):reason(1)
```

- Example 1: Creating SSL Files from the Command Line on Unix
- Example 2: Creating SSL Files Using a Script on Unix
- Example 3: Creating SSL Files on Windows

Example 1: Creating SSL Files from the Command Line on Unix

The following example shows a set of commands to create MySQL server and client certificate and key files. You will need to respond to several prompts by the openssl commands. To generate test files, you can press Enter to all prompts. To generate files for production use, you should provide nonempty responses.

```
# Create clean environment
rm -rf newcerts
mkdir newcerts && cd newcerts
# Create CA certificate
openssl genrsa 2048 > ca-key.pem
openssl req -new -x509 -nodes -days 3600 
   -key ca-key.pem -out ca.pem
# Create server certificate, remove passphrase, and sign it
# server-cert.pem = public key, server-key.pem = private key
openssl req -newkey rsa:2048 -days 3600 
   -nodes -keyout server-key.pem -out server-req.pem
openssl rsa -in server-key.pem -out server-key.pem
openssl x509 -req -in server-req.pem -days 3600 
   -CA ca.pem -CAkey ca-key.pem -set_serial 01 -out server-cert.pem
# Create client certificate, remove passphrase, and sign it
# client-cert.pem = public key, client-key.pem = private key
openssl req -newkey rsa:2048 -days 3600 
   -nodes -keyout client-key.pem -out client-req.pem
```
Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl

### After generating the certificates, verify them:

```bash
openssl verify -CAfile ca.pem server-cert.pem client-cert.pem
```

You should see a response like this:

```
server-cert.pem: OK
client-cert.pem: OK
```

To see the contents of a certificate (for example, to check the range of dates over which a certificate is valid), invoke `openssl` like this:

```bash
openssl x509 -text -in ca.pem
openssl x509 -text -in server-cert.pem
openssl x509 -text -in client-cert.pem
```

Now you have a set of files that can be used as follows:

- **ca.pem**: Use this as the argument to `--ssl-ca` on the server and client sides. (The CA certificate, if used, must be the same on both sides.)
- **server-cert.pem, server-key.pem**: Use these as the arguments to `--ssl-cert` and `--ssl-key` on the server side.
- **client-cert.pem, client-key.pem**: Use these as the arguments to `--ssl-cert` and `--ssl-key` on the client side.

For additional usage instructions, see Section 6.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

### Example 2: Creating SSL Files Using a Script on Unix

Here is an example script that shows how to set up SSL certificate and key files for MySQL. After executing the script, use the files for SSL connections as described in Section 6.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

```bash
DIR=`pwd`/openssl
PRIV=$DIR/private
mkdir $DIR $PRIV $DIR/newcerts
cp /usr/share/ssl/openssl.cnf $DIR
replace ./demoCA $DIR -- $DIR/openssl.cnf
# Create necessary files: $database, $serial and $new_certs_dir
# directory (optional)
touch $DIR/index.txt
echo "01" > $DIR/serial
c
# Generation of Certificate Authority(CA)
# openssl req -new -x509 -keyout $PRIV/cakey.pem -out $DIR/ca.pem 
# -days 3600 -config $DIR/openssl.cnf
# Sample output:
# Using configuration from /home/finley/openssl/openssl.cnf
# Generating a 1024 bit RSA private key
# ................++++++
# ........++
# writing new private key to '/home/finley/openssl/private/cakey.pem'
# Enter PEM pass phrase:
# Verifying password - Enter PEM pass phrase:
# ----- You are about to be asked to enter information that will be
# incorporated into your certificate request.
# What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name
```
Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl

# or a DN.
# There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank
# For some fields there will be a default value,
# If you enter '.', the field will be left blank.
#
# Country Name (2 letter code) [AU]:FI
# State or Province Name (full name) [Some-State]:
# Locality Name (eg, city) []:
# Organization Name (eg, company) [Internet Widgits Pty Ltd]:MySQL AB
# Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:
# Common Name (eg, YOUR name) []:MySQL admin
# Email Address []:
#
# Create server request and key

openssl req -new -keyout $DIR/server-key.pem -out $DIR/server-req.pem -days 3600 -config $DIR/openssl.cnf

# Sample output:
# Using configuration from /home/finley/openssl/openssl.cnf
# Generating a 1024 bit RSA private key
# ..++++++
# ..........++++++
# writing new private key to '/home/finley/openssl/server-key.pem'
# Enter PEM pass phrase:
# Verifying password - Enter PEM pass phrase:
# ----- 
# You are about to be asked to enter information that will be 
# incorporated into your certificate request. 
# What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name 
# or a DN. 
# There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank 
# For some fields there will be a default value, 
# If you enter '.', the field will be left blank. 
# ----- 
# Country Name (2 letter code) [AU]:FI
# State or Province Name (full name) [Some-State]:.
# Locality Name (eg, city) []:
# Organization Name (eg, company) [Internet Widgits Pty Ltd]:MySQL AB
# Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:
# Common Name (eg, YOUR name) []:MySQL server
# Email Address []:
#
# Please enter the following 'extra' attributes 
to be sent with your certificate request 
A challenge password []: 
An optional company name []: 
#
# Remove the passphrase from the key

openssl rsa -in $DIR/server-key.pem -out $DIR/server-key.pem

# Sign server cert

openssl ca -cert $DIR/ca.pem -policy policy_anything \ 
-out $DIR/server-cert.pem -config $DIR/openssl.cnf \ 
-infiles $DIR/server-req.pem

# Sample output:
# Using configuration from /home/finley/openssl/openssl.cnf
# Enter PEM pass phrase:
# Check that the request matches the signature
# Signature ok
# The Subjects Distinguished Name is as follows
# countryName :PRINTABLE:'FI'
# organizationName :PRINTABLE:'MySQL AB'
# commonName :PRINTABLE:'MySQL admin'
# Certificate is to be certified until Sep 13 14:22:46 2003 GMT
# (365 days)
# Sign the certificate? [y/n]:y
#
# 1 out of 1 certificate requests certified, commit? [y/n]y
# Write out database with 1 new entries
Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl

# Data Base Updated

# Create client request and key

```
openssl req -new -keyout $DIR/client-key.pem -out $DIR/client-req.pem -days 3600 -config $DIR/openssl.cnf
```

Sample output:

- Using configuration from /home/finley/openssl/openssl.cnf
- Generating a 1024 bit RSA private key
- ........................................++++++
- ...........................................+++++
- writing new private key to '/home/finley/openssl/client-key.pem'
- Enter PEM pass phrase:
- -----
- You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated into your certificate request.
- What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a DN.
- There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank
- For some fields there will be a default value,
- If you enter '.', the field will be left blank.
- -----
- Country Name (2 letter code) [AU]:FI
- State or Province Name (full name) [Some-State]:
- Locality Name (eg, city) []:
- Organization Name (eg, company) [Internet Widgits Pty Ltd]:MySQL AB
- Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:
- Common Name (eg, YOUR name) []:MySQL user
- Email Address []:
- 
- Please enter the following 'extra' attributes to be sent with your certificate request
- - A challenge password []:
- - An optional company name []:
- 
- Remove the passphrase from the key

```
openssl rsa -in $DIR/client-key.pem -out $DIR/client-key.pem
```

# Sign client cert

```
openssl ca -cert $DIR/ca.pem -policy policy_anything -out $DIR/client-cert.pem -config $DIR/openssl.cnf -infiles $DIR/client-req.pem
```

Sample output:

- Using configuration from /home/finley/openssl/openssl.cnf
- Enter PEM pass phrase:
- Check that the request matches the signature
- Signature ok
- The Subjects Distinguished Name is as follows
- countryName :PRINTABLE:'FI'
- organizationName :PRINTABLE:'MySQL AB'
- commonName :PRINTABLE:'MySQL user'
- Certificate is to be certified until Sep 13 16:45:17 2003 GMT
- (365 days)
- Sign the certificate? [y/n]:y
- 
- 1 out of 1 certificate requests certified, commit? [y/n]y
- Write out database with 1 new entries
- Data Base Updated
- 
- Create a my.cnf file that you can use to test the certificates

```
cat <<EOF > $DIR/my.cnf
[client]
ssl-ca=$DIR/ca.pem
ssl-cert=$DIR/client-cert.pem
ssl-key=$DIR/client-key.pem
[mysqld]
ssl-ca=$DIR/ca.pem
EOF
```
ssl-cert=$DIR/server-cert.pem
ssl-key=$DIR/server-key.pem
EOF

Example 3: Creating SSL Files on Windows

Download OpenSSL for Windows if it is not installed on your system. An overview of available packages can be seen here:

http://www.slproweb.com/products/Win32OpenSSL.html

Choose the Win32 OpenSSL Light or Win64 OpenSSL Light package, depending on your architecture (32-bit or 64-bit). The default installation location will be C:\OpenSSL-Win32 or C:\OpenSSL-Win64, depending on which package you downloaded. The following instructions assume a default location of C:\OpenSSL-Win32. Modify this as necessary if you are using the 64-bit package.

If a message occurs during setup indicating '...critical component is missing: Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributables', cancel the setup and download one of the following packages as well, again depending on your architecture (32-bit or 64-bit):

• Visual C++ 2008 Redistributables (x86), available at:

• Visual C++ 2008 Redistributables (x64), available at:

After installing the additional package, restart the OpenSSL setup procedure.

During installation, leave the default C:\OpenSSL-Win32 as the install path, and also leave the default option 'Copy OpenSSL DLL files to the Windows system directory' selected.

When the installation has finished, add C:\OpenSSL-Win32\bin to the Windows System Path variable of your server (depending on your version of Windows, the following path-setting instructions might differ slightly):

1. On the Windows desktop, right-click the My Computer icon, and select Properties.
2. Select the Advanced tab from the System Properties menu that appears, and click the Environment Variables button.
3. Under System Variables, select Path, then click the Edit button. The Edit System Variable dialogue should appear.
4. Add ';C:\OpenSSL-Win32\bin' to the end (notice the semicolon).
5. Press OK 3 times.
6. Check that OpenSSL was correctly integrated into the Path variable by opening a new command console (Start>Run>cmd.exe) and verifying that OpenSSL is available:

Microsoft Windows [Version ...]
Copyright (c) 2006 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.
C:\Windows\system32>cd \C:\>openssl
OpenSSL> exit <<< If you see the OpenSSL prompt, installation was successful.
C:>

After OpenSSL has been installed, use instructions similar to those from Example 1 (shown earlier in this section), with the following changes:

• Change the following Unix commands:
Creating RSA Keys Using openssl

# Create clean environment
rm -rf newcerts
mkdir newcerts && cd newcerts

On Windows, use these commands instead:

# Create clean environment
md c:\newcerts
cd c:\newcerts

• When a '\ ' character is shown at the end of a command line, this '\ ' character must be removed
and the command lines entered all on a single line.

After generating the certificate and key files, to use them for SSL connections, see Section 6.1,
“Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

6.3.3 Creating RSA Keys Using openssl

This section describes how to use the openssl command to set up the RSA key files that enable
MySQL to support secure password exchange over unencrypted connections for accounts
authenticated by the sha256_password plugin.

Note
There are easier alternatives to generating the files required for RSA than
the procedure described here: Let the server autogenerate them or use the
mysql_ssl_rsa_setup program. See Section 6.3.1, “Creating SSL and RSA
Certificates and Keys using MySQL”.

To create the RSA private and public key-pair files, run these commands while logged into the system
account used to run the MySQL server so the files will be owned by that account:

openssl genrsa -out private_key.pem 2048
openssl rsa -in private_key.pem -pubout -out public_key.pem

Those commands create 2,048-bit keys. To create stronger keys, use a larger value.

Then set the access modes for the key files. The private key should be readable only by the server,
whereas the public key can be freely distributed to client users:

chmod 400 private_key.pem
chmod 444 public_key.pem

6.4 SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities

MySQL can be compiled using OpenSSL or yaSSL, both of which enable encrypted connections based
on the OpenSSL API:

• MySQL Enterprise Edition binary distributions are compiled using OpenSSL. It is not possible to use
yaSSL with MySQL Enterprise Edition.
• MySQL Community Edition binary distributions are compiled using yaSSL.
• MySQL Community Edition source distributions can be compiled using either OpenSSL or yaSSL
(see Section 6.5, “Building MySQL with Support for Encrypted Connections”).

OpenSSL and yaSSL offer the same basic functionality, but MySQL distributions compiled using
OpenSSL have additional features:

• OpenSSL supports TLSv1, TLSv1.1, and TLSv1.2 protocols. yaSSL supports only TLSv1 and
TLSv1.1 protocols.
• OpenSSL supports a more flexible syntax for specifying ciphers for the --ssl-cipher option, and supports a wider range of encryption ciphers from which to choose. See Section 6.2, “Command Options for Encrypted Connections”, and Section 6.6, “Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers”.

• OpenSSL supports the --ssl-capath. MySQL distributions compiled using yaSSL do not because yaSSL does not look in any directory and do not follow a chained certificate tree. yaSSL requires that all components of the CA certificate tree be contained within a single CA certificate tree and that each certificate in the file has a unique SubjectName value. To work around this limitation, concatenate the individual certificate files comprising the certificate tree into a new file and specify that file as the value of the --ssl-ca option.

• OpenSSL supports the --ssl-crl, and --ssl-crlpath options. Distributions compiled using yaSSL do not because revocation lists do not work with yaSSL.

• Accounts that authenticate using the sha256_password plugin can use RSA key files for secure password exchange over unencrypted connections. See Section 7.1.4, “SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication”.

• The server can automatically generate missing SSL and RSA certificate and key files at startup. See Section 6.3.1, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL”.

• OpenSSL supports more encryption modes for the AES_ENCRYPT() and AES_DECRYPT() functions. See Encryption and Compression Functions

Certain OpenSSL-related system and status variables are present only if MySQL was compiled using OpenSSL:

• auto_generate_certs

• sha256_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys

• sha256_password_private_key_path

• sha256_password_public_key_path

• Rsa_public_key

To determine whether a server was compiled using OpenSSL, test the existence of any of those variables. For example, this statement returns a row if OpenSSL was used and an empty result if yaSSL was used:

SHOW STATUS LIKE 'Rsa_public_key';

6.5 Building MySQL with Support for Encrypted Connections

To use encrypted connections between the MySQL server and client programs, your system must support either OpenSSL or yaSSL:

• MySQL Enterprise Edition binary distributions are compiled using OpenSSL. It is not possible to use yaSSL with MySQL Enterprise Edition.

• MySQL Community Edition binary distributions are compiled using yaSSL.

• MySQL Community Edition source distributions can be compiled using either OpenSSL or yaSSL.

If you compile MySQL from a source distribution, CMake configures the distribution to use yaSSL by default. To compile using OpenSSL instead, use this procedure:

1. Ensure that OpenSSL 1.0.1 or higher is installed on your system. If the installed OpenSSL version is lower than 1.0.1, CMake produces an error at MySQL configuration time. If it is necessary to obtain OpenSSL, visit http://www.openssl.org.
2. The **WITH_SSL CMake** option determines which SSL library to use for compiling MySQL (see [MySQL Source-Configuration Options](#)). The default is `-DWITH_SSL=bundled`, which uses yaSSL. To use OpenSSL, add the `-DWITH_SSL=system` option to the CMake command you normally use to configure the MySQL source distribution. For example:

```bash
cmake . -DWITH_SSL=system
```

That command configures the distribution to use the installed OpenSSL library. Alternatively, to explicitly specify the path name to the OpenSSL installation, use the following syntax. This can be useful if you have multiple versions of OpenSSL installed, to prevent CMake from choosing the wrong one:

```bash
cmake . -DWITH_SSL=path_name
```

3. Compile and install the distribution.

To check whether a **mysqld** server supports encrypted connections, examine the value of the `have_ssl` system variable:

```sql
mysql> SHOW VARIABLES LIKE 'have_ssl';
+---------------+-------+
| Variable_name | Value |
+---------------+-------+
| have_ssl      | YES   |
+---------------+-------+
```

If the value is **YES**, the server supports encrypted connections. If the value is **DISABLED**, the server is capable of supporting encrypted connections but was not started with the appropriate `--ssl-xxx` options to enable encrypted connections to be used; see Section 6.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

To determine whether a server was compiled using OpenSSL or yaSSL, check the existence of any of the system or status variables that are present only for OpenSSL. See Section 6.4, “SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities”

## 6.6 Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers

To determine which encryption protocol and cipher are in use for an encrypted connection, use the following statements to check the values of the `Ssl_version` and `Ssl_cipher` status variables:

```sql
mysql> SHOW SESSION STATUS LIKE 'Ssl_version';
+---------------+---------------------------+
| Variable_name | Value                     |
+---------------+---------------------------+
| Ssl_version   | TLSv1                     |
+---------------+---------------------------+
mysql> SHOW SESSION STATUS LIKE 'Ssl_cipher';
+---------------+---------------------------+
| Variable_name | Value                     |
+---------------+---------------------------+
| Ssl_cipher    | DHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256 |
+---------------+---------------------------+
```

If the connection is not encrypted, both variables have an empty value.

MySQL supports encrypted connections using TLS protocols:

- When compiled using OpenSSL 1.0.1 or higher, MySQL supports the TLSv1, TLSv1.1, and TLSv1.2 protocols.
- When compiled using the bundled version of yaSSL, MySQL supports the TLSv1 and TLSv1.1 protocols.
The value of the `tls_version` system variable determines which protocols the server permits for encrypted connections. The `tls_version` value is a list of one or more comma-separated protocol names from this list (not case-sensitive): TLSv1, TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2. By default, this variable lists all protocols supported by the SSL library used to compile MySQL (TLSv1,TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2 for OpenSSL, TLSv1,TLSv1.1 for yaSSL). To determine the value of `tls_version` at runtime, use this statement:

```
mysql> SHOW GLOBAL VARIABLES LIKE 'tls_version';
+---------------+-----------------------+
| Variable_name | Value                 |
+---------------+-----------------------+
| tls_version   | TLSv1,TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2 |
+---------------+-----------------------+
```

To change the value of `tls_version`, set it at server startup. For example, to permit connections that use the TLSv1.1 or TLSv1.2 protocol, but prohibit connections that use the less-secure TLSv1 protocol, use these lines in the server `my.cnf` file:

```
[mysqld]
tls_version=TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2
```

To be even more restrictive and permit only TLSv1.2 connections, set `tls_version` like this (assuming that your server is compiled using OpenSSL because yaSSL does not support TLSv1.2):

```
[mysqld]
tls_version=TLSv1.2
```

For client programs, the `--tls-version` option enables specifying which TLS protocols the client permits. The value format on the client side is the same as for `tls_version` on the server side.

By default, MySQL attempts to use the highest TLS protocol version available, depending on the SSL library used to compile the server and client, which key size is used, and whether the server or client are restricted from using some protocols (for example, by means of `tls_version`/`--tls-version`):

- If the server and client are compiled using OpenSSL, TLSv1.2 is used if possible.
- If either or both the server and client are compiled using yaSSL, TLSv1.1 is used if possible.
- TLSv1.2 does not work with all ciphers that have a key size of 512 bits or less. To use this protocol with such a key, use `--ssl-cipher` to specify the cipher name explicitly:

```
AES128-SHA
AES128-SHA256
AES256-SHA
AES256-SHA256
CAMELLIA128-SHA
CAMELLIA256-SHA
DES-CBC3-SHA
DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA
RC4-MD5
RC4-SHA
SEED-SHA
```

- For better security, use a certificate with an RSA key size of at least 2048 bits.

**Note**

Prior to MySQL 5.7.10, MySQL supports only TLSv1, for both OpenSSL and yaSSL, and no system variable or client option exist for specifying which TLS protocols to permit.

If the server and client protocol capabilities have no protocol in common, the server terminates the connection request. For example, if the server is configured with `tls_version=TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2`,
Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers

Connection attempts fail for clients invoked with `--tls-version=TLSv1`, and for older clients that do not support the `--tls-version` option and implicitly support only TLSv1.

MySQL permits specifying a list of protocols to support. This list is passed directly down to the underlying SSL library and is ultimately up to that library what protocols it actually enables from the supplied list. Please refer to the MySQL source code and the OpenSSL `SSL_CTX_new()` documentation for information about how the SSL library handles this.

To determine which ciphers a given server supports, use the following statement to check the value of the `Ssl_cipher_list` status variable:

```
SHOW SESSION STATUS LIKE 'Ssl_cipher_list';
```

The set of available ciphers depends on your MySQL version and whether MySQL was compiled using OpenSSL or yaSSL, and (for OpenSSL) the library version used to compile MySQL.

As of MySQL 5.7.10, order of ciphers passed by MySQL to the SSL library is significant. More secure ciphers are mentioned first in the list, and the first cipher supported by the provided certificate is selected.

MySQL passes this cipher list to OpenSSL:

```
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384
ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-SHA256
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-SHA256
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-SHA384
ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
DHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
DHE-DSS-AES128-GCM-SHA256
DHE-RSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384
DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA256
DHE-DSS-AES256-GCM-SHA384
DHE-DSS-AES256-SHA256
DHE-DSS-AES128-SHA256
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256
DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA256
DHE-DSS-AES256-SHA384
DHE-DSS-AES256-SHA256
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA
DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-SHA
ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-SHA
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-SHA
ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA
ECDHE-RSA-AES256-SHA
ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA
TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA
AESC128-GCM-SHA256
DH-DSS-AES128-GCM-SHA256
ECDH-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
AESC256-GCM-SHA384
DH-DSS-AES256-GCM-SHA384
ECDH-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384
AES128-SHA256
DHE-DSS-AES128-SHA256
ECDH-ECDSA-AES128-SHA256
AESC256-SHA256
DHE-DSS-AES128-SHA256
ECDH-ECDSA-AES128-SHA256
AESC256-SHA256
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256
ECDH-ECDSA-AES128-SHA256
AESC256-SHA256
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256
ECDH-ECDSA-AES128-SHA256
AES256-SHA
Encrypted Connection Protocols and Ciphers

MySQL passes this cipher list to yaSSL:

DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA
AES128-RMD
DES-CBC3-RMD
DHE-RSA-AES256-RMD
DHE-RSA-AES128-RMD
DHE-RSA-DES-CBC3-RMD
AES256-SHA
RC4-SHA
RC4-MD5
DES-CBC3-SHA
DES-CBC-SHA
EDH-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA
EDH-RSA-DES-CBC-SHA
AES128-SHA: AES256-RMD

As of MySQL 5.7.10, these cipher restrictions are in place:

• The following ciphers are permanently restricted:

!DHE-DSS-DES-CBC3-SHA
!DHE-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA
!ECDH-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA
!ECDH-ECDSA-DES-CBC3-SHA
!ECDHE-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA
!ECDHE-ECDSA-DES-CBC3-SHA

• The following categories of ciphers are permanently restricted:

!aNULL
!eNULL
!EXPORT
!LOW
!MD5
!DES
!RC2
!PSK
!SSLv3

If the server is started using a compatible certificate that uses any of the preceding restricted ciphers or cipher categories, the server starts with support for encrypted connections disabled.
6.7 Connecting to MySQL Remotely from Windows with SSH

This section describes how to get an encrypted connection to a remote MySQL server with SSH. The information was provided by David Carlson <dcarlson@mplcomm.com>.

1. Install an SSH client on your Windows machine. For a comparison of SSH clients, see http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_SSH_clients.

2. Start your Windows SSH client. Set Host_Name = yourmysqlserver_URL_or_IP. Set userid=your_userid to log in to your server. This userid value might not be the same as the user name of your MySQL account.

3. Set up port forwarding. Either do a remote forward (Set local_port: 3306, remote_host: yourmysqlservername_or_ip, remote_port: 3306) or a local forward (Set port: 3306, host: localhost, remote port: 3306).

4. Save everything, otherwise you will have to redo it the next time.

5. Log in to your server with the SSH session you just created.

6. On your Windows machine, start some ODBC application (such as Access).

7. Create a new file in Windows and link to MySQL using the ODBC driver the same way you normally do, except type in localhost for the MySQL host server, not yourmysqlservername.

At this point, you should have an ODBC connection to MySQL, encrypted using SSH.
# Chapter 7 Security Plugins

## Table of Contents

7.1 Authentication Plugins ...................................................................................... 108
  7.1.1 Native Pluggable Authentication ................................................................ 108
  7.1.2 Old Native Pluggable Authentication .......................................................... 109
  7.1.3 Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin .......................................................... 110
  7.1.4 SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication ............................................................ 114
  7.1.5 Caching SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication .................................................. 118
  7.1.6 Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication ........................................ 122
  7.1.7 PAM Pluggable Authentication ................................................................. 123
  7.1.8 Windows Pluggable Authentication ............................................................ 131
  7.1.9 LDAP Pluggable Authentication ............................................................... 136
  7.1.10 No-Login Pluggable Authentication ........................................................ 148
  7.1.11 Socket Peer-Credential Pluggable Authentication .................................... 151
  7.1.12 Test Pluggable Authentication ............................................................... 153
  7.1.13 Pluggable Authentication System Variables ........................................... 155

7.2 The Connection-Control Plugins ...................................................................... 171
  7.2.1 Connection-Control Plugin Installation .................................................... 171
  7.2.2 Connection-Control System and Status Variables ...................................... 174

7.3 The Password Validation Plugin ...................................................................... 176
  7.3.1 Password Validation Plugin Installation .................................................... 177
  7.3.2 Password Validation Plugin Options and Variables .................................... 178

7.4 The MySQL Keyring ......................................................................................... 183
  7.4.1 Keyring Plugin Installation ........................................................................ 184
  7.4.2 Using the keyring_file File-Based Plugin .................................................. 186
  7.4.3 Using the keyring_encrypted_file Keyring Plugin ...................................... 187
  7.4.4 Using the keyring_awk KMIP Plugin .......................................................... 188
  7.4.5 Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin .................... 193
  7.4.6 Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores ............................................. 196
  7.4.7 Supported Keyring Key Types ..................................................................... 199
  7.4.8 General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions ............................ 199
  7.4.9 Plugin-Specific Keyring Key-Management Functions .............................. 206
  7.4.10 Keyring Command Options ................................................................. 207
  7.4.11 Keyring System Variables ................................................................. 209

7.5 MySQL Enterprise Audit .................................................................................. 215
  7.5.1 Audit Log Components ............................................................................. 215
  7.5.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit .................................. 216
  7.5.3 MySQL Enterprise Audit Security Considerations .................................. 218
  7.5.4 Audit Log File Formats ............................................................................ 218
  7.5.5 Audit Log Logging Control ....................................................................... 236
  7.5.6 Audit Log Filtering .................................................................................. 243
  7.5.7 Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering ............................................................. 259
  7.5.8 Audit Log Reference ................................................................................ 261
  7.5.9 Audit Log Restrictions ............................................................................. 276

7.6 MySQL Enterprise Firewall ............................................................................ 276
  7.6.1 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Components .................................................. 277
  7.6.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall .............................. 278
  7.6.3 Using MySQL Enterprise Firewall ........................................................... 280
  7.6.4 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Reference .................................................... 284

7.7 MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification .................................. 288
  7.7.1 MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification Components ........ 290
  7.7.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification .......................................................... 290
  7.7.3 Using MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification .................. 291
MySQL includes several plugins that implement security features:

- Plugins for authenticating attempts by clients to connect to MySQL Server. Plugins are available for several authentication protocols. For general discussion of the authentication process, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”. For characteristics of specific authentication plugins, see Section 7.1, “Authentication Plugins”.

- A password-validation plugin for implementing password strength policies and assessing the strength of potential passwords. See Section 7.3, “The Password Validation Plugin”.

- Keyring plugins that provide secure storage for sensitive information. See Section 7.4, “The MySQL Keyring”.

- (MySQL Enterprise Edition only) MySQL Enterprise Audit, implemented using a server plugin, uses the open MySQL Audit API to enable standard, policy-based monitoring and logging of connection and query activity executed on specific MySQL servers. Designed to meet the Oracle audit specification, MySQL Enterprise Audit provides an out of box, easy to use auditing and compliance solution for applications that are governed by both internal and external regulatory guidelines. See Section 7.5, “MySQL Enterprise Audit”.

- (MySQL Enterprise Edition only) MySQL Enterprise Firewall, an application-level firewall that enables database administrators to permit or deny SQL statement execution based on matching against whitelists of accepted statement patterns. This helps harden MySQL Server against attacks such as SQL injection or attempts to exploit applications by using them outside of their legitimate query workload characteristics. See Section 7.6, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall”.

- (MySQL Enterprise Edition only) MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification, implemented as a plugin library containing a plugin and a set of user-defined functions. Data masking hides sensitive information by replacing real values with substitutes. MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification functions enable masking existing data using several methods such as obfuscation (removing identifying characteristics), generation of formatted random data, and data replacement or substitution. See Section 7.7, “MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification”.

### 7.1 Authentication Plugins

The following sections describe pluggable authentication methods available in MySQL and the plugins that implement these methods. For general discussion of the authentication process, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”.

The default plugin is indicated by the value of the `default_authentication_plugin` system variable.

### 7.1.1 Native Pluggable Authentication

MySQL includes two plugins that implement native authentication; that is, authentication based on the password hashing methods in use from before the introduction of pluggable authentication. This section describes `mysql_native_password`, which implements authentication against the `mysql.user` system table using the native password hashing method. For information about `mysql_old_password`, which implements authentication using the older (pre-4.1) native password hashing method, see Section 7.1.2, “Old Native Pluggable Authentication”. For information about these password hashing methods, see Section 2.2.4, “Password Hashing in MySQL”.

The following table shows the plugin names on the server and client sides.
Old Native Pluggable Authentication

### Table 7.1 Plugin and Library Names for Native Password Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>mysql_native_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>mysql_native_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>None (plugins are built in)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to native pluggable authentication:

- Installing Native Pluggable Authentication
- Using Native Pluggable Authentication

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”.

### Installing Native Pluggable Authentication

The `mysql_native_password` plugin exists in server and client forms:

- The server-side plugin is built into the server, need not be loaded explicitly, and cannot be disabled by unloading it.
- The client-side plugin is built into the `libmysqlclient` client library and is available to any program linked against `libmysqlclient`.

### Using Native Pluggable Authentication

MySQL client programs use `mysql_native_password` by default. The `--default-auth` option can be used as a hint about which client-side plugin the program can expect to use:

```
shell> mysql --default-auth=mysql_native_password ...
```

### 7.1.2 Old Native Pluggable Authentication

MySQL includes two plugins that implement native authentication; that is, authentication based on the password hashing methods in use from before the introduction of pluggable authentication. This section describes `mysql_old_password`, which implements authentication against the `mysql.user` system table using the older (pre-4.1) native password hashing method. For information about `mysql_native_password`, which implements authentication using the native password hashing method, see Section 7.1.1, “Native Pluggable Authentication”. For information about these password hashing methods, see Section 2.2.4, “Password Hashing in MySQL”.

**Note**

Passwords that use the pre-4.1 hashing method are less secure than passwords that use the native password hashing method and should be avoided. Pre-4.1 passwords are deprecated and support for them (including the `mysql_old_password` plugin) was removed in MySQL 5.7.5. For account upgrade instructions, see Section 7.1.3, “Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin”.

The following table shows the plugin names on the server and client sides.

### Table 7.2 Plugin and Library Names for Old Native Password Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>mysql_old_password</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 7.1.3 Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the `mysql_old_password` Plugin

The MySQL server authenticates connection attempts for each account listed in the `mysql.user` system table using the authentication plugin named in the `plugin` column. If the `plugin` column is empty, the server authenticates the account as follows:

- Before MySQL 5.7, the server uses the `mysql_native_password` or `mysql_old_password` plugin implicitly, depending on the format of the password hash in the `Password` column. If the `Password` value is empty or a 4.1 password hash (41 characters), the server uses `mysql_native_password`. If the password value is a pre-4.1 password hash (16 characters), the server uses `mysql_old_password`. (For additional information about these hash formats, see Section 2.2.4, “Password Hashing in MySQL”.)

- As of MySQL 5.7, the server requires the `plugin` column to be nonempty and disables accounts that have an empty `plugin` value.

Pre-4.1 password hashes and the `mysql_old_password` plugin are deprecated in MySQL 5.6 and support for them is removed in MySQL 5.7. They provide a level of security inferior to that offered by 4.1 password hashing and the `mysql_native_password` plugin.

Given the requirement in MySQL 5.7 that the `plugin` column must be nonempty, coupled with removal of `mysql_old_password` support, DBAs are advised to upgrade accounts as follows:

- Upgrade accounts that use `mysql_native_password` implicitly to use it explicitly

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td><code>mysql_old_password</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>None (plugins are built in)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to old native pluggable authentication:

- [Installing Old Native Pluggable Authentication](#)

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”.

### Installing Old Native Pluggable Authentication

The `mysql_old_password` plugin exists in server and client forms:

- The server-side plugin is built into the server, need not be loaded explicitly, and cannot be disabled by unloading it.

- The client-side plugin is built into the `libmysqlclient` client library and is available to any program linked against `libmysqlclient`.

### Using Old Native Pluggable Authentication

MySQL client programs can use the `--default-auth` option to specify the `mysql_old_password` plugin as a hint about which client-side plugin the program can expect to use:

```shell
dba@host1> mysql --default-auth=mysql_old_password ...
```
The instructions in this section describe how to perform those upgrades. The result is that no account has an empty plugin value and no account uses pre-4.1 password hashing or the mysql_old_password plugin.

As a variant on these instructions, DBAs might offer users the choice to upgrade to the sha256_password plugin, which authenticates using SHA-256 password hashes. For information about this plugin, see Section 7.1.4, “SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication”.

The following table lists the types of mysql.user accounts considered in this discussion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>plugin Column</th>
<th>Password Column</th>
<th>Authentication Result</th>
<th>Upgrade Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Implicitly uses mysql_native_password</td>
<td>Assign plugin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>4.1 hash</td>
<td>Implicitly uses mysql_native_password</td>
<td>Assign plugin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Pre-4.1 hash</td>
<td>Implicitly uses mysql_old_password</td>
<td>Assign plugin, rehash password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mysql_native_password</td>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Explicitly uses mysql_native_password</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mysql_native_password</td>
<td>4.1 hash</td>
<td>Explicitly uses mysql_native_password</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mysql_old_password</td>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Explicitly uses mysql_old_password</td>
<td>Upgrade plugin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mysql_old_password</td>
<td>Pre-4.1 hash</td>
<td>Explicitly uses mysql_old_password</td>
<td>Upgrade plugin, rehash password</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Accounts corresponding to lines for the mysql_native_password plugin require no upgrade action (because no change of plugin or hash format is required). For accounts corresponding to lines for which the password is empty, consider asking the account owners to choose a password (or require it by using ALTER USER to expire empty account passwords).

### Upgrading Accounts from Implicit to Explicit mysql_native_password Use

Accounts that have an empty plugin and a 4.1 password hash use mysql_native_password implicitly. To upgrade these accounts to use mysql_native_password explicitly, execute these statements:

```sql
UPDATE mysql.user SET plugin = 'mysql_native_password'
WHERE plugin = '' AND (Password = '' OR LENGTH(Password) = 41);
FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
```

Before MySQL 5.7, you can execute those statements to upgrade accounts proactively. As of MySQL 5.7, you can run mysql_upgrade, which performs the same operation among its upgrade actions.

Notes:

- The upgrade operation just described is safe to execute at any time because it makes the mysql_native_password plugin explicit only for accounts that already use it implicitly.
- This operation requires no password changes, so it can be performed without affecting users or requiring their involvement in the upgrade process.

### Upgrading Accounts from mysql_old_password to mysql_native_password

Accounts that use mysql_old_password (either implicitly or explicitly) should be upgraded to use mysql_native_password explicitly. This requires changing the plugin and changing the password from pre-4.1 to 4.1 hash format.
Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin

For the accounts covered in this step that must be upgraded, one of these conditions is true:

- The account uses `mysql_old_password` implicitly because the `plugin` column is empty and the password has the pre-4.1 hash format (16 characters).
- The account uses `mysql_old_password` explicitly.

To identify such accounts, use this query:

```sql
SELECT User, Host, Password FROM mysql.user
WHERE (plugin = '' AND LENGTH(Password) = 16)
OR plugin = 'mysql_old_password';
```

The following discussion provides two methods for updating that set of accounts. They have differing characteristics, so read both and decide which is most suitable for a given MySQL installation.

**Method 1.**

Characteristics of this method:

- It requires that server and clients be run with `secure_auth=0` until all users have been upgraded to `mysql_native_password`. (Otherwise, users cannot connect to the server using their old-format password hashes for the purpose of upgrading to a new-format hash.)
- It works for MySQL 5.5 and 5.6. In 5.7, it does not work because the server requires accounts to have a nonempty plugin and disables them otherwise. Therefore, if you have already upgraded to 5.7, choose Method 2, described later.

You should ensure that the server is running with `secure_auth=0`.

For all accounts that use `mysql_old_password` explicitly, set them to the empty plugin:

```sql
UPDATE mysql.user SET plugin = ''
WHERE plugin = 'mysql_old_password';
FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
```

To also expire the password for affected accounts, use these statements instead:

```sql
UPDATE mysql.user SET plugin = '', password_expired = 'Y'
WHERE plugin = 'mysql_old_password';
FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
```

Now affected users can reset their password to use 4.1 hashing. Ask each user who now has an empty plugin to connect to the server and execute these statements:

```sql
SET old_passwords = 0;
SET PASSWORD = PASSWORD('user-chosen-password');
```

**Note**

The client-side `--secure-auth` option is enabled by default, so remind users to disable it or they will be unable to connect:

```shell
cshell> mysql -u user_name -p --secure-auth=0
```

After an affected user has executed those statements, you can set the corresponding account plugin to `mysql_native_password` to make the plugin explicit. Or you can periodically run these statements to find and fix any accounts for which affected users have reset their password:

```sql
UPDATE mysql.user SET plugin = 'mysql_native_password'
WHERE plugin = '' AND (Password = '' OR LENGTH(Password) = 41);
FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
```
Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin

When there are no more accounts with an empty plugin, this query returns an empty result:

```sql
SELECT User, Host, Password FROM mysql.user
WHERE plugin = '' AND LENGTH(Password) = 16;
```

At that point, all accounts have been migrated away from pre-4.1 password hashing and the server no longer need be run with `secure_auth=0`.

**Method 2.**

Characteristics of this method:

- It assigns each affected account a new password, so you must tell each such user the new password and ask the user to choose a new one. Communication of passwords to users is outside the scope of MySQL, but should be done carefully.
- It does not require server or clients to be run with `secure_auth=0`.
- It works for any version of MySQL 5.5 or later (and for 5.7 has an easier variant).

With this method, you update each account separately due to the need to set passwords individually. Choose a different password for each account.

Suppose that `'user1'@'localhost'` is one of the accounts to be upgraded. Modify it as follows:

- In MySQL 5.7, `ALTER USER` provides the capability of modifying both the account password and its authentication plugin, so you need not modify the `mysql.user` system table directly:

  ```sql
  ALTER USER 'user1'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_native_password BY 'DBA-chosen-password';
  ```

  To also expire the account password, use this statement instead:

  ```sql
  ALTER USER 'user1'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_native_password BY 'DBA-chosen-password'
  PASSWORD EXPIRE;
  ```

  Then tell the user the new password and ask the user to connect to the server with that password and execute this statement to choose a new password:

  ```sql
  ALTER USER USER() IDENTIFIED BY 'user-chosen-password';
  ```

- Before MySQL 5.7, you must modify the `mysql.user` system table directly using these statements:

  ```sql
  SET old_passwords = 0;
  UPDATE mysql.user SET plugin = 'mysql_native_password',
  Password = PASSWORD('DBA-chosen-password')
  WHERE (User, Host) = ('user1', 'localhost');
  FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
  ```

  To also expire the account password, use these statements instead:

  ```sql
  SET old_passwords = 0;
  UPDATE mysql.user SET plugin = 'mysql_native_password',
  Password = PASSWORD('DBA-chosen-password'), password_expired = 'Y'
  WHERE (User, Host) = ('user1', 'localhost');
  FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
  ```

  Then tell the user the new password and ask the user to connect to the server with that password and execute these statements to choose a new password:
SET old_passwords = 0;
SET PASSWORD = PASSWORD('user-chosen-password');

Repeat for each account to be upgraded.

7.1.4 SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication

MySQL provides two authentication plugins that implement SHA-256 hashing for user account passwords:

- **sha256_password**: Implements basic SHA-256 authentication.
- **caching_sha2_password**: Implements SHA-256 authentication (like sha256_password), but uses caching on the server side for better performance and has additional features for wider applicability.

This section describes the original noncaching SHA-2 authentication plugin. For information about the caching plugin, see Section 7.1.5, “Caching SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication”.

**Important**

To connect to the server using an account that authenticates with the sha256_password plugin, you must use either a TLS connection or an unencrypted connection that supports password exchange using an RSA key pair, as described later in this section. Either way, the sha256_password plugin uses MySQL’s encryption capabilities. See Chapter 6, Using Encrypted Connections.

**Note**

In the name sha256_password, “sha256” refers to the 256-bit digest length the plugin uses for encryption. In the name caching_sha2_password, “sha2” refers more generally to the SHA-2 class of encryption algorithms, of which 256-bit encryption is one instance. The latter name choice leaves room for future expansion of possible digest lengths without changing the plugin name.

The following table shows the plugin names on the server and client sides.

**Table 7.3 Plugin and Library Names for SHA-256 Authentication**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>sha256_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>sha256_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>None (plugins are built in)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to SHA-256 pluggable authentication:

- **Installing SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication**
- **Using SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication**

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”.

**Installing SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication**

The sha256_password plugin exists in server and client forms:
SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication

- The server-side plugin is built into the server, need not be loaded explicitly, and cannot be disabled by unloading it.
- The client-side plugin is built into the `libmysqlclient` client library and is available to any program linked against `libmysqlclient`.

Using SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication

To set up an account that uses the `sha256_password` plugin for SHA-256 password hashing, use the following statement, where `password` is the desired account password:

```
CREATE USER 'sha256user'@'localhost'
IDENTIFIED WITH sha256_password BY 'password';
```

The server assigns the `sha256_password` plugin to the account and uses it to encrypt the password using SHA-256, storing those values in the `plugin` and `authentication_string` columns of the `mysql.user` system table.

The preceding instructions do not assume that `sha256_password` is the default authentication plugin. If `sha256_password` is the default authentication plugin, a simpler `CREATE USER` syntax can be used.

To start the server with the default authentication plugin set to `sha256_password`, put these lines in the server option file:

```
[mysqld]
default_authentication_plugin=sha256_password
```

That causes the `sha256_password` plugin to be used by default for new accounts. As a result, it is possible to create the account and set its password without naming the plugin explicitly:

```
CREATE USER 'sha256user'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
```

Another consequence of setting `default_authentication_plugin` to `sha256_password` is that, to use some other plugin for account creation, you must specify that plugin explicitly. For example, to use the `mysql_native_password` plugin, use this statement:

```
CREATE USER 'nativeuser'@'localhost'
IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_native_password BY 'password';
```

`sha256_password` supports connections over secure transport. `sha256_password` also supports encrypted password exchange using RSA over unencrypted connections if these conditions are satisfied:

- MySQL is compiled using OpenSSL. MySQL can be compiled using either OpenSSL or yaSSL (see Section 6.4, “SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities”), and `sha256_password` works with distributions compiled using either package, but RSA support requires OpenSSL.
- The MySQL server to which you wish to connect is configured to support RSA (using the RSA configuration procedure given later in this section).

RSA support has these characteristics:

- On the server side, two system variables name the RSA private and public key-pair files:
  `sha256_password_private_key_path` and `sha256_password_public_key_path`. The database administrator must set these variables at server startup if the key files to use have names that differ from the system variable default values.
- The server uses the `sha256_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys` system variable to determine whether to automatically generate the RSA key-pair files. See Section 6.3, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys”.

```
sha256_password
```

sha256_password supports connections over secure transport.
The `Rsa_public_key` status variable displays the RSA public key value used by the `sha256_password` authentication plugin.

Clients that are in possession of the RSA public key can perform RSA key pair-based password exchange with the server during the connection process, as described later.

For connections by accounts that authenticate using `sha256_password` and RSA public key pair-based password exchange, the server sends the RSA public key to the client as needed. However, if a copy of the public key is available on the client host, the client can use it to save a round trip in the client/server protocol:

- For these command-line clients, use the `--server-public-key-path` option to specify the RSA public key file: `mysql`, `mysqltest`, and (as of MySQL 5.7.23) `mysqladmin`, `mysqlbinlog`, `mysqlcheck`, `mysqldump`, `mysqlimport`, `mysqlpump`, `mysqlshow`, `mysqlslap`, `mysqltest`.

- For programs that use the C API, call `mysql_options()` to specify the RSA public key file by passing the `MYSQL_SERVER_PUBLIC_KEY` option and the name of the file.

- For replication slaves, RSA key pair-based password exchange cannot be used to connect to master servers for accounts that authenticate with the `sha256_password` plugin. For such accounts, only secure connections can be used.

For clients that use the `sha256_password` plugin, passwords are never exposed as cleartext when connecting to the server. How password transmission occurs depends on whether a secure connection or RSA encryption is used:

- If the connection is secure, an RSA key pair is unnecessary and is not used. This applies to encrypted connections that use TLS. The password is sent as cleartext but cannot be snooped because the connection is secure.

- If the connection is not secure, and an RSA key pair is available, the connection remains unencrypted. This applies to unencrypted connections without TLS. RSA is used only for password exchange between client and server, to prevent password snooping. When the server receives the encrypted password, it decrypts it. A scramble is used in the encryption to prevent repeat attacks.

- If a secure connection is not used and RSA encryption is not available, the connection attempt fails because the password cannot be sent without being exposed as cleartext.

As mentioned previously, RSA password encryption is available only if MySQL was compiled using OpenSSL. The implication for MySQL distributions compiled using yaSSL is that, to use SHA-256 passwords, clients must use an encrypted connection to access the server. See Section 6.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

**Note**

To use RSA password encryption with `sha256_password`, the client and server both must be compiled using OpenSSL, not just one of them.

Assuming that MySQL has been compiled using OpenSSL, use the following procedure to enable use of an RSA key pair for password exchange during the client connection process:

1. Create the RSA private and public key-pair files using the instructions in Section 6.3, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys”.

2. If the private and public key files are located in the data directory and are named `private_key.pem` and `public_key.pem` (the default values of the `sha256_password_private_key_path` and `sha256_password_public_key_path` system variables), the server uses them automatically at startup.

   Otherwise, to name the key files explicitly, set the system variables to the key file names in the server option file. If the files are located in the server data directory, you need not specify their full path names:
SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication

If the key files are not located in the data directory, or to make their locations explicit in the system variable values, use full path names:

```
[mysqld]
sha256_password_private_key_path=/usr/local/mysql/myprivkey.pem
sha256_password_public_key_path=/usr/local/mysql/mypubkey.pem
```

3. Restart the server, then connect to it and check the `Rsa_public_key` status variable value. The value will differ from that shown here, but should be nonempty:

```
mysql> SHOW STATUS LIKE 'Rsa_public_key'\G
*************************** 1. row ***************************
Variable_name: Rsa_public_key
Value: -----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
MIGfMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4GNADCBiQKBgQDO9nRUDd+KvSZgY7cNB2WNpwX6
MvE1PbJFXO7u18nJ9lwc99Du/E7lw6CVXw7VKrXPeHbVQzGyUNkfkf45Nz/ckajJa
alg3OBiDMvnyU5y40Tf1ic2eiyfadMe8fCJ64ZwVTnRbY29gt11MjUB5Ogd5kJ
q8aV7EtKwyhBc3QIDAQAAB
----END PUBLIC KEY-----
```

If the value is empty, the server found some problem with the key files. Check the error log for diagnostic information.

After the server has been configured with the RSA key files, accounts that authenticate with the `sha256_password` plugin have the option of using those key files to connect to the server. As mentioned previously, such accounts can use either a secure connection (in which case RSA is not used) or an unencrypted connection that performs password exchange using RSA. Suppose that an unencrypted connection is used. For example:

```
shell> mysql --ssl-mode=DISABLED -u sha256user -p
Enter password: password
```

For this connection attempt by `sha256user`, the server determines that `sha256_password` is the appropriate authentication plugin and invokes it (because that was the plugin specified at `CREATE USER` time). The plugin finds that the connection is not encrypted and thus requires the password to be transmitted using RSA encryption. In this case, the plugin sends the RSA public key to the client, which uses it to encrypt the password and returns the result to the server. The plugin uses the RSA private key on the server side to decrypt the password and accepts or rejects the connection based on whether the password is correct.

The server sends the RSA public key to the client as needed. However, if the client has a file containing a local copy of the RSA public key required by the server, it can specify the file using the `--server-public-key-path` option:

```
shell> mysql --ssl-mode=DISABLED -u sha256user -p --server-public-key-path=file_name
Enter password: password
```

The public key value in the file named by the `--server-public-key-path` option should be the same as the key value in the server-side file named by the `sha256_password_public_key_path` system variable. If the key file contains a valid public key value but the value is incorrect, an access-denied error occurs. If the key file does not contain a valid public key, the client program cannot use it. In this case, the `sha256_password` plugin sends the public key to the client as if no `--server-public-key-path` option had been specified.

Client users can obtain the RSA public key two ways:
The database administrator can provide a copy of the public key file.

A client user who can connect to the server some other way can use a `SHOW STATUS LIKE 'Rsa_public_key'` statement and save the returned key value in a file.

### 7.1.5 Caching SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication

MySQL provides two authentication plugins that implement SHA-256 hashing for user account passwords:

- `sha256_password`: Implements basic SHA-256 authentication.
- `caching_sha2_password`: Implements SHA-256 authentication (like `sha256_password`), but uses caching on the server side for better performance and has additional features for wider applicability. (In MySQL 5.7, `caching_sha2_password` is implemented only on the client side, as described later in this section.)

This section describes the caching SHA-2 authentication plugin, available as of MySQL 5.7.23. For information about the original basic (noncaching) plugin, see Section 7.1.4, “SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication”.

**Important**

In MySQL 5.7, the default authentication plugin is `mysql_native_password`. As of MySQL 8.0, the default authentication plugin is changed to `caching_sha2_password`. To enable MySQL 5.7 clients to connect to 8.0 and higher servers using accounts that authenticate with `caching_sha2_password`, the MySQL 5.7 client library and client programs support the `caching_sha2_password` client-side authentication plugin. This improves MySQL 5.7 client connect-capability compatibility with respect to MySQL 8.0 and higher servers, despite the differences in default authentication plugin.

Limiting `caching_sha2_password` support in MySQL 5.7 to the client-side plugin in the client library has these implications compared to MySQL 8.0:

- The `caching_sha2_password` server-side plugin is not implemented in MySQL 5.7.
- MySQL 5.7 servers do not support creating accounts that authenticate with `caching_sha2_password`.
- MySQL 5.7 servers do not implement system and status variables specific to `caching_sha2_password` server-side support: `caching_sha2_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys`, `caching_sha2_password_private_key_path`, `caching_sha2_password_public_key_path`, `Caching_sha2_password_rsa_public_key`.

In addition, there is no support for MySQL 5.7 replication slaves to connect to MySQL 8.0 replication masters using accounts that authenticate with `caching_sha2_password`. That would involve a master replicating to a slave with a version number lower than the master version, whereas masters normally replicate to slaves having a version equal to or higher than the master version.

**Important**

To connect to a MySQL 8.0 or higher server using an account that authenticates with the `caching_sha2_password` plugin, you must use either a secure connection or an unencrypted connection that supports password exchange
using an RSA key pair, as described later in this section. Either way, the
\texttt{caching\_sha2\_password} plugin uses MySQL’s encryption capabilities. See
Chapter 6, \textit{Using Encrypted Connections}.

\textbf{Note}

In the name \texttt{sha256\_password}, “sha256” refers to the 256-bit digest length
the plugin uses for encryption. In the name \texttt{caching\_sha2\_password}, “sha2”
refers more generally to the SHA-2 class of encryption algorithms, of which 256-
bit encryption is one instance. The latter name choice leaves room for future
expansion of possible digest lengths without changing the plugin name.

The \texttt{caching\_sha2\_password} plugin has these advantages, compared to \texttt{sha256\_password}:

- On the server side, an in-memory cache enables faster reauthentication of users who have
  connected previously when they connect again. (This server-side behavior is implemented only in
  MySQL 8.0 and higher.)

- Support is provided for client connections that use the Unix socket-file and shared-memory protocols.

The following table shows the plugin name on the client side.

\textbf{Table 7.4 Plugin and Library Names for SHA-2 Authentication}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>\texttt{caching_sha2_password}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>None (plugin is built in)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to caching SHA-2 pluggable
authentication:

- Installing SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication
- Using SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication
- Cache Operation for SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable
Authentication”.

\textbf{Installing SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication}

In MySQL 5.7, the \texttt{caching\_sha2\_password} plugin exists in client form. The client-side plugin
is built into the \texttt{libmysqlclient} client library and is available to any program linked against
\texttt{libmysqlclient}.

\textbf{Using SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication}

In MySQL 5.7, the \texttt{caching\_sha2\_password} client-side plugin enables connecting to MySQL 8.0
or higher servers using accounts that authenticate with the \texttt{caching\_sha2\_password} server-side
plugin. The discussion here assumes that an account named \texttt{'sha2user'@'localhost'} exists on
the MySQL 8.0 or higher server. For example, the following statement creates such an account, where
\texttt{password} is the desired account password:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE USER \texttt{'sha2user'@'localhost'}
IDENTIFIED WITH \texttt{caching\_sha2\_password} BY \texttt{'password'};
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{caching\_sha2\_password} supports connections over secure transport. \texttt{caching\_sha2\_password}
also supports encrypted password exchange using RSA over unencrypted connections if these
conditions are satisfied:
The MySQL 5.7 client library and client programs are compiled using OpenSSL. MySQL can be compiled using either OpenSSL or yaSSL (see Section 6.4, “SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities”), and caching_sha2_password works with distributions compiled using either package, but RSA support requires OpenSSL.

The MySQL 8.0 or higher server to which you wish to connect is configured to support RSA (using the RSA configuration procedure given later in this section).

RSA support has these characteristics, where all aspects that pertain to the server side require a MySQL 8.0 or higher server:

- On the server side, two system variables name the RSA private and public key-pair files: caching_sha2_password_private_key_path and caching_sha2_password_public_key_path. The database administrator must set these variables at server startup if the key files to use have names that differ from the system variable default values.

- The server uses the caching_sha2_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys system variable to determine whether to automatically generate the RSA key-pair files. See Section 6.3, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys”.

- The Caching_sha2_password_rsa_public_key status variable displays the RSA public key value used by the caching_sha2_password authentication plugin.

- Clients that are in possession of the RSA public key can perform RSA key pair-based password exchange with the server during the connection process, as described later.

- For connections by accounts that authenticate with caching_sha2_password and RSA key pair-based password exchange, the server does not send the RSA public key to clients by default. Clients can use a client-side copy of the required public key, or request the public key from the server. Use of a trusted local copy of the public key enables the client to avoid a round trip in the client/server protocol, and is more secure than requesting the public key from the server. On the other hand, requesting the public key from the server is more convenient (it requires no management of a client-side file) and may be acceptable in secure network environments.

- For command-line clients, use the --server-public-key-path option to specify the RSA public key file. Use the --get-server-public-key option to request the public key from the server. The following programs support the two options: mysql, mysqladmin, mysqlbinlog, mysqlcheck, mysqldump, mysqlimport, mysqlpump, mysqlshow, mysqlslap, mysqltest.

- For programs that use the C API, call mysql_options() to specify the RSA public key file by passing the MYSQL_SERVER_PUBLIC_KEY option and the name of the file, or request the public key from the server by passing the MYSQL_OPT_GET_SERVER_PUBLIC_KEY option.

In all cases, if the option is given to specify a valid public key file, it takes precedence over the option to request the public key from the server.

For clients that use the caching_sha2_password plugin, passwords are never exposed as cleartext when connecting to the MySQL 8.0 or higher server. How password transmission occurs depends on whether a secure connection or RSA encryption is used:

- If the connection is secure, an RSA key pair is unnecessary and is not used. This applies to encrypted TCP connections that use TLS, as well as Unix socket-file and shared-memory connections. The password is sent as cleartext but cannot be snooped because the connection is secure.

- If the connection is not secure, an RSA key pair is used. This applies to unencrypted TCP connections without TLS and named-pipe connections. RSA is used only for password exchange between client and server, to prevent password snooping. When the server receives the encrypted password, it decrypts it. A scramble is used in the encryption to prevent repeat attacks.
Caching SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication

- If a secure connection is not used and RSA encryption is not available, the connection attempt fails because the password cannot be sent without being exposed as cleartext.

As mentioned previously, RSA password encryption is available only if MySQL 5.7 was compiled using OpenSSL. The implication for clients from MySQL 5.7 distributions compiled using yaSSL is that, to use SHA-2 passwords, clients must use an encrypted connection to access the server. See Section 6.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

Assuming that MySQL 5.7 has been compiled using OpenSSL, use the following procedure to enable use of an RSA key pair for password exchange during the client connection process.

**Important**

Aspects of this procedure that pertain to server configuration must be done on the MySQL 8.0 or higher server to which you wish to connect using MySQL 5.7 clients, not on your MySQL 5.7 server.

1. Create the RSA private and public key-pair files using the instructions in Section 6.3, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys”.

2. If the private and public key files are located in the data directory and are named `private_key.pem` and `public_key.pem` (the default values of the `caching_sha2_password_private_key_path` and `caching_sha2_password_public_key_path` system variables), the server uses them automatically at startup.

   Otherwise, to name the key files explicitly, set the system variables to the key file names in the server option file. If the files are located in the server data directory, you need not specify their full path names:

   ```
   [mysqld]
   caching_sha2_password_private_key_path=myprivkey.pem
   caching_sha2_password_public_key_path=mypubkey.pem
   ```

   If the key files are not located in the data directory, or to make their locations explicit in the system variable values, use full path names:

   ```
   [mysqld]
   caching_sha2_password_private_key_path=/usr/local/mysql/myprivkey.pem
   caching_sha2_password_public_key_path=/usr/local/mysql/mypubkey.pem
   ```

3. Restart the server, then connect to it and check the `Caching_sha2_password_rsa_public_key` status variable value. The value will differ from that shown here, but should be nonempty:

   ```
   mysql> SHOW STATUS LIKE 'Caching_sha2_password_rsa_public_key'\G
   *************************** 1. row ***************************
   Variable_name: Caching_sha2_password_rsa_public_key
   Value: -----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
   MIGfMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4GNADCBiQKBgQDO9nRUDd+KvSZgY7cNB2ANpwX6
   MvE1PbJFkO7u18n39lw99du/E7lw6CVXw7VKrXPeHbVQzGyUNk5w45Nz/ckaaJa
   algJ8C1DmMVn6U540T/1lcs2xiyfaDMe8fCJ6z2WbnKhY2g8t1I3jUAB5Ogd5kJ
   f8aV7EtKwyHb0c3QQDAQAB
   ------END PUBLIC KEY-----
   ```

   If the value is empty, the server found some problem with the key files. Check the error log for diagnostic information.

After the server has been configured with the RSA key files, accounts that authenticate with the `caching_sha2_password` plugin have the option of using those key files to connect to the server. As mentioned previously, such accounts can use either a secure connection (in which case RSA is not
used) or an unencrypted connection that performs password exchange using RSA. Suppose that an unencrypted connection is used. For example:

```
shell> mysql --ssl-mode=DISABLED -u sha2user -p
Enter password: password
```

For this connection attempt by `sha2user`, the server determines that `caching_sha2_password` is the appropriate authentication plugin and invokes it (because that was the plugin specified at `CREATE USER` time). The plugin finds that the connection is not encrypted and thus requires the password to be transmitted using RSA encryption. However, the server does not send the public key to the client, and the client provided no public key, so it cannot encrypt the password and the connection fails:

```
ERROR 2061 (HY000): Authentication plugin 'caching_sha2_password'
reported error: Authentication requires secure connection.
```

To request the RSA public key from the server, specify the `--get-server-public-key` option:

```
shell> mysql --ssl-mode=DISABLED -u sha2user -p --get-server-public-key
Enter password: password
```

In this case, the server sends the RSA public key to the client, which uses it to encrypt the password and returns the result to the server. The plugin uses the RSA private key on the server side to decrypt the password and accepts or rejects the connection based on whether the password is correct.

Alternatively, if the client has a file containing a local copy of the RSA public key required by the server, it can specify the file using the `--server-public-key-path` option:

```
shell> mysql --ssl-mode=DISABLED -u sha2user -p --server-public-key-path=file_name
Enter password: password
```

In this case, the client uses the public key to encrypt the password and returns the result to the server. The plugin uses the RSA private key on the server side to decrypt the password and accepts or rejects the connection based on whether the password is correct.

The public key value in the file named by the `--server-public-key-path` option should be the same as the key value in the server-side file named by the `caching_sha2_password_public_key_path` system variable. If the key file contains a valid public key value but the value is incorrect, an access-denied error occurs. If the key file does not contain a valid public key, the client program cannot use it.

Client users can obtain the RSA public key two ways:

- The database administrator can provide a copy of the public key file.
- A client user who can connect to the server some other way can use a `SHOW STATUS LIKE 'Caching_sha2_password_rsa_public_key'` statement and save the returned key value in a file.

### Cache Operation for SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication

On the server side, the `caching_sha2_password` plugin uses an in-memory cache for faster authentication of clients who have connected previously. For MySQL 5.7, which supports only the `caching_sha2_password` client-side plugin, this server-side caching thus takes place on the MySQL 8.0 or higher server to which you connect using MySQL 5.7 clients. For information about cache operation, see Cache Operation for SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication, in MySQL 8.0 Reference Manual.

### 7.1.6 Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication

A client-side authentication plugin is available that sends the password to the server without hashing or encryption. This plugin is built into the MySQL client library.
The following table shows the plugin name.

Table 7.5 Plugin and Library Names for Cleartext Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>None, see discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>mysql_clear_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>None (plugin is built in)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With many MySQL authentication methods, the client performs hashing or encryption of the password before sending it to the server. This enables the client to avoid sending the password in clear text.

Hashing or encryption cannot be done for authentication schemes that require the server to receive the password as entered on the client side. In such cases, the client-side `mysql_clear_password` plugin is used to send the password to the server in clear text. There is no corresponding server-side plugin. Rather, the client-side plugin can be used by any server-side plugin that needs a cleartext password. (Examples are the PAM and simple LDAP authentication plugins; see Section 7.1.7, “PAM Pluggable Authentication”, and Section 7.1.9, “LDAP Pluggable Authentication”.)

The following discussion provides usage information specific to clear text pluggable authentication. For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”.

**Note**

Sending passwords in clear text may be a security problem in some configurations. To avoid problems if there is any possibility that the password would be intercepted, clients should connect to MySQL Server using a method that protects the password. Possibilities include SSL (see Chapter 6, Using Encrypted Connections), IPsec, or a private network.

To make inadvertent use of the `mysql_clear_password` plugin less likely, MySQL clients must explicitly enable it. This can be done in several ways:

- Set the `LIBMYSQL_ENABLE_CLEARTEXT_PLUGIN` environment variable to a value that begins with `1`, `Y`, or `y`. This enables the plugin for all client connections.
- The `mysql`, `mysqladmin`, and `mysqlslap` client programs (also `mysqlcheck`, `mysqldump`, and `mysqlshow` for MySQL 5.7.10 and later) support an `--enable-cleartext-plugin` option that enables the plugin on a per-invocation basis.
- The `mysql_options()` C API function supports a `MYSQL_ENABLE_CLEARTEXT_PLUGIN` option that enables the plugin on a per-connection basis. Also, any program that uses `libmysqlclient` and reads option files can enable the plugin by including an `enable-cleartext-plugin` option in an option group read by the client library.

### 7.1.7 PAM Pluggable Authentication

**Note**

PAM pluggable authentication is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see [https://www.mysql.com/products/](https://www.mysql.com/products/).

MySQL Enterprise Edition supports an authentication method that enables MySQL Server to use PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules) to authenticate MySQL users. PAM enables a system to use a standard interface to access various kinds of authentication methods, such as Unix passwords or an LDAP directory.

PAM pluggable authentication provides these capabilities:
• External authentication: PAM authentication enables MySQL Server to accept connections from users defined outside the MySQL grant tables and that authenticate using methods supported by PAM.

• Proxy user support: PAM authentication can return to MySQL a user name different from the login user, based on the groups the external user is in and the authentication string provided. This means that the plugin can return the MySQL user that defines the privileges the external PAM-authenticated user should have. For example, a user named joe can connect and have the privileges of the user named developer.

PAM pluggable authentication has been tested on Linux and macOS.

The PAM plugin uses the information passed to it by MySQL Server (such as user name, host name, password, and authentication string), plus whatever method is available for PAM lookup. The plugin checks the user credentials against PAM and returns 'Authentication succeeded, Username is user_name' or 'Authentication failed'.

The following table shows the plugin and library file names. The file name suffix might differ on your system. The file must be located in the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable. For installation information, see Installing PAM Pluggable Authentication.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>authentication_pam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>mysql_clear_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>authentication_pam.so</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The client-side clear-text plugin that communicates with the server-side PAM plugin is built into the libmysqlclient client library and is included in all distributions, including community distributions. Inclusion of the client-side clear-text plugin in all MySQL distributions enables clients from any distribution to connect to a server that has the server-side plugin loaded.

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to PAM pluggable authentication:

• Installing PAM Pluggable Authentication
• Uninstalling PAM Pluggable Authentication
• Using PAM Pluggable Authentication
• Unix Password Authentication without Proxy Users
• LDAP Authentication without Proxy Users
• Unix Password Authentication with Proxy Users and Group Mapping
• PAM Pluggable Authentication Debugging

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”. For information about the mysql_clear_password plugin, see Section 7.1.6, “Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication”. For proxy user information, see Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”.

**Installing PAM Pluggable Authentication**

This section describes how to install the PAM authentication plugin. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of plugin_dir at server startup.
The plugin library file base name is `authentication_pam`. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, `.so` for Unix and Unix-like systems, `.dll` for Windows).

To load the plugin at server startup, use the `--plugin-load-add` option to name the library file that contains it. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```bash
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=authentication_pam.so
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to register the plugin at runtime, use this statement (adjust the `.so` suffix as necessary):

```sql
INSTALL PLUGIN authentication_pam SONAME 'authentication_pam.so';
```

`INSTALL PLUGIN` loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the `mysql.plugins` system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup.

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
      FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
      WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE '%pam%';
```

If the plugin fails to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

To associate MySQL accounts with the PAM plugin, see Using PAM Pluggable Authentication.

### Uninstalling PAM Pluggable Authentication

The method used to uninstall the PAM authentication plugin depends on how you installed it:

- If you installed the plugin at server startup using a `--plugin-load-add` option, restart the server without the option.

- If you installed the plugin at runtime using `INSTALL PLUGIN`, it remains installed across server restarts. To uninstall it, use `UNINSTALL PLUGIN`:

```sql
UNINSTALL PLUGIN authentication_pam;
```

### Using PAM Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to use the PAM authentication plugin to connect from MySQL client programs to the server. It is assumed that the server is running with the server-side plugin enabled, as described in Installing PAM Pluggable Authentication.

To refer to the PAM authentication plugin in the `IDENTIFIED WITH` clause of a `CREATE USER` statement, use the name `authentication_pam`. For example:

```sql
CREATE USER user
  IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_pam
  AS 'authentication_string';
```

The authentication string specifies the following types of information:
PAM Pluggable Authentication

- PAM supports the notion of "service name," which is a name that the system administrator can use to configure the authentication method for a particular application. There can be several such "applications" associated with a single database server instance, so the choice of service name is left to the SQL application developer. When you define an account that should authenticate using PAM, specify the service name in the authentication string.

- PAM provides a way for a PAM module to return to the server a MySQL user name other than the login name supplied at login time. Use the authentication string to control the mapping between login name and MySQL user name. If you want to take advantage of proxy user capabilities, the authentication string must include this kind of mapping.

For example, if the service name is `mysql` and users in the `root` and `users` PAM groups should be mapped to the `developer` and `data_entry` MySQL users, respectively, use a statement like this:

```sql
CREATE USER user IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_pam AS 'mysql, root=developer, users=data_entry';
```

Authentication string syntax for the PAM authentication plugin follows these rules:

- The string consists of a PAM service name, optionally followed by a group mapping list consisting of one or more keyword/value pairs each specifying a group name and a MySQL user name:

  ```
pam_service_name[,group_name=mysql_user_name]...
  ```

  The plugin parses the authentication string on each login check. To minimize overhead, keep the string as short as possible.

- Each `group_name=mysql_user_name` pair must be preceded by a comma.

- Leading and trailing spaces not inside double quotation marks are ignored.

- Unquoted `pam_service_name`, `group_name`, and `mysql_user_name` values can contain anything except equal sign, comma, or space.

- If a `pam_service_name`, `group_name`, or `mysql_user_name` value is quoted with double quotation marks, everything between the quotation marks is part of the value. This is necessary, for example, if the value contains space characters. All characters are legal except double quotation mark and backslash (\). To include either character, escape it with a backslash.

If the plugin successfully authenticates a login name, it looks for a group mapping list in the authentication string and, if present, uses it to return a different user name to the MySQL server based on the groups the external user is a member of:

- If the authentication string contains no group mapping list, the plugin returns the login name.

- If the authentication string does contain a group mapping list, the plugin examines each `group_name=mysql_user_name` pair in the list from left to right and tries to find a match for the `group_name` value in a non-MySQL directory of the groups assigned to the authenticated user and returns `mysql_user_name` for the first match it finds. If the plugin finds no match for any group, it returns the login name. If the plugin is not capable of looking up a group in a directory, it ignores the group mapping list and returns the login name.

The following sections describe how to set up several authentication scenarios that use the PAM authentication plugin:

- No proxy users. This uses PAM only to check login names and passwords. Every external user permitted to connect to MySQL Server should have a matching MySQL account that is defined to use external PAM authentication. (For a MySQL account of `user_name@host_name` to match the external user, `user_name` must be the login name and `host_name` must match the host from which
the client connects.) Authentication can be performed by various PAM-supported methods. The discussion shows how to use traditional Unix passwords and LDAP.

PAM authentication, when not done through proxy users or groups, requires the MySQL account to have the same user name as the Unix account. MySQL user names are limited to 32 characters (see Section 4.2, “Grant Tables”), which limits PAM nonproxy authentication to Unix accounts with names of at most 32 characters.

- Proxy login only and group mapping. For this scenario, create one or a few MySQL accounts that define different sets of privileges. (Ideally, nobody should connect using those accounts directly.) Then define a default user authenticating through PAM that uses some mapping scheme (usually by the external groups the users are in) to map all the external logins to the few MySQL accounts holding the privilege sets. Any user that logs in is mapped to one of the MySQL accounts and uses its privileges. The discussion shows how to set this up using Unix passwords, but other PAM methods such as LDAP could be used instead.

Variations on these scenarios are possible. For example, you can permit some users to log in directly (without proxying) but require others to connect through proxy users.

The examples make the following assumptions. You might need to make some adjustments if your system is set up differently.

- The PAM configuration directory is /etc/pam.d.
- The PAM service name is mysql, which means that you must set up a PAM file named mysql in the PAM configuration directory (creating the file if it does not exist). If you use a service name different from mysql, the file name will differ and you must use a different name in the AS 'auth_string' clause of CREATE USER statements.
- The examples use a login name of antonio and password of verysecret. Change these to correspond to the users you want to authenticate.

The PAM authentication plugin checks at initialization time whether the AUTHENTICATION_PAM_LOG environment value is set in the server's startup environment. If so, the plugin enables logging of diagnostic messages to the standard output. Depending on how your server is started, the message might appear on the console or in the error log. These messages can be helpful for debugging PAM-related problems that occur when the plugin performs authentication. For more information, see PAM Pluggable Authentication Debugging.

### Unix Password Authentication without Proxy Users

This authentication scenario uses PAM only to check Unix user login names and passwords. Every external user permitted to connect to MySQL Server should have a matching MySQL account that is defined to use external PAM authentication.

1. Verify that Unix authentication in PAM permits you to log in as antonio with password verysecret.
2. Set up PAM to authenticate the mysql service by creating a file named /etc/pam.d/mysql.

The file contents are system dependent, so check existing login-related files in the /etc/pam.d directory to see what they look like. On Linux, the mysql file might look like this:

```
# %PAM-1.0
auth        include    password-auth
account     include    password-auth
```

For Gentoo Linux, use system-login rather than password-auth. For macOS, use login rather than password-auth.

The PAM file format might differ on some systems. For example, on Ubuntu and other Debian-based systems, use these file contents instead:
3. Create a MySQL account with the same user name as the Unix login name and define it to authenticate using the PAM plugin:

```sql
CREATE USER 'antonio'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_pam AS 'mysql';
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON mydb.* TO 'antonio'@'localhost';
```

4. Connect to the MySQL server using the `mysql` command-line client. For example:

```bash
mysql --user=antonio --password --enable-cleartext-plugin mydb
Enter password: verysecret
```

The server should permit the connection and the following query should return output as shown:

```
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER(), @@proxy_user;
+-------------------+-------------------+--------------+
| USER()            | CURRENT_USER()    | @@proxy_user |
+-------------------+-------------------+--------------+
| antonio@localhost | antonio@localhost | NULL         |
+-------------------+-------------------+--------------+
```

This demonstrates that `antonio` uses the privileges granted to the `antonio` MySQL account, and that no proxying has occurred.

**Note**

The client-side `mysql_clear_password` plugin with which the server-side PAM plugin communicates sends the password to the MySQL server in cleartext so it can be passed to PAM. This is necessary to use the server-side PAM library, but may be a security problem in some configurations. These measures minimize the risk:

- To make inadvertent use of the `mysql_clear_password` plugin less likely, MySQL clients must explicitly enable it; for example, with the `--enable-cleartext-plugin` option.

- To avoid password exposure with the `mysql_clear_password` plugin enabled, MySQL clients should connect to the MySQL server using a secure connection.

For additional information, see Section 7.1.6, “Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication”, and Section 6.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

**Note**

On some systems, Unix authentication uses `/etc/shadow`, a file that typically has restricted access permissions. This can cause MySQL PAM-based authentication to fail. Unfortunately, the PAM implementation does not permit distinguishing “password could not be checked” (due, for example, to inability to read `/etc/shadow`) from “password does not match.” If your system uses `/etc/shadow`, you may be able enable access to it by MySQL using this method (assuming that the MySQL server is run from the `mysql` system account):

1. Create a `shadow` group in `/etc/group`. 
2. Add the mysql user to the shadow group in /etc/group.

3. Assign /etc/group to the shadow group and enable the group read permission:
   
   ```
   chgrp shadow /etc/shadow
   chmod g+r /etc/shadow
   ```

4. Restart the MySQL server.

**LDAP Authentication without Proxy Users**

This authentication scenario uses PAM only to check LDAP user login names and passwords. Every external user permitted to connect to MySQL Server should have a matching MySQL account that is defined to use external PAM authentication.

1. Verify that LDAP authentication in PAM permits you to log in as antonio with password verysecret.

2. Set up PAM to authenticate the mysql service through LDAP by creating a file named /etc/pam.d/mysql. The file contents are system dependent, so check existing login-related files in the /etc/pam.d directory to see what they look like. On Linux, the mysql file might look like this:

   ```
   #%PAM-1.0
   auth        required    pam_ldap.so
   account     required    pam_ldap.so
   ```

   If PAM object files have a suffix different from .so on your system, substitute the correct suffix.

   The PAM file format might differ on some systems.

3. MySQL account creation and connecting to the server is the same as described in Unix Password Authentication without Proxy Users.

**Unix Password Authentication with Proxy Users and Group Mapping**

The authentication scheme described here uses proxying and group mapping to map connecting MySQL users who authenticate using PAM onto other MySQL accounts that define different sets of privileges. Users do not connect directly through the accounts that define the privileges. Instead, they connect through a default proxy user authenticated using PAM, such that all the external logins are mapped to the MySQL accounts that hold the privileges. Any user who connects is mapped to one of those MySQL accounts, the privileges for which determine the database operations permitted to the external user.

The procedure shown here uses Unix password authentication. To use LDAP instead, see the early steps of LDAP Authentication without Proxy Users.

**Note**

For information regarding possible problems related to /etc/shadow, see Unix Password Authentication without Proxy Users.

1. Verify that Unix authentication in PAM permits you to log in as antonio with password verysecret and that antonio is a member of the root or users group.

2. Set up PAM to authenticate the mysql service. Put the following in /etc/pam.d/mysql:

   ```
   #%PAM-1.0
   auth        include    password-auth
   ```
For Gentoo Linux, use `system-login` rather than `password-auth`. For macOS, use `login` rather than `password-auth`.

The PAM file format might differ on some systems. For example, on Ubuntu and other Debian-based systems, use these file contents instead:

```sh
@include common-auth
@include common-account
@include common-session-noninteractive
```

3. Create a default proxy user (`''@''`) that maps the external PAM users to the proxied accounts. It maps external users from the `root` PAM group to the `developer` MySQL account and the external users from the `users` PAM group to the `data_entry` MySQL account:

```sql
CREATE USER ''@'' IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_pam AS 'mysql, root=developer, users=data_entry';
```

The mapping list following the service name is required when you set up proxy users. Otherwise, the plugin cannot tell how to map the name of PAM groups to the proper proxied user name.

**Note**

If your MySQL installation has anonymous users, they might conflict with the default proxy user. For more information about this problem, and ways of dealing with it, see Default Proxy User and Anonymous User Conflicts.

4. Create the proxied accounts that will be used to access the databases:

```sql
CREATE USER 'developer'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'very secret password';
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON mydevdb.* TO 'developer'@'localhost';
CREATE USER 'data_entry'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'very secret password';
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON mydb.* TO 'data_entry'@'localhost';
```

If you do not let anyone know the passwords for these accounts, other users cannot use them to connect directly to the MySQL server. Instead, it is expected that users will authenticate using PAM and that they will use the `developer` or `data_entry` account by proxy based on their PAM group.

5. Grant the `PROXY` privilege to the proxy account for the proxied accounts:

```sql
GRANT PROXY ON 'developer'@'localhost' TO ''@'';
GRANT PROXY ON 'data_entry'@'localhost' TO ''@'';
```

6. Connect to the MySQL server using the `mysql` command-line client. For example:

```bash
mysql --user=antonio --password --enable-cleartext-plugin mydb
```

Enter password: `verysecret`

The server authenticates the connection using the `''@''` account. The privileges `antonio` will have depends on what PAM groups he is a member of. If `antonio` is a member of the `root` PAM group, the PAM plugin maps `root` to the `developer` MySQL user name and returns that name to the server. The server verifies that `''@''` has the `PROXY` privilege for `developer` and permits the connection. The following query should return output as shown:

```sql
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER(), @@proxy_user;
+-------------------+---------------------+--------------+
| USER()            | CURRENT_USER()      | @@proxy_user |
+-------------------+---------------------+--------------+
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USER()</th>
<th>CURRENT_USER()</th>
<th>@@proxy_user</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mysql</td>
<td>root=developer</td>
<td>developer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>users=data_entry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Windows Pluggable Authentication

| antonio@localhost | developer@localhost | ''@'' |
+-------------------+---------------------+--------------+

This demonstrates that antonio uses the privileges granted to the developer MySQL account, and that proxying occurred through the default proxy user account.

If antonio is not a member of the root PAM group but is a member of the users group, a similar process occurs, but the plugin maps user group membership to the data_entry MySQL user name and returns that name to the server. In this case, antonio uses the privileges of the data_entry MySQL account:

```sql
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER(), @@proxy_user;
+-------------------+----------------------+--------------+
| USER()            | CURRENT_USER()       | @@proxy_user |
+-------------------+----------------------+--------------+
| antonio@localhost | data_entry@localhost | ''@''        |
```

Note

The client-side mysql_clear_password plugin with which the server-side PAM plugin communicates sends the password to the MySQL server in clear text so it can be passed to PAM. This is necessary to use the server-side PAM library, but may be a security problem in some configurations. These measures minimize the risk:

- To make inadvertent use of the mysql_clear_password plugin less likely, MySQL clients must explicitly enable it; for example, with the --enable-cleartext-plugin option.
- To avoid password exposure with the mysql_clear_password plugin enabled, MySQL clients should connect to the MySQL server using a secure connection.

For additional information, see Section 7.1.6, “Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication”, and Section 6.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

PAM Pluggable Authentication Debugging

The PAM authentication plugin checks at initialization time whether the AUTHENTICATION_PAM_LOG environment value is set (the value does not matter). If so, the plugin enables logging of diagnostic messages to the standard output. These messages may be helpful for debugging PAM-related problems that occur when the plugin performs authentication.

Some messages include reference to PAM plugin source files and line numbers, which enables plugin actions to be tied more closely to the location in the code where they occur.

7.1.8 Windows Pluggable Authentication

Note

Windows pluggable authentication is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see https://www.mysql.com/products/.

MySQL Enterprise Edition for Windows supports an authentication method that performs external authentication on Windows, enabling MySQL Server to use native Windows services to authenticate client connections. Users who have logged in to Windows can connect from MySQL client programs to the server based on the information in their environment without specifying an additional password.
The client and server exchange data packets in the authentication handshake. As a result of this exchange, the server creates a security context object that represents the identity of the client in the Windows OS. This identity includes the name of the client account. Windows pluggable authentication uses the identity of the client to check whether it is a given account or a member of a group. By default, negotiation uses Kerberos to authenticate, then NTLM if Kerberos is unavailable.

Windows pluggable authentication provides these capabilities:

- External authentication: Windows authentication enables MySQL Server to accept connections from users defined outside the MySQL grant tables who have logged in to Windows.
- Proxy user support: Windows authentication can return to MySQL a user name different from the client user. This means that the plugin can return the MySQL user that defines the privileges the external Windows-authenticated user should have. For example, a user named `joe` can connect and have the privileges of the user named `developer`.

The following table shows the plugin and library file names. The file must be located in the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td><code>authentication_windows</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td><code>authentication_windows_client</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td><code>authentication_windows.dll</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The library file includes only the server-side plugin. The client-side plugin is built into the `libmysqlclient` client library.

The server-side Windows authentication plugin is included only in MySQL Enterprise Edition. It is not included in MySQL community distributions. The client-side plugin is included in all distributions, including community distributions. This permits clients from any distribution to connect to a server that has the server-side plugin loaded.

The Windows authentication plugin is supported on any version of Windows supported by MySQL 5.7 (see [https://www.mysql.com/support/supportedplatforms/database.html](https://www.mysql.com/support/supportedplatforms/database.html)).

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to Windows pluggable authentication:

- Installing Windows Pluggable Authentication
- Uninstalling Windows Pluggable Authentication
- Using Windows Pluggable Authentication

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”. For proxy user information, see Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”.

### Installing Windows Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to install the Windows authentication plugin. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.
To load the plugin at server startup, use the --plugin-load-add option to name the library file that contains it. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server my.cnf file:

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=authentication_windows.dll
```

After modifying my.cnf, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to register the plugin at runtime, use this statement:

```
INSTALL PLUGIN authentication_windows SONAME 'authentication_windows.dll';
```

`INSTALL PLUGIN` loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the `mysql.plugins` system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup.

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
    FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE '%windows%';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUGIN_NAME</th>
<th>PLUGIN_STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authentication_windows</td>
<td>ACTIVE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the plugin fails to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

To associate MySQL accounts with the Windows authentication plugin, see Using Windows Pluggable Authentication.

Uninstalling Windows Pluggable Authentication

The method used to uninstall the Windows authentication plugin depends on how you installed it:

- If you installed the plugin at server startup using a --plugin-load-add option, restart the server without the option.
- If you installed the plugin at runtime using `INSTALL PLUGIN`, it remains installed across server restarts. To uninstall it, use `UNINSTALL PLUGIN`:

```
UNINSTALL PLUGIN authentication_windows;
```

In addition, remove any startup options that set Windows plugin-related system variables.

Using Windows Pluggable Authentication

The Windows authentication plugin supports the use of MySQL accounts such that users who have logged in to Windows can connect to the MySQL server without having to specify an additional password. It is assumed that the server is running with the server-side plugin enabled, as described in Installing Windows Pluggable Authentication. Once the DBA has enabled the server-side plugin and set up accounts to use it, clients can connect using those accounts with no other setup required on their part.

To refer to the Windows authentication plugin in the IDENTIFIED WITH clause of a CREATE USER statement, use the name `authentication_windows`. Suppose that the Windows users Rafal
and Tasha should be permitted to connect to MySQL, as well as any users in the Administrators or Power Users group. To set this up, create a MySQL account named sql_admin that uses the Windows plugin for authentication:

```
CREATE USER sql_admin
    IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_windows
    AS 'Rafal, Tasha, Administrators, "Power Users"';
```

The plugin name is `authentication_windows`. The string following the `AS` keyword is the authentication string. It specifies that the Windows users named Rafal or Tasha are permitted to authenticate to the server as the MySQL user sql_admin, as are any Windows users in the Administrators or Power Users group. The latter group name contains a space, so it must be quoted with double quote characters.

After you create the sql_admin account, a user who has logged in to Windows can attempt to connect to the server using that account:

```
C:\> mysql --user=sql_admin
```

No password is required here. The `authentication_windows` plugin uses the Windows security API to check which Windows user is connecting. If that user is named Rafal or Tasha, or is in the Administrators or Power Users group, the server grants access and the client is authenticated as sql_admin and has whatever privileges are granted to the sql_admin account. Otherwise, the server denies access.

Authentication string syntax for the Windows authentication plugin follows these rules:

- The string consists of one or more user mappings separated by commas.
- Each user mapping associates a Windows user or group name with a MySQL user name:

```
win_user_or_group_name=mysql_user_name
win_user_or_group_name
```

For the latter syntax, with no `mysql_user_name` value given, the implicit value is the MySQL user created by the `CREATE USER` statement. Thus, these statements are equivalent:

```
CREATE USER sql_admin
    IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_windows
    AS 'Rafal, Tasha, Administrators, "Power Users"';

CREATE USER sql_admin
    IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_windows
    AS 'Rafal=sql_admin, Tasha=sql_admin, Administrators=sql_admin, "Power Users"=sql_admin';
```

- Each backslash (`\`) in a value must be doubled because backslash is the escape character in MySQL strings.
- Leading and trailing spaces not inside double quotation marks are ignored.
- Unquoted `win_user_or_group_name` and `mysql_user_name` values can contain anything except equal sign, comma, or space.
- If a `win_user_or_group_name` and or `mysql_user_name` value is quoted with double quotation marks, everything between the quotation marks is part of the value. This is necessary, for example, if the name contains space characters. All characters within double quotes are legal except double quotation mark and backslash. To include either character, escape it with a backslash.
- `win_user_or_group_name` values use conventional syntax for Windows principals, either local or in a domain. Examples (note the doubling of backslashes):
When invoked by the server to authenticate a client, the plugin scans the authentication string left to right for a user or group match to the Windows user. If there is a match, the plugin returns the corresponding `mysql_user_name` to the MySQL server. If there is no match, authentication fails.

A user name match takes preference over a group name match. Suppose that the Windows user named `win_user` is a member of `win_group` and the authentication string looks like this:

```
'win_group = sql_user1, win_user = sql_user2'
```

When `win_user` connects to the MySQL server, there is a match both to `win_group` and to `win_user`. The plugin authenticates the user as `sql_user2` because the more-specific user match takes precedence over the group match, even though the group is listed first in the authentication string.

Windows authentication always works for connections from the same computer on which the server is running. For cross-computer connections, both computers must be registered with Windows Active Directory. If they are in the same Windows domain, it is unnecessary to specify a domain name. It is also possible to permit connections from a different domain, as in this example:

```sql
CREATE USER sql_accounting
  IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_windows
  AS 'SomeDomain\Accounting';
```

Here `SomeDomain` is the name of the other domain. The backslash character is doubled because it is the MySQL escape character within strings.

MySQL supports the concept of proxy users whereby a client can connect and authenticate to the MySQL server using one account but while connected has the privileges of another account (see Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”). Suppose that you want Windows users to connect using a single user name but be mapped based on their Windows user and group names onto specific MySQL accounts as follows:

- The `local_user` and `MyDomain\domain_user` local and domain Windows users should map to the `local_wlad` MySQL account.
- Users in the `MyDomain\Developers` domain group should map to the `local_dev` MySQL account.
- Local machine administrators should map to the `local_admin` MySQL account.

To set this up, create a proxy account for Windows users to connect to, and configure this account so that users and groups map to the appropriate MySQL accounts (`local_wlad`, `local_dev`, `local_admin`). In addition, grant the MySQL accounts the privileges appropriate to the operations they need to perform. The following instructions use `win_proxy` as the proxy account, and `local_wlad`, `local_dev`, and `local_admin` as the proxied accounts.

1. Create the proxy MySQL account:

```sql
CREATE USER win_proxy
  IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_windows
  AS 'local_user = local_wlad,
      MyDomain\domain_user = local_wlad,
      MyDomain\Developers = local_dev,
```
2. For proxying to work, the proxied accounts must exist, so create them:

```sql
CREATE USER local_wlad IDENTIFIED BY 'wlad_pass';
CREATE USER local_dev IDENTIFIED BY 'dev_pass';
CREATE USER local_admin IDENTIFIED BY 'admin_pass';
```

If you do not let anyone know the passwords for these accounts, other users cannot use them to connect directly to the MySQL server.

You should also issue `GRANT` statements (not shown) that grant each proxied account the privileges it needs.

3. The proxy account must have the `PROXY` privilege for each of the proxied accounts:

```sql
GRANT PROXY ON local_wlad TO win_proxy;
GRANT PROXY ON local_dev TO win_proxy;
GRANT PROXY ON local_admin TO win_proxy;
```

Now the Windows users `local_user` and `MyDomain\domain_user` can connect to the MySQL server as `win_proxy` and when authenticated have the privileges of the account given in the authentication string—in this case, `local_wlad`. A user in the `MyDomain\Developers` group who connects as `win_proxy` has the privileges of the `local_dev` account. A user in the `BUILTIN\Administrators` group has the privileges of the `local_admin` account.

To configure authentication so that all Windows users who do not have their own MySQL account go through a proxy account, substitute the default proxy user (`''@''`) for `win_proxy` in the preceding instructions. For information about the default proxy user, see Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”.

To use the Windows authentication plugin with Connector/NET connection strings in Connector/NET 6.4.4 and higher, see Using the Windows Native Authentication Plugin.

Additional control over the Windows authentication plugin is provided by the `authentication_windows_use_principal_name` and `authentication_windows_log_level` system variables. See Server System Variables.

### 7.1.9 LDAP Pluggable Authentication

#### Note

LDAP pluggable authentication is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see https://www.mysql.com/products/.

As of MySQL 5.7.19, MySQL Enterprise Edition supports an authentication method that enables MySQL Server to use LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) to authenticate MySQL users by accessing directory services such as X.500. MySQL uses LDAP to fetch user, credential, and group information.

LDAP pluggable authentication provides these capabilities:

- External authentication: LDAP authentication enables MySQL Server to accept connections from users defined outside the MySQL grant tables in LDAP directories.
• Proxy user support: LDAP authentication can return to MySQL a user name different from the login user, based on the LDAP group of the external user. This means that an LDAP plugin can return the MySQL user that defines the privileges the external LDAP-authenticated user should have. For example, an LDAP user named joe can connect and have the privileges of the MySQL user named developer, if the LDAP group for joe is developer.

• Security: Using TLS, connections to the LDAP server can be secure.

The following table shows the plugin and library file names. The file name suffix might differ on your system. The files must be located in the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable.

Table 7.8 Plugin and Library Names for LDAP Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin names</td>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl, authentication_ldap_simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin names</td>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_client, mysql_clear_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file names</td>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl.so, authentication_ldap_sasl_client.so, authentication_ldap_simple.so</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The library files include only the authentication_ldap_XXX plugins. The client-side mysql_clear_password plugin is built into the libmysqlclient client library.

There are two server-side LDAP plugins, each of which works with a specific client-side plugin:

• The server-side authentication_ldap_simple plugin performs simple LDAP authentication. For connections by accounts that use this plugin, client programs use the client-side mysql_clear_password plugin, which sends the password to the server in clear text. No password hashing or encryption is used, so a secure connection between the MySQL client and server is recommended to prevent password exposure.

• The server-side authentication_ldap_sasl plugin performs SASL-based LDAP authentication. For connections by accounts that use this plugin, client programs use the client-side authentication_ldap_sasl_client plugin. The client-side and server-side SASL LDAP plugins use SASL messages for secure transmission of credentials within the LDAP protocol, to avoid sending the clear-text password between the MySQL client and server.

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to LDAP pluggable authentication:

• Prerequisites for LDAP Pluggable Authentication
• How LDAP Authentication of MySQL Users Works
• Installing LDAP Pluggable Authentication
• Uninstalling LDAP Pluggable Authentication
• Using LDAP Pluggable Authentication

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”. For information about the mysql_clear_password plugin, see Section 7.1.6, “Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication”. For proxy user information, see Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”.

Note

If your system supports PAM and permits LDAP as a PAM authentication method, another way to use LDAP for MySQL user authentication is to use the
Prerequisites for LDAP Pluggable Authentication

To use LDAP pluggable authentication for MySQL, these prerequisites must be satisfied:

• An LDAP server must be available for the LDAP authentication plugins to communicate with.

• LDAP users to be authenticated by MySQL must be present in the directory managed by the LDAP server.

• An LDAP client library must be available on systems where the server-side authentication_pam plugin. See Section 7.1.7, “PAM Pluggable Authentication”.

Prerequisites for LDAP Pluggable Authentication

To use LDAP pluggable authentication for MySQL, these prerequisites must be satisfied:

• An LDAP server must be available for the LDAP authentication plugins to communicate with.

• LDAP users to be authenticated by MySQL must be present in the directory managed by the LDAP server.

• An LDAP client library must be available on systems where the server-side authentication_pam plugin. See Section 7.1.7, “PAM Pluggable Authentication”.

How LDAP Authentication of MySQL Users Works

This section provides a general overview of how MySQL and LDAP work together to authenticate MySQL users. For examples showing how to set up MySQL accounts to use specific LDAP authentication plugins, see Using LDAP Pluggable Authentication.

The client connects to the MySQL server, providing the MySQL client user name and the LDAP password:

• For simple LDAP authentication, the client-side and server-side plugins communicate the plugin in clear text.

• For SASL-based LDAP authentication, the client-side and server-side plugins use SASL messages for secure transmission of credentials within the LDAP protocol, to avoid sending the clear-text password between the MySQL client and server.

If the client user name and host name match no MySQL account, the connection is rejected.

If there is a matching MySQL account, authentication against LDAP occurs. The LDAP server looks for an entry matching the user and authenticates the entry against the password:

• If the MySQL account names an the LDAP user distinguished name (DN), LDAP authentication uses that value and the LDAP password provided by the client. (To associate an LDAP user DN with a MySQL account, include a BY clause that specifies an authentication string in the CREATE USER statement that creates the account.)

• If the MySQL account names no LDAP user DN, LDAP authentication uses the user name and LDAP password provided by the client. In this case, the authentication plugin first binds to the LDAP server using the root DN and password as credentials to find the user DN based on the client user name, then authenticates the user DN against the LDAP password. This bind using the root credentials fails if the root DN and password are set to incorrect values, or are empty (not set) and the LDAP server does not permit anonymous connections.

If the LDAP server finds no match or multiple matches, authentication fails and the client connection is rejected.
If the LDAP server finds a single match, LDAP authentication succeeds (assuming that the password is correct), the LDAP server returns the LDAP entry, and the authentication plugin determines the name of the authenticated user based on that entry:

- If the LDAP entry has a group attribute (by default, the `cn` attribute), the plugin returns its value as the authenticated user name.
- If the LDAP entry has no group attribute, the authentication plugin returns the client user name as the authenticated user name.

The MySQL server compares the client user name with the authenticated user name to determine whether proxying occurs for the client session:

- If the names are the same, no proxying occurs: The MySQL account matching the client user name is used for privilege checking.
- If the names differ, proxying occurs: MySQL looks for an account matching the authenticated user name. That account becomes the proxied user, which is used for privilege checking. The MySQL account that matched the client user name is treated as the external proxy user.

**Installing LDAP Pluggable Authentication**

This section describes how to install the LDAP authentication plugins. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library files must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

The server-side plugin library file base names are `authentication_ldap_sasl` and `authentication_ldap_simple`. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, `.so` for Unix and Unix-like systems, `.dll` for Windows).

To load the plugins at server startup, use `--plugin-load-add` options to name the library files that contain them. With this plugin-loading method, the options must be given each time the server starts. Also, specify values for any plugin-provided system variables you wish to configure.

Each server-side LDAP plugin exposes a set of system variables that enable its operation to be configured. Setting most of these is optional, but you must set the variables that specify the LDAP server host (so the plugin knows where to connect) and base distinguished name for LDAP bind operations (to limit the scope of searches and obtain faster searches). For details about all LDAP system variables, see Section 7.1.13, “Pluggable Authentication System Variables”.

To load the plugins and set the LDAP server host and base distinguished name for LDAP bind operations, put lines such as these in your `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=authentication_ldap_sasl.so
authentication_ldap_sasl_server_host=127.0.0.1
authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_base_dn="dc=example,dc=com"
plugin-load-add=authentication_ldap_simple.so
authentication_ldap_simple_server_host=127.0.0.1
authentication_ldap_simple_bind_base_dn="dc=example,dc=com"
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to register the plugins at runtime, use these statements (adjust the `.so` suffix as necessary):

```
```
LDAP Pluggable Authentication

INSTALL PLUGIN authentication_ldap_sasl
SONAME 'authentication_ldap_sasl.so';
INSTALL PLUGIN authentication_ldap_simple
SONAME 'authentication_ldap_simple.so';

INSTALL PLUGIN loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the mysql.plugins system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup.

After installing the plugins at runtime, their system variables become available and you can add settings for them to your my.cnf file to configure the plugins for subsequent restarts. For example:

```
[mysqld]
authentication_ldap_sasl_server_host=127.0.0.1
authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_base_dn="dc=example,dc=com"
authentication_ldap_simple_server_host=127.0.0.1
authentication_ldap_simple_bind_base_dn="dc=example,dc=com"
```

After modifying my.cnf, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

To verify plugin installation, examine the INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS table or use the SHOW PLUGINS statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE '%ldap%';
```

```
+----------------------------+---------------+
| PLUGIN_NAME                | PLUGIN_STATUS |
+----------------------------+---------------+
| authentication_ldap_sasl   | ACTIVE        |
| authentication_ldap_simple | ACTIVE        |
+----------------------------+---------------+
```

If a plugin fails to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

To associate MySQL accounts with an LDAP plugin, see Using LDAP Pluggable Authentication.

Additional Notes for SELinux

On systems running EL6 or EL that have SELinux enabled, changes to the SELinux policy are required to enable the MySQL LDAP plugins to communicate with the LDAP service:

1. Create a file mysqlldap.te with these contents:

   ```
   module mysqlldap 1.0;
   require {
     type ldap_port_t;
     type mysqld_t;
     class tcp_socket name_connect;
   }
   #============= mysqld_t ==============
   allow mysqld_t ldap_port_t:tcp_socket name_connect;
   
   module mysqlldap 1.0;
   require {
     type ldap_port_t;
     type mysqld_t;
     class tcp_socket name_connect;
   }
   #============= mysqld_t ==============
   allow mysqld_t ldap_port_t:tcp_socket name_connect;
   ```

2. Compile the security policy module into a binary representation:

   ```
   checkmodule -M -m mysqlldap.te -o mysqlldap.mod
   ```

3. Create an SELinux policy module package:

   ```
   semodule_package -m mysqlldap.mod -o mysqlldap.pp
   ```

4. Install the module package:
Uninstalling LDAP Pluggable Authentication

The method used to uninstall the LDAP authentication plugins depends on how you installed them:

- If you installed the plugins at server startup using `--plugin-load-add` options, restart the server without those options.
- If you installed the plugins at runtime using `INSTALL PLUGIN`, they remain installed across server restarts. To uninstall them, use `UNINSTALL PLUGIN`:

```
UNINSTALL PLUGIN authentication_ldap_sasl;
UNINSTALL PLUGIN authentication_ldap_simple;
```

In addition, remove from your `my.cnf` file any startup options that set LDAP plugin-related system variables.

Using LDAP Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to enable MySQL accounts to connect to the MySQL server using LDAP pluggable authentication. It is assumed that the server is running with the appropriate server-side plugins enabled, as described in Installing LDAP Pluggable Authentication, and that the appropriate client-side plugins are available on the client host.

This section does not describe LDAP configuration or administration. It is assumed that you are familiar with those topics.

There are two server-side LDAP plugins, each of which works with a specific client-side plugin:

- The server-side `authentication_ldap_simple` plugin performs simple LDAP authentication. For connections by accounts that use this plugin, client programs use the client-side `mysql_clear_password` plugin, which sends the password to the server in clear text. No password hashing or encryption is used, so a secure connection between the MySQL client and server is recommended to prevent password exposure.

- The server-side `authentication_ldap_sasl` plugin performs SASL-based LDAP authentication. For connections by accounts that use this plugin, client programs use the client-side `authentication_ldap_sasl_client` plugin. The client-side and server-side SASL LDAP plugins use SASL messages for secure transmission of credentials within the LDAP protocol, to avoid sending the clear-text password between the MySQL client and server.

Overall requirements for LDAP authentication of MySQL users:

- There must be an LDAP directory entry for each user to be authenticated.
- There must be a MySQL user account that specifies a server-side LDAP authentication plugin and optionally names the associated LDAP user distinguished name (DN). (To associate an LDAP user DN with a MySQL account, include a `BY` clause in the `CREATE USER` statement that creates the account.) If an account names no LDAP string, LDAP authentication uses the user name specified by the client to find the LDAP entry.

- Client programs connect using the connection method appropriate for the server-side authentication plugin the MySQL account uses. For LDAP authentication, connections require
the MySQL user name and LDAP password. In addition, for accounts that use the server-side authentication_ldap_simple plugin, invoke client programs with the --enable-cleartext-plugin option to enable the client-side mysql_clear_password plugin.

The instructions here assume the following scenario:

- MySQL users betsy and boris authenticate to the LDAP entries for betsy_ldap and boris_ldap, respectively. (It is not necessary that the MySQL and LDAP user names differ, but using different names here helps clarify whether an operation context is MySQL or LDAP.)

- LDAP entries use the uid attribute to specify user names. (This may vary depending on LDAP server. Some LDAP servers use the cn attribute for user names rather than uid.)

- These LDAP entries are available in the directory managed by the LDAP server, to provide distinguished name values that uniquely identify each user:

  uid=betsy_ldap,pwd=pwd1,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
  uid=boris_ldap,pwd=pwd2,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com

- CREATE USER statements that create MySQL accounts name an LDAP user in the BY clause, to indicate which LDAP entry the MySQL account authenticates against.

The instructions for setting up an account that uses LDAP authentication depend on which server-side LDAP plugin is used.

- Simple LDAP Authentication
- SASL-Based LDAP Authentication
- LDAP Authentication User DN Suffixes
- LDAP Authentication with Proxying
- LDAP Authentication Group Preference and Mapping Specification

**Simple LDAP Authentication**

To configure a MySQL account for simple LDAP authentication, the CREATE USER statement should specify the authentication_ldap_simple plugin, and optionally name the LDAP user distinguished name (DN):

```
CREATE USER user
    IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_simple
    [BY 'LDAP user DN'];
```

Suppose that a MySQL user betsy has this entry in the LDAP directory:

```
uid=betsy_ldap,pwd=pwd1,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
```

Then the statement to create the MySQL account for betsy looks like this:

```
CREATE USER 'betsy'@'localhost'
    IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_simple
    BY 'uid=betsy_ldap,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com';
```

The authentication string specified in the BY clause does not include the LDAP password. That must be provided by the client user at connect time.

Clients connect to the MySQL server by providing the MySQL user name and LDAP password, and by enabling the client-side mysql_clear_password plugin:
The client-side `mysql_clear_password` plugin with which the server-side `authentication_ldap_simple` plugin communicates sends the password to the MySQL server in clear text so it can be passed as is to the LDAP server. This is necessary to use the server-side LDAP library without SASL, but may be a security problem in some configurations. These measures minimize the risk:

- To make inadvertent use of the `mysql_clear_password` plugin less likely, MySQL clients must explicitly enable it; for example, with the `--enable-cleartext-plugin` option.
- To avoid password exposure with the `mysql_clear_password` plugin enabled, MySQL clients should connect to the MySQL server using a secure connection.

For additional information, see Section 7.1.6, "Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication", and Section 6.1, "Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections".

The authentication process occurs as follows:

1. The client-side plugin sends `betsy` and `pwd1` as the client user name and LDAP password to the MySQL server.

2. The connection attempt matches the `betsy@localhost` account. The server-side LDAP plugin finds that this account has an authentication string of `'uid=betsy_ldap,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com'` to name the LDAP user DN. The plugin sends this string and the LDAP password to the LDAP server.

3. The LDAP server finds the LDAP entry for `betsy_ldap` and the password matches, so LDAP authentication succeeds.

4. The LDAP entry has no group attribute, so the server-side plugin returns the client user name (`betsy`) as the authenticated user. This is the same user name supplied by the client, so no proxying occurs and the client session uses the `betsy@localhost` account for privilege checking.

Had the matching LDAP entry contained a group attribute, that attribute value would have been the authenticated user name and, if the value differed from `betsy`, proxying would have occurred. For examples that use the group attribute, see LDAP Authentication with Proxying.

Had the `CREATE USER` statement contained no `BY` clause to specify the `betsy_ldap` LDAP distinguished name, authentication attempts would use the user name provided by the client (in this case, `betsy`). In the absence of an LDAP entry for `betsy`, authentication would fail.

**SASL-Based LDAP Authentication**

To configure a MySQL account for SASL LDAP authentication, the `CREATE USER` statement should specify the `authentication_ldap_sasl` plugin, and optionally name the LDAP user distinguished name (DN):

```sql
CREATE USER user
IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_sasl
[BY 'LDAP user DN'];
```

Suppose that a MySQL user `boris` has this entry in the LDAP directory:
uid=boris_ldap,pwd=pwd2,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com

Then the statement to create the MySQL account for boris looks like this:

```
CREATE USER 'boris'@'localhost'
    IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_sasl
    BY 'uid=boris_ldap,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com';
```

The authentication string specified in the \texttt{BY} clause does not include the LDAP password. That must be provided by the client user at connect time.

Clients connect to the MySQL server by providing the MySQL user name and LDAP password:

```
shell> mysql --user=boris --password
Enter password: pwd2 (boris_ldap LDAP password)
```

For the server-side \texttt{authentication_ldap_sasl} plugin, clients use the client-side \texttt{authentication_ldap_sasl_client} plugin. If a client program does not find the client-side plugin, specify a \texttt{--plugin-dir} option that names the directory where the plugin library file is installed.

The authentication process for boris is similar to that previously described for betsy with simple LDAP authentication, except that The client-side and server-side SASL LDAP plugins use SASL messages for secure transmission of credentials within the LDAP protocol, to avoid sending the clear-text password between the MySQL client and server.

### LDAP Authentication User DN Suffixes

As of MySQL 5.7.21, LDAP authentication plugins permit the authentication string that provides user DN information to begin with a + prefix character:

- In the absence of a + character, the authentication string value is treated as is without modification.
- If the authentication string begins with +, the plugin constructs the full user DN value from the user name sent by the client, together with the DN specified in the authentication string (with the + removed). In the constructed DN, the client user name becomes the value of the attribute that specifies LDAP user names. This is \texttt{uid} by default; to change the attribute, modify the \texttt{authentication_ldap_simple_user_search_attr} or \texttt{authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr} system variable appropriately. The authentication string is stored as given in the \texttt{mysql.user} system table, with the full user DN constructed on the fly before authentication.

This account authentication string does not have + at the beginning, so it is taken as the full user DN:

```
CREATE USER 'baldwin'
    IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_simple
    BY 'uid=admin,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com';
```

The client connects with the user name specified in the account (baldwin). In this case, that name is not used because the authentication string has no prefix and thus fully specifies the user DN.

This account authentication string does have + at the beginning, so it is taken as just part of the user DN:

```
CREATE USER 'accounting'
    IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_simple
    BY '+ou=People,dc=example,dc=com';
```
The client connects with the user name specified in the account (accounting), which in this case is used as the uid attribute together with the authentication string to construct the user DN:

\[ \text{uid=accounting,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com} \]

The accounts in the preceding examples have a nonempty user name, so the client always connects using the same name as specified in the account definition. If an account has an empty user name, such as the generic anonymous "@%" proxy account described in LDAP Authentication with Proxying, clients might connect with various user names. But the principle is the same: If the authentication string begins with +, the plugin uses the user name sent by the client together with the authentication string to construct the user DN.

**LDAP Authentication with Proxying**

LDAP authentication plugins support proxying, enabling a user to connect to the MySQL server as one user but assume the privileges of a different user. This section describes basic LDAP plugin proxy support. The LDAP plugins also support specification of group preference and proxy user mapping; see LDAP Authentication Group Preference and Mapping Specification.

The authentication scheme described here uses proxying based on mapping LDAP group attribute values to connecting MySQL users who authenticate using LDAP onto other MySQL accounts that define different sets of privileges. Users do not connect directly through the accounts that define the privileges. Instead, they connect through a default proxy user authenticated with LDAP, such that all the external logins are mapped to the MySQL accounts that hold the privileges. Any user who connects is mapped to one of those MySQL accounts, the privileges for which determine the database operations permitted to the external user.

The instructions here assume the following scenario:

- LDAP entries use the uid and cn attributes to specify user name and group values, respectively. To use different user and group attribute names, set the appropriate system variables to configure the plugin:
  - For authentication_ldap_simple: Set `authentication_ldap_simple_user_search_attr` and `authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_attr`.
  - For authentication_ldap_sasl: Set `authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr` and `authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_attr`.

- These LDAP entries are available in the directory managed by the LDAP server, to provide distinguished name values that uniquely identify each user:

```
uid=basha,pwd=pwd3,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com,cn=accounting
uid=basil,pwd=pwd4,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com,cn=front_office
```

The group attribute values will become the authenticated user names, so they name the accounting and front_office proxied accounts.

- The examples assume use of SASL LDAP authentication. Make the appropriate adjustments for simple LDAP authentication.

Create the default proxy MySQL account:

```
CREATE USER ''@'%' IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_sasl;
```

The proxy account definition has no BY 'auth_string' clause to name an LDAP user DN. Thus:

- When clients connect, the client user name is used as the LDAP user name to search for.
• The matching LDAP entry is expected to include a group attribute naming the proxied MySQL account that defines the privileges the client should have.

**Note**

If your MySQL installation has anonymous users, they might conflict with the default proxy user. For more information about this problem, and ways of dealing with it, see Default Proxy User and Anonymous User Conflicts.

Create the proxied accounts and grant their privileges:

```sql
CREATE USER 'accounting'@'localhost' ACCOUNT LOCK;
CREATE USER 'front_office'@'localhost' ACCOUNT LOCK;
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES
  ON accountingdb.*
  TO 'accounting'@'localhost';
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES
  ON frontdb.*
  TO 'front_office'@'localhost';
```

Grant the PROXY privilege to the proxy account for the proxied accounts:

```sql
GRANT PROXY
  ON 'accounting'@'localhost'
  TO ''@'%';
GRANT PROXY
  ON 'front_office'@'localhost'
  TO ''@'%';
```

Connect to the MySQL server as *basha* using the *mysql* command-line client:

```
shell> mysql --user=basha --password
Enter password: pwd3 (basha LDAP password)
```

Authentication occurs as follows:

1. The server authenticates the connection using the ''@'%' account, for client user *basha*.
2. The matching LDAP entry is:

   ```
   uid=basha,pwd=pwd3,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com,cn=accounting
   ```

3. The matching LDAP entry has group attribute *cn=accounting*, so *accounting* becomes the authenticated user.
4. The authenticated user differs from the client user name *basha*, with the result that *basha* is treated as a proxy for *accounting*, and *basha* assumes the privileges of the *accounting* account. The following query should return output as shown:

   ```
   mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER(), @@proxy_user;
   +-----------------+----------------------+--------------+
   | USER()          | CURRENT_USER()       | @@proxy_user |
   +-----------------+----------------------+--------------+
   | basha@localhost | accounting@localhost | ''@'%'       |
   +-----------------+----------------------+--------------+
   ```

   This demonstrates that *basha* uses the privileges granted to the *accounting* MySQL account, and that proxying occurred through the default proxy user account.

Now connect as *basil* instead:
The authentication process for basil is similar to that previously described for basha:

1. The server authenticates the connection using the '@%' account, for client user basil.
2. The matching LDAP entry is:

   uid=basil,pwd=pwd4,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com,cn=front_office

3. The matching LDAP entry has group attribute cn=front_office, so front_office becomes the authenticated user.
4. The authenticated user differs from the client user name basil, with the result that basil is treated as a proxy for front_office, and basil assumes the privileges of the front_office account. The following query should return output as shown:

```
SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER(), @@proxy_user;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USER()</th>
<th>CURRENT_USER()</th>
<th>@@proxy_user</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>basil@localhost</td>
<td>front_office@localhost</td>
<td>''@%'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This demonstrates that basil uses the privileges granted to the front_office MySQL account, and that proxying occurred through the default proxy user account.

**LDAP Authentication Group Preference and Mapping Specification**

As described in LDAP Authentication with Proxying, basic LDAP authentication proxying works by the principle that the plugin uses the first group name returned by the LDAP server as the MySQL proxy user account name. This simple capability does not enable specifying any preference about which group name to use if the LDAP server returns multiple names, or any name other than the group name as the proxy user name.

As of MySQL 5.7.25, for MySQL accounts that use LDAP authentication, the authentication string can specify:

- A list of groups in preference order, such that the plugin uses the first group name in the list that matches a group returned by the LDAP server.
- A mapping from group names to proxy user names, such that a group name when matched can provide a specified name to use as the proxy user. This provides an alternative to using the group name as the proxy user.

Consider the following MySQL proxy account definition:

```
CREATE USER '@%'
IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_sasl
BY '+ou=People,dc=example,dc=com#grp1=usera,grp2,grp3=userc';
```

The authentication string has a user DN suffix ou=People,dc=example,dc=com prefixed by +, so, as described in LDAP Authentication User DN Suffixes, the full user DN is constructed from the user DN suffix as specified, plus the client user name as the uid attribute.

The remaining part of the authentication string begins with #, which signifies the beginning of group preference and mapping information. This part of the authentication string lists group names in the order grp1, grp2, grp3. The LDAP plugin compares that list with the set of group names returned by the LDAP server, looking in list order for a match against the returned names. The plugin uses the first match, or if there is no match, authentication fails.
Suppose that the LDAP server returns groups `grp3`, `grp2`, and `grp7`. The LDAP plugin uses `grp2` because it is the first group in the authentication string that matches, even though it is not the first group returned by the LDAP server. If the LDAP server returns `grp4`, `grp2`, and `grp1`, the plugin uses `grp1` even though `grp2` also matches. `grp1` has a precedence higher than `grp2` because it is listed earlier in the authentication string.

Assuming that the plugin finds a group name match, it performs mapping from that group name to the MySQL proxy user name, if there is one. For the example proxy account, mapping occurs as follows:

- If the matching group name is `grp1` or `grp3`, those are associated in the authentication string with user names `usera` and `userc`, respectively. The plugin uses the corresponding associated user name as the proxy user name.
- If the matching group name is `grp2`, there is no associated user name in the authentication string. The plugin uses `grp2` as the proxy user name.

If the LDAP server returns a group in DN format, the LDAP plugin parses the group DN to extract the group name from it.

To specify LDAP group preference and mapping information, these principles apply:

- Begin the group preference and mapping part of the authentication string with a `#` prefix character.
- The group preference and mapping specification is a list of one or more items, separated by commas. Each item has the form `group_name` or `group_name=user_name`. Items should be listed in group name preference order. For a group name selected by the plugin as a match from set of group names returned by the LDAP server, the two syntaxes differ in effect as follows:
  - For an item specified as `group_name` (with no user name), the group name is used as the MySQL proxy user name.
  - For an item specified as `group_name=user_name` (with a user name), the group name maps to the user name, which is used as the MySQL proxy user name.
- To quote a group or user name that contains special characters such as space, surround it by double quote (`"`) characters. For example, if an item has group and user names of `my group name` and `my user name`, it must be written in a group mapping using quotes:

```
"my group name"="my user name"
```

If an item has group and user names of `my_group_name` and `my_user_name`, it may but need not be written using quotes. Any of the following are valid:

```
my_group_name=my_user_name
my_group_name="my_user_name"
"my_group_name"=my_user_name
"my_group_name"="my_user_name"
```

- To escape a character, precede it by a backslash (`\`). This is useful particularly to include a literal double quote or backslash, which are otherwise not included literally.
- A user DN need not be present in the authentication string, but if present, it must precede the group preference and mapping part. A user DN can be given as a full user DN, or as a user DN suffix with a `+` prefix.

### 7.1.10 No-Login Pluggable Authentication

The `mysql_no_login` server-side authentication plugin prevents all client connections to any account that uses it. Use cases for such a plugin include proxied accounts that should never permit direct login but are accessed only through proxy accounts and accounts that must be able to execute stored programs and views with elevated privileges without exposing those privileges to ordinary users.

148
The following table shows the plugin and library file names. The file name suffix might differ on your system. The file must be located in the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable.

Table 7.9 Plugin and Library Names for No-Login Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>mysql_no_login</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>mysql_no_login.so</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to no-login pluggable authentication:

- Installing No-Login Pluggable Authentication
- Uninstalling No-Login Pluggable Authentication
- Using No-Login Pluggable Authentication

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”. For proxy user information, see Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”.

### Installing No-Login Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to install the no-login authentication plugin. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

The plugin library file base name is `mysql_no_login`. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, `.so` for Unix and Unix-like systems, `.dll` for Windows).

To load the plugin at server startup, use the `--plugin-load-add` option to name the library file that contains it. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=mysql_no_login.so
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to register the plugin at runtime, use this statement (adjust the `.so` suffix as necessary):

```
INSTALL PLUGIN mysql_no_login SONAME 'mysql_no_login.so';
```

`INSTALL PLUGIN` loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the `mysql.plugins` system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup.

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS 
FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS 
WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE '%login%';
```
If the plugin fails to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

To associate MySQL accounts with the no-login plugin, see Using No-Login Pluggable Authentication.

Uninstalling No-Login Pluggable Authentication

The method used to uninstall the no-login authentication plugin depends on how you installed it:

• If you installed the plugin at server startup using a --plugin-load-add option, restart the server without the option.

• If you installed the plugin at runtime using INSTALL PLUGIN, it remains installed across server restarts. To uninstall it, use UNINSTALL PLUGIN:

```
UNINSTALL PLUGIN mysql_no_login;
```

Using No-Login Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to use the no-login authentication plugin to prevent connections from MySQL client programs to the server. It is assumed that the server is running with the server-side plugin enabled, as described in Installing No-Login Pluggable Authentication.

To refer to the no-login authentication plugin in the IDENTIFIED WITH clause of a CREATE USER statement, use the name mysql_no_login.

An account that authenticates using mysql_no_login may be used as the DEFINER for stored program and view objects. If such an object definition also includes SQL SECURITY DEFINER, it executes with that account's privileges. DBAs can use this behavior to provide access to confidential or sensitive data that is exposed only through well-controlled interfaces.

The following example provides a simple illustration of these principles. It defines an account that does not permit client connections, and associates with it a view that exposes only certain columns of the mysql.user system table:

```
CREATE DATABASE nologindb;
CREATE USER 'nologin'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
GRANT ALL ON nologindb.*
  TO 'nologin'@'localhost';
GRANT SELECT ON mysql.user
  TO 'nologin'@'localhost';
CREATE DEFINER = 'nologin'@'localhost'
SQL SECURITY DEFINER
VIEW nologindb.myview
  AS SELECT User, Host FROM mysql.user;
```

To provide protected access to the view to an ordinary user, do this:

```
GRANT SELECT ON nologindb.myview
  TO 'ordinaryuser'@'localhost';
```

Now the ordinary user can use the view to access the limited information it presents:

```
SELECT * FROM nologindb.myview;
```
Attempts by the user to access columns other than those exposed by the view result in an error, as do all attempts to select from the view by users not granted access to it.

Note

Because the `nologin` account cannot be used directly, the operations required to set up objects that it uses must be performed by `root` or similar account with the privileges required to create the objects and set `DEFINER` values.

An account that authenticates using `mysql_no_login` may be used as a proxied base user for proxy accounts:

```
-- create proxied account
CREATE USER 'proxy_base'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
-- grant privileges to proxied account
GRANT ... TO 'proxy_base'@'localhost';
-- permit real_user to be proxy for proxied account
GRANT PROXY ON 'proxy_base'@'localhost'
  TO 'real_user'@'localhost';
```

This enables clients to access MySQL through the proxy account (`real_user`) but not to bypass the proxy mechanism by connecting directly as the proxied user (`proxy_base`).

### 7.1.11 Socket Peer-Credential Pluggable Authentication

The server-side `auth_socket` authentication plugin authenticates clients that connect from the local host through the Unix socket file. The plugin uses the `SO_PEERCRED` socket option to obtain information about the user running the client program. Thus, the plugin can be used only on systems that support the `SO_PEERCRED` option, such as Linux.

The following code for this plugin can be examined as a relatively simple example demonstrating how to write a loadable authentication plugin.

The following table shows the plugin and library file names. The file must be located in the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td><code>auth_socket</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>None, see discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td><code>auth_socket.so</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to socket pluggable authentication:

- Installing Socket Pluggable Authentication
- Uninstalling Socket Pluggable Authentication
- Using Socket Pluggable Authentication

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”.

### Installing Socket Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to install the socket authentication plugin. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.
To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

To load the plugin at server startup, use the `--plugin-load-add` option to name the library file that contains it. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file:

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=auth_socket.so
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to register the plugin at runtime, use this statement:

```
INSTALL PLUGIN auth_socket SONAME 'auth_socket.so';
```

`INSTALL PLUGIN` loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the `mysql.plugins` system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup.

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS 
        FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS 
        WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE '%socket%';
```

```
+-------------+---------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUGIN_NAME</th>
<th>PLUGIN_STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auth_socket</td>
<td>ACTIVE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+-------------+---------------+
```

If the plugin fails to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

To associate MySQL accounts with the socket plugin, see Using Socket Pluggable Authentication.

### Uninstalling Socket Pluggable Authentication

The method used to uninstall the socket authentication plugin depends on how you installed it:

- If you installed the plugin at server startup using a `--plugin-load-add` option, restart the server without the option.
- If you installed the plugin at runtime using `INSTALL PLUGIN`, it remains installed across server restarts. To uninstall it, use `UNINSTALL PLUGIN`:

```
UNINSTALL PLUGIN auth_socket;
```

### Using Socket Pluggable Authentication

The socket plugin checks whether the socket user name (the operating system user name) matches the MySQL user name specified by the client program to the server. If the names do not match, the plugin checks whether the socket user name matches the name specified in the `authentication_string` column of the `mysql.user` system table row. If a match is found, the plugin permits the connection. The `authentication_string` value can be specified using an `IDENTIFIED ...AS` clause with `CREATE USER` or `ALTER USER`.

Suppose that a MySQL account is created for a system user named `valerie` who is to be authenticated by the `auth_socket` plugin for connections from the local host through the socket file:
If a user on the local host with a login name of stefanie invokes mysql with the option --user=valerie to connect through the socket file, the server uses auth_socket to authenticate the client. The plugin determines that the --user option value (valerie) differs from the client user's name (stephanie) and refuses the connection. If a user named valerie tries the same thing, the plugin finds that the user name and the MySQL user name are both valerie and permits the connection. However, the plugin refuses the connection even for valerie if the connection is made using a different protocol, such as TCP/IP.

To permit both the valerie and stephanie system users to access MySQL through socket file connections that use the account, this can be done two ways:

- Name both users at account-creation time, one following CREATE USER, and the other in the authentication string:

```
CREATE USER 'valerie'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED WITH auth_socket AS 'stephanie';
```

- If you have already used CREATE USER to create the account for a single user, use ALTER USER to add the second user:

```
CREATE USER 'valerie'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED WITH auth_socket;
ALTER USER 'valerie'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED WITH auth_socket AS 'stephanie';
```

To access the account, both valerie and stephanie specify --user=valerie at connect time.

### 7.1.12 Test Pluggable Authentication

MySQL includes a test plugin that checks account credentials and logs success or failure to the server error log. This is a loadable plugin (not built in) and must be installed prior to use.

The test plugin source code is separate from the server source, unlike the built-in native plugin, so it can be examined as a relatively simple example demonstrating how to write a loadable authentication plugin.

**Note**

This plugin is intended for testing and development purposes, and is not for use in production environments or on servers that are exposed to public networks.

The following table shows the plugin and library file names. The file name suffix might differ on your system. The file must be located in the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>test_plugin_server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>auth_test_plugin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>auth_test_plugin.so</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to test pluggable authentication:

- Installing Test Pluggable Authentication
- Uninstalling Test Pluggable Authentication
• **Using Test Pluggable Authentication**

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 5.9, “Pluggable Authentication”.

**Installing Test Pluggable Authentication**

This section describes how to install the test authentication plugin. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

To load the plugin at server startup, use the `--plugin-load-add` option to name the library file that contains it. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```ini
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=auth_test_plugin.so
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to register the plugin at runtime, use this statement (adjust the `.so` suffix as necessary):

```sql
INSTALL PLUGIN test_plugin_server SONAME 'auth_test_plugin.so';
```

`INSTALL PLUGIN` loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the `mysql.plugins` system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup.

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
        FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
        WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE '%test_plugin%';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUGIN_NAME</th>
<th>PLUGIN_STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>test_plugin_server</td>
<td>ACTIVE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the plugin fails to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

To associate MySQL accounts with the test plugin, see Using Test Pluggable Authentication.

**Uninstalling Test Pluggable Authentication**

The method used to uninstall the test authentication plugin depends on how you installed it:

- If you installed the plugin at server startup using a `--plugin-load-add` option, restart the server without the option.

- If you installed the plugin at runtime using `INSTALL PLUGIN`, it remains installed across server restarts. To uninstall it, use `UNINSTALL PLUGIN`:

```sql
UNINSTALL PLUGIN test_plugin_server;
```
Using Test Pluggable Authentication

To use the test authentication plugin, create an account and name that plugin in the `IDENTIFIED WITH` clause:

```sql
CREATE USER 'testuser'@'localhost'
IDENTIFIED WITH test_plugin_server
BY 'testpassword';
```

Then provide the `--user` and `--password` options for that account when you connect to the server. For example:

```shell
shell> mysql --user=testuser --password
Enter password: testpassword
```

The plugin fetches the password as received from the client and compares it with the value stored in the `authentication_string` column of the account row in the `mysql.user` system table. If the two values match, the plugin returns the `authentication_string` value as the new effective user ID.

You can look in the server error log for a message indicating whether authentication succeeded (notice that the password is reported as the "user"):

```
[Note] Plugin test_plugin_server reported:
'successfully authenticated user testpassword'
```

### 7.1.13 Pluggable Authentication System Variables

These variables are unavailable unless the appropriate server-side plugin is installed:

- `authentication_ldap_sasl` for system variables with names of the form `authentication_ldap_sasl_xxx`
- `authentication_ldap_simple` for system variables with names of the form `authentication_ldap_simple_xxx`

#### Table 7.12 Authentication Plugin System Variable Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Cmd-Line</th>
<th>Option File</th>
<th>System Var</th>
<th>Status Var</th>
<th>Var Scope</th>
<th>Dynamic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_auth_method_name</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_base_dn</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_dn</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_pwd</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_ca_path</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_attr</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_init_pool_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_log_status</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_server_host</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_server_port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_secure</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_auth_method_name</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_bind_base</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Pluggable Authentication System Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Cmd-Line</th>
<th>Option File</th>
<th>System Var</th>
<th>Status Var</th>
<th>Var Scope</th>
<th>Dynamic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_dn</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_pwd</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_ca_path</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_attr</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_init_pool_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_log_status</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_server_host</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_server_port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_tls</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_user_search_attr</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **authentication_ldap_sasl_auth_method_name**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-auth-method-name=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_auth_method_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>SCRAM-SHA-1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the authentication method name. Communication between the authentication plugin and the LDAP server occurs according to this authentication method. These authentication method values are permitted:

- **SCRAM-SHA-1**: Authentication uses a SASL challenge-response mechanism to ensure password security.

  The client-side `authentication_ldap_sasl_client` plugin communicates with the SASL server, using the password to create a challenge and obtain a SASL request buffer, then passes this buffer to the server-side `authentication_ldap_sasl` plugin. The client-side and server-side SASL LDAP plugins use SASL messages for secure transmission of credentials within the LDAP protocol, to avoid sending the clear-text password between the MySQL client and server.

- **authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_base_dn**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-bind-base-dn=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_base_dn</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For SASL LDAP authentication, the base distinguished name (DN). This variable can be used to limit the scope of searches by anchoring them at a certain location (the “base”) within the search tree.

Suppose that members of one set of LDAP user entries each have this form:

```
uid=user_name,pwd=user_password,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
```

And that members of another set of LDAP user entries each have this form:

```
uid=user_name,pwd=user_password,ou=Admin,dc=example,dc=com
```

Then searches work like this for different base DN values:

- If the base DN is `ou=People,dc=example,dc=com`: Searches find user entries only in the first set.
- If the base DN is `ou=Admin,dc=example,dc=com`: Searches find user entries only in the second set.
- If the base DN is `ou=dc=example,dc=com`: Searches find user entries in the first or second set.

In general, more specific base DN values result in faster searches because they limit the search scope more.

- `authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_dn`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Command-Line Format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Command-Line Format</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-bind-root-dn=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduced</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_dn</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Value</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the root distinguished name (DN). This variable is used in conjunction with `authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_pwd` as the credentials for authenticating to the LDAP server for the purpose of performing searches. Authentication uses either one or two LDAP bind operations, depending on whether the the MySQL account names an LDAP user DN:

- If the account does not name a user DN: `authentication_ldap_sasl` performs an initial LDAP binding using `authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_dn` and `authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_pwd`. (These are both empty by default, so if they are not set, the LDAP server must permit anonymous connections.) The resulting bind LDAP handle is used to search for the user DN, based on the client user name. `authentication_ldap_sasl` performs a second bind using the user DN and client-supplied password.

- If the account does name a user DN: The first bind operation is unnecessary in this case. `authentication_ldap_sasl` performs a single bind using the user DN and client-supplied password. This is faster than if the MySQL account does not specify an LDAP user DN.
### pluggable authentication system variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-bind-root-pwd=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_pwd</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the password for the root distinguished name. This variable is used in conjunction with `authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_dn`. See the description of that variable.

- `authentication_ldap_sasl_ca_path`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-ca-path=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_ca_path</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the absolute path of the certificate authority file. Specify this file if it is desired that the authentication plugin perform verification of the LDAP server certificate.

**Note**

In addition to setting the `authentication_ldap_sasl_ca_path` variable to the file name, you must add the appropriate certificate authority certificates to the file and enable the `authentication_ldap_sasl_tls` system variable.

- `authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_attr`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-group-search-attr=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_attr</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>cn</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the name of the attribute that specifies group names in LDAP directory entries. If `authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_attr` has its default value of
cn, searches return the cn value as the group name. For example, if an LDAP entry with a uid value of user1 has a cn attribute of mygroup, searches for user1 return mygroup as the group name.

This variable should be the empty string if you want no group or proxy authentication.

As of MySQL 5.7.21, if the group search attribute is isMemberOf, LDAP authentication directly retrieves the user attribute isMemberOf value and assigns it as group information. If the group search attribute is not isMemberOf, LDAP authentication searches for all groups where the user is a member. (The latter is the default behavior.) This behavior is based on how LDAP group information can be stored two ways: 1) A group entry can have an attribute named memberUid or member with a value that is a user name; 2) A user entry can have an attribute named isMemberOf with values that are group names.

- **authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_filter**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--authentication-ldap-sasl-group-search-filter=value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Default Value                    | ([&(objectClass=posixGroup)(memberUid={UA}))
{(memberUid={UA}))
{(objectClass=group)(member={UD}))}                                 |

For SASL LDAP authentication, the custom group search filter.

As of MySQL 5.7.22, the search filter value can contain {UA} and {UD} notation to represent the user name and the full user DN. For example, {UA} is replaced with a user name such as "admin", whereas {UD} is replaced with a use full DN such as "uid=admin,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com". The following value is the default, which supports both OpenLDAP and Active Directory:

{([&(objectClass=posixGroup)(memberUid={UA}))
{(objectClass=posixGroup)(member={UD}))
{(objectClass=group)(member={UD}))} |

Previously, if the group search attribute was isMemberOf or memberOf, it was treated as a user attribute that has group information. However, in some cases for the user scenario, memberOf was a simple user attribute that held no group information. For additional flexibility, an optional (GA) prefix now can be used with the group search attribute. (Previously, it was assumed that if the group search attribute is isMemberOf, it will be treated differently. Now any group attribute with a (GA) prefix is treated as a user attribute having group names.) For example, with a value of {GA}MemberOf, if the group value is the DN, the first attribute value from the group DN is returned as the group name.

In MySQL 5.7.21, the search filter used %s notation, expanding it to the user name for OpenLDAP (&(objectClass=posixGroup)(memberUid=%s)) and to the full user DN for Active Directory (&(objectClass=group)(member=%s)).

- **authentication_ldap_sasl_init_pool_size**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--authentication-ldap-sasl-init-pool-size=value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### authentication_ldap_sasl_init_pool_size

For SASL LDAP authentication, the initial size of the pool of connections to the LDAP server. Choose the value for this variable based on the average number of concurrent authentication requests to the LDAP server.

The plugin uses `authentication_ldap_sasl_init_pool_size` and `authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size` together for connection-pool management:

- When the authentication plugin initializes, it creates `authentication_ldap_sasl_init_pool_size` connections, unless `authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size=0` to disable pooling.

- If the plugin receives an authentication request when there are no free connections in the current connection pool, the plugin can create a new connection, up to the maximum connection pool size given by `authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size`.

- If the plugin receives a request when the pool size is already at its maximum and there are no free connections, authentication fails.

- When the plugin unloads, it closes all pooled connections.

Changes to plugin system variable settings may have no effect on connections already in the pool. For example, modifying the LDAP server host, port, or TLS settings does not affect existing connections. However, if the original variable values were invalid and the connection pool could not be initialized, the plugin attempts to reinitialize the pool for the next LDAP request. In this case, the new system variable values are used for the reinitialization attempt.

If `authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size=0` to disable pooling, each LDAP connection opened by the plugin uses the values the system variables have at that time.

### authentication_ldap_sasl_log_status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-log-status=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_log_status</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For SASL LDAP authentication, the logging level. The following table shows the permitted level values and their meanings.

**Table 7.13 Log Levels for authentication_ldap_sasl_log_status**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option Value</th>
<th>Types of Messages Logged</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>No messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Error messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Error and warning messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Error, warning, and information messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>All messages</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On the client side, messages can be logged to the standard output by setting the `AUTHENTICATION_LDAP_CLIENT_LOG` environment variable. The permitted and default values are the same as for `authentication_ldap_sasl_log_status`.

The `AUTHENTICATION_LDAP_CLIENT_LOG` environment variable applies only to SASL LDAP authentication. It has no effect for simple LDAP authentication because the client plugin in that case is `mysql_clear_password`, which knows nothing about LDAP operations.

**authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-max-pool-size=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>32767</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the maximum size of the pool of connections to the LDAP server. To disable connection pooling, set this variable to 0.

This variable is used in conjunction with `authentication_ldap_sasl_init_pool_size`. See the description of that variable.

**authentication_ldap_sasl_server_host**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-server-host=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_server_host</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For SASL LDAP authentication, the LDAP server host. The permitted values for this variable depend on the authentication method:

- For `authentication_ldap_sasl_auth_method_name=SCRAM-SHA-1`: The LDAP server host can be a host name or IP address.

- `authentication_ldap_sasl_server_port`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-server-port=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_server_port</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>32376</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the LDAP server TCP/IP port number.

As of MySQL 5.7.25, if the LDAP port number is configured as 636 or 3269, the plugin uses LDAPS (LDAP over SSL) instead of LDAP. (LDAPS differs from `startTLS`.)

- `authentication_ldap_sasl_tls`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-tls=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_tls</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, whether connections by the plugin to the LDAP server are secure. If this variable is enabled, the plugin uses TLS to connect securely to the LDAP server. If you enable this variable, you may also wish to set the `authentication_ldap_sasl_ca_path` variable.

MySQL LDAP plugins support the StartTLS method, which initializes TLS on top of a plain LDAP connection. The `ldaps` method is deprecated and MySQL does not support it.

- `authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-user-search-attr=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Pluggable Authentication System Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>uid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the name of the attribute that specifies user names in LDAP directory entries. If a user distinguished name is not provided, the authentication plugin searches for the name using this attribute. For example, if the `authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr` value is `uid`, a search for the user name `user1` finds entries with a `uid` value of `user1`.

- **authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--authentication-ldap-sasl-user-search-attr=value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>SIMPLE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the name of the attribute that specifies user names in LDAP directory entries. If a user distinguished name is not provided, the authentication plugin searches for the name using this attribute. For example, if the `authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr` value is `uid`, a search for the user name `user1` finds entries with a `uid` value of `user1`.

- **authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--authentication-ldap-sasl-user-search-attr=value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>SIMPLE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the authentication method name. Communication between the authentication plugin and the LDAP server occurs according to this authentication method. These authentication method values are permitted:

- **SIMPLE**: This authentication method uses either one or two LDAP bind operations, depending on whether the the MySQL account names an LDAP user distinguished name. See the description of `authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_dn`.

- **AD-FOREST**: `authentication_ldap_simple` searches all the domains in the Active Directory forest, performing an LDAP bind to each Active Directory domain until the user is found in some domain.

#### Note

For simple LDAP authentication, it is recommended to also set TLS parameters to require that communication with the LDAP server take place over secure connections.

- **authentication_ldap_simple_bind_base_dn**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--authentication-ldap-simple-bind-base-dn=value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_bind_base_dn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pluggable Authentication System Variables

For simple LDAP authentication, the base distinguished name (DN). This variable can be used to limit the scope of searches by anchoring them at a certain location (the “base”) within the search tree.

Suppose that members of one set of LDAP user entries each have this form:

| uid=user_name,pwd=user_password,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com |

And that members of another set of LDAP user entries each have this form:

| uid=user_name,pwd=user_password,ou=Admin,dc=example,dc=com |

Then searches work like this for different base DN values:

- If the base DN is `ou=People,dc=example,dc=com`: Searches find user entries only in the first set.
- If the base DN is `ou=Admin,dc=example,dc=com`: Searches find user entries only in the second set.
- If the base DN is `ou=dc=example,dc=com`: Searches find user entries in the first or second set.

In general, more specific base DN values result in faster searches because they limit the search scope more.

- `authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_dn`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-bind-root-dn=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_dn</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the root distinguished name (DN). This variable is used in conjunction with `authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_pwd` as the credentials for authenticating to the LDAP server for the purpose of performing searches. Authentication uses either one or two LDAP bind operations, depending on whether the the MySQL account names an LDAP user DN:

- If the account does not name a user DN: `authentication_ldap_simple` performs an initial LDAP binding using `authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_dn` and `authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_pwd`. (These are both empty by default, so if they are not set, the LDAP server must permit anonymous connections.) The resulting bind LDAP handle is used to search for the user DN, based on the client user name. `authentication_ldap_simple` performs a second bind using the user DN and client-supplied password.

- If the account does name a user DN: The first bind operation is unnecessary in this case. `authentication_ldap_simple` performs a single bind using the user DN and client-supplied password. This is faster than if the MySQL account does not specify an LDAP user DN.
**authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_pwd**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--authentication-ldap-simple-bind-root-pwd=value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_pwd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the password for the root distinguished name. This variable is used in conjunction with `authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_dn`. See the description of that variable.

**authentication_ldap_simple_ca_path**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--authentication-ldap-simple-ca-path=value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_ca_path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the absolute path of the certificate authority file. Specify this file if it is desired that the authentication plugin perform verification of the LDAP server certificate.

**Note**

In addition to setting the `authentication_ldap_simple_ca_path` variable to the file name, you must add the appropriate certificate authority certificates to the file and enable the `authentication_ldap_simple_tls` system variable.

**authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_attr**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--authentication-ldap-simple-group-search-attr=value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_attr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>cn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For simple LDAP authentication, the name of the attribute that specifies group names in LDAP directory entries. If `authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_attr` has its default value of `cn`, searches return the `cn` value as the group name. For example, if an LDAP entry with a `uid` value of `user1` has a `cn` attribute of `mygroup`, searches for `user1` return `mygroup` as the group name.

As of MySQL 5.7.21, if the group search attribute is `isMemberOf`, LDAP authentication directly retrieves the user attribute `isMemberOf` value and assigns it as group information. If the group search attribute is not `isMemberOf`, LDAP authentication searches for all groups where the user is a member. (The latter is the default behavior.) This behavior is based on how LDAP group information can be stored two ways: 1) A group entry can have an attribute named `memberUid` or `member` with a value that is a user name; 2) A user entry can have an attribute named `isMemberOf` with values that are group names.

- **authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_filter**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-group-search-filter=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_filter</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>`(</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the custom group search filter.

As of MySQL 5.7.22, the search filter value can contain `{UA}` and `{UD}` notation to represent the user name and the full user DN. For example, `{UA}` is replaced with a user name such as "admin", whereas `{UD}` is replaced with a use full DN such as "uid=admin,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com". The following value is the default, which supports both OpenLDAP and Active Directory:

```
(|(&(objectClass=posixGroup)(memberUid={s}))(&(objectClass=group)(member={s})))
```

Previously, if the group search attribute was `isMemberOf` or `memberOf`, it was treated as a user attribute that has group information. However, in some cases for the user scenario, `memberOf` was a simple user attribute that held no group information. For additional flexibility, an optional `{GA}` prefix now can be used with the group search attribute. (Previously, it was assumed that if the group search attribute is `isMemberOf`, it will be treated differently. Now any group attribute with a `{GA}` prefix is treated as a user attribute having group names.) For example, with a value of `{GA}MemberOf`, if the group value is the DN, the first attribute value from the group DN is returned as the group name.

In MySQL 5.7.21, the search filter used `%s` notation, expanding it to the user name for OpenLDAP (`&{objectClass=posixGroup}(memberUid=%s)` ) and to the full user DN for Active Directory (`&{objectClass=group}(member=%s)` ).

- **authentication_ldap_simple_init_pool_size**
### Pluggable Authentication System Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Command-Line Format</strong></td>
<td>--authentication-ldap-simple-init-pool-size=value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduced</strong></td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_init_pool_size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope</strong></td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic</strong></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Value</strong></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum Value</strong></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum Value</strong></td>
<td>32767</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the initial size of the pool of connections to the LDAP server. Choose the value for this variable based on the average number of concurrent authentication requests to the LDAP server.

The plugin uses `authentication_ldap_simple_init_pool_size` and `authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size` together for connection-pool management:

- When the authentication plugin initializes, it creates `authentication_ldap_simple_init_pool_size` connections, unless `authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size=0` to disable pooling.
  
- If the plugin receives an authentication request when there are no free connections in the current connection pool, the plugin can create a new connection, up to the maximum connection pool size given by `authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size`.
  
- If the plugin receives a request when the pool size is already at its maximum and there are no free connections, authentication fails.
  
- When the plugin unloads, it closes all pooled connections.

Changes to plugin system variable settings may have no effect on connections already in the pool. For example, modifying the LDAP server host, port, or TLS settings does not affect existing connections. However, if the original variable values were invalid and the connection pool could not be initialized, the plugin attempts to reinitialize the pool for the next LDAP request. In this case, the new system variable values are used for the reinitialization attempt.

If `authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size=0` to disable pooling, each LDAP connection opened by the plugin uses the values the system variables have at that time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Command-Line Format</strong></td>
<td>--authentication-ldap-simple-log-status=value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduced</strong></td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_log_status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope</strong></td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic</strong></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Value</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For simple LDAP authentication, the logging level. The following table shows the permitted level values and their meanings.

Table 7.14 Log Levels for authentication_ldap_simple_log_status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option Value</th>
<th>Types of Messages Logged</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>No messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Error messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Error and warning messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Error, warning, and information messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>All messages</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-max-pool-size=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>1000</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>32767</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the maximum size of the pool of connections to the LDAP server. To disable connection pooling, set this variable to 0.

This variable is used in conjunction with `authentication_ldap_simple_init_pool_size`. See the description of that variable.

*authentication_ldap_simple_server_host*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-server-host=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_simple_server_host</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the LDAP server host. The permitted values for this variable depend on the authentication method:
• For `authentication_ldap_simple_auth_method_name=SIMPLE`: The LDAP server host can be a host name or IP address.

• For `authentication_ldap_simple_auth_method_name=AD-FOREST`: The LDAP server host can be an Active Directory domain name. For example, for an LDAP server URL of `ldap://example.mem.local:389`, the server name can be `mem.local`.

An Active Directory forest setup can have multiple domains (LDAP server IPs), which can be discovered using DNS. On Unix and Unix-like systems, some additional setup may be required to configure your DNS server with SRV records that specify the LDAP servers for the Active Directory domain. Suppose that your configuration has these properties:

• The name server that provides information about Active Directory domains has IP address `10.172.166.100`.

• The LDAP servers have names `ldap1.mem.local` through `ldap3.mem.local` and IP addresses `10.172.166.101` through `10.172.166.103`.

You want the LDAP servers to be discoverable using SRV searches. For example, at the command line, a command like this should list the LDAP servers:

```
host -t SRV _ldap._tcp.mem.local
```

Perform the DNS configuration as follows:

1. Add a line to `/etc/resolv.conf` to specify the name server that provides information about Active Directory domains:

   ```
   nameserver 10.172.166.100
   ```

2. Configure the appropriate zone file for the name server with SRV records for the LDAP servers:

   ```
   _ldap._tcp.mem.local. 86400 IN SRV 0 100 389 ldap1.mem.local.
   _ldap._tcp.mem.local. 86400 IN SRV 0 100 389 ldap2.mem.local.
   _ldap._tcp.mem.local. 86400 IN SRV 0 100 389 ldap3.mem.local.
   ```

3. It may also be necessary to specify the IP address for the LDAP servers in `/etc/hosts` if the server host cannot be resolved. For example, add lines like this to the file:

   ```
   10.172.166.101 ldap1.mem.local
   10.172.166.102 ldap2.mem.local
   10.172.166.103 ldap3.mem.local
   ```

With the DNS configured as just described, the server-side LDAP plugin can discover the LDAP servers and will try to authenticate in all domains until authentication succeeds or there are no more servers.

Windows needs no such settings as just described. Given the LDAP server host in the `authentication_ldap_simple_server_host` value, the Windows LDAP library searches all domains and attempts to authenticate.

• `authentication_ldap_simple_server_port`
### Pluggable Authentication System Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
<td><strong>authentication_ldap_simple_server_port</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope</strong></td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>32376</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the LDAP server TCP/IP port number.

As of MySQL 5.7.25, if the LDAP port number is configured as 636 or 3269, the plugin uses LDAPS (LDAP over SSL) instead of LDAP. (LDAPS differs from `startTLS`.)

- **authentication_ldap_simple_tls**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-tls=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
<td><strong>authentication_ldap_simple_tls</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, whether connections by the plugin to the LDAP server are secure. If this variable is enabled, the plugin uses TLS to connect securely to the LDAP server. If you enable this variable, you may also wish to set the `authentication_ldap_simple_ca_path` variable.

MySQL LDAP plugins support the StartTLS method, which initializes TLS on top of a plain LDAP connection. The `ldaps` method is deprecated and MySQL does not support it.

- **authentication_ldap_simple_user_search_attr**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-user-search-attr=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
<td><strong>authentication_ldap_simple_user_search_attr</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>uid</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the name of the attribute that specifies user names in LDAP directory entries. If a user distinguished name is not provided, the authentication plugin searches for the name using this attribute. For example, if the
The Connection-Control Plugins

As of MySQL 5.7.17, MySQL Server includes a plugin library that enables administrators to introduce an increasing delay in server response to clients after a certain number of consecutive failed connection attempts. This capability provides a deterrent that slows down brute force attacks that attempt to access MySQL user accounts. The plugin library contains two plugins:

- **CONNECTION_CONTROL** checks incoming connections and adds a delay to server responses as necessary. This plugin also exposes system variables that enable its operation to be configured and a status variable that provides rudimentary monitoring information.

  The **CONNECTION_CONTROL** plugin uses the audit plugin interface (see Writing Audit Plugins). To collect information, it subscribes to the `MYSQL_AUDIT_CONNECTION_CLASSMASK` event class, and processes `MYSQL_AUDIT_CONNECTION_CONNECT` and `MYSQL_AUDIT_CONNECTION_CHANGE_USER` subevents to check whether the server should introduce a delay before responding to client connection attempts.

- **CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS** implements an `INFORMATION_SCHEMA` table that exposes more detailed monitoring information for failed connection attempts.

The following sections provide information about connection-control plugin installation and configuration. For information about the **CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS** table, see The **INFORMATION_SCHEMA** CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS Table.

### 7.2.1 Connection-Control Plugin Installation

This section describes how to install the connection-control plugins, **CONNECTION_CONTROL** and **CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS**. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

The plugin library file base name is **connection_control**. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, `.so` for Unix and Unix-like systems, `.dll` for Windows).

To load the plugins at server startup, use the `--plugin-load-add` option to name the library file that contains them. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=connection_control.so
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to register the plugins at runtime, use these statements (adjust the `.so` suffix as necessary):

```sql
INSTALL PLUGIN CONNECTION_CONTROL
SONAME 'connection_control.so';
INSTALL PLUGIN CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS
SONAME 'connection_control.so';
```

**INSTALL PLUGIN** loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the `mysql.plugins` system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup.
To verify plugin installation, examine the INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS table or use the SHOW PLUGINS statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
    FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
    WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE 'connection%';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUGIN_NAME</th>
<th>PLUGIN_STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CONNECTION_CONTROL</td>
<td>ACTIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS</td>
<td>ACTIVE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a plugin fails to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

If the plugins have been previously registered with INSTALL PLUGIN or are loaded with --plugin-load-add, you can use the --connection-control and --connection-control-failed-login-attempts options at server startup to control plugin activation. For example, to load the plugins at startup and prevent them from being removed at runtime, use these options:

```ini
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=connection_control.so
connection-control=FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT
connection-control-failed-login-attempts=FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT
```

If it is desired to prevent the server from running without a given connection-control plugin, use an option value of FORCE or FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT to force server startup to fail if the plugin does not initialize successfully.

**Note**

It is possible to install one plugin without the other, but both must be installed for full connection-control capability. In particular, installing only the CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS plugin is of little use because without the CONNECTION_CONTROL plugin to provide the data that populates the CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS table, retrievals from the table will always be empty.

- **Connection Delay Configuration**
- **Connection Failure Assessment**
- **Connection Failure Monitoring**

### Connection Delay Configuration

To enable you to configure its operation, the CONNECTION_CONTROL plugin exposes several system variables:

- **connection_control_failed_connections_threshold**: The number of consecutive failed connection attempts permitted to clients before the server adds a delay for subsequent connection attempts.
- **connection_control_min_connection_delay**: The amount of delay to add for each consecutive connection failure above the threshold.
- **connection_control_max_connection_delay**: The maximum delay to add.

To entirely disable checking for failed connection attempts, set `connection_control_failed_connections_threshold` to zero. If `connection_control_failed_connections_threshold` is nonzero, the amount
of delay is zero up through that many consecutive failed connection attempts. Thereafter, the amount of delay is the number of failed attempts above the threshold, multiplied by \texttt{connection\_control\_min\_connection\_delay} milliseconds. For example, with the default \texttt{connection\_control\_failed\_connections\_threshold} and \texttt{connection\_control\_min\_connection\_delay} values of 3 and 1000, respectively, there is no delay for the first three consecutive failed connection attempts by a client, a delay of 1000 milliseconds for the fourth failed attempt, 2000 milliseconds for the fifth failed attempt, and so on, up to the maximum delay permitted by \texttt{connection\_control\_max\_connection\_delay}.

You can set the \texttt{CONNECTION\_CONTROL} system variables at server startup or runtime. Suppose that you want to permit four consecutive failed connection attempts before the server starts delaying its responses, and to increase the delay by 1500 milliseconds for each additional failure after that. To set the relevant variables at server startup, put these lines in the server \texttt{my.cnf} file:

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=connection_control.so
connection_control_failed_connections_threshold=4
connection_control_min_connection_delay=1500
```

To set the variables at runtime, use these statements:

```
SET GLOBAL connection_control_failed_connections_threshold = 4;
SET GLOBAL connection_control_min_connection_delay = 1500;
```

\texttt{SET GLOBAL} sets the value for the running MySQL instance. To make the change permanent, add a line in your \texttt{my.cnf} file, as shown previously.

The \texttt{connection\_control\_min\_connection\_delay} and \texttt{connection\_control\_max\_connection\_delay} system variables have fixed minimum and maximum values of 1000 and 2147483647, respectively. In addition, the permitted range of values of each variable also depends on the current value of the other:

- \texttt{connection\_control\_min\_connection\_delay} cannot be set greater than the current value of \texttt{connection\_control\_max\_connection\_delay}.
- \texttt{connection\_control\_max\_connection\_delay} cannot be set less than the current value of \texttt{connection\_control\_min\_connection\_delay}.

Thus, to make the changes required for some configurations, you might need to set the variables in a specific order. Suppose that the current minimum and maximum delays are 1000 and 2000, and that you want to set them to 3000 and 5000. You cannot first set \texttt{connection\_control\_min\_connection\_delay} to 3000 because that is greater than the current \texttt{connection\_control\_max\_connection\_delay} value of 2000. Instead, set \texttt{connection\_control\_max\_connection\_delay} to 5000, then set \texttt{connection\_control\_min\_connection\_delay} to 3000.

### Connection Failure Assessment

When the \texttt{CONNECTION\_CONTROL} plugin is installed, it checks connection attempts and tracks whether they fail or succeed. For this purpose, a failed connection attempt is one for which the client user and host match a known MySQL account but the provided credentials are incorrect, or do not match any known account.

Failed-connection counting is based on the user/host combination for each connection attempt. Determination of the applicable user name and host name takes proxying into account and occurs as follows:

- If the client user proxies another user, the proxying user's information is used. For example, if \texttt{external\_user@example.com} proxies \texttt{proxy\_user@example.com}, connection counting uses the proxying user, \texttt{external\_user@example.com}, rather than the
proxied user, proxy_user@example.com. Both external_user@example.com and proxy_user@example.com must have valid entries in the mysql.user system table and a proxy relationship between them must be defined in the mysql.proxies_priv system table (see Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”).

• If the client user does not proxy another user, but does match a mysql.user entry, counting uses the CURRENT_USER() value corresponding to that entry. For example, if a user user1 connecting from a host host1.example.com matches a user1@host1.example.com entry, counting uses user1@host1.example.com. If the user matches a user1@%.example.com, user1@%.com, or user1@% entry instead, counting uses user1@%.example.com, user1@%.com, or user1@%, respectively.

For the cases just described, the connection attempt matches some mysql.user entry, and whether the request succeeds or fails depends on whether the client provides the correct authentication credentials. For example, if the client presents an incorrect password, the connection attempt fails.

If the connection attempt matches no mysql.user entry, the attempt fails. In this case, no CURRENT_USER() value is available and connection-failure counting uses the user name provided by the client and the client host as determined by the server. For example, if a client attempts to connect as user user2 from host host2.example.com, the user name part is available in the client request and the server determines the host information. The user/host combination used for counting is user2@host2.example.com.

Note

The server maintains information about which client hosts can possibly connect to the server (essentially the union of host values for mysql.user entries). If a client attempts to connect from any other host, the server rejects the attempt at an early stage of connection setup:

ERROR 1130 (HY000): Host 'host_name' is not allowed to connect to this MySQL server

Because this type of rejection occurs so early, CONNECTION_CONTROL does not see it, and does not count it.

Connection Failure Monitoring

To monitor failed connections, use these information sources:

• The Connection_control_delay_generated status variable indicates the number of times the server added a delay to its response to a failed connection attempt. This does not count attempts that occur before reaching the threshold defined by the connection_control_failed_connections_threshold system variable.

• The INFORMATION_SCHEMA.CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS table provides information about the current number of consecutive failed connection attempts per client user/host combination. This counts all failed attempts, regardless of whether they were delayed.

Assigning a value to connection_control_failed_connections_threshold at runtime resets all accumulated failed-connection counters to zero, which has these visible effects:

• The Connection_control_delay_generated status variable is reset to zero.

• The CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS table becomes empty.

7.2.2 Connection-Control System and Status Variables

This section describes the system and status variables that the CONNECTION_CONTROL plugin provides to enable its operation to be configured and monitored.
Connection-Control System and Status Variables

- Connection-Control System Variables
- Connection-Control Status Variables

Connection-Control System Variables

If the CONNECTION_CONTROL plugin is installed, it exposes these system variables:

- connection_control_failed_connections_threshold

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--connection-control-failed-connections-threshold=#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>connection_control_failed_connections_threshold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>2147483647</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The number of consecutive failed connection attempts permitted to clients before the server adds a delay for subsequent connection attempts:

- If the variable has a nonzero value \( N \), the server adds a delay beginning with consecutive failed attempt \( N+1 \). If a client has reached the point where connection responses are delayed, the delay also occurs for the next subsequent successful connection.
- Setting this variable to zero disables failed-connection counting. In this case, the server never adds delays.

For information about how connection_control_failed_connections_threshold interacts with other connection-control system and status variables, see Section 7.2.1, "Connection-Control Plugin Installation".

- connection_control_max_connection_delay

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--connection-control-max-connection-delay=#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>connection_control_max_connection_delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>2147483647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>2147483647</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The maximum delay in milliseconds for server response to failed connection attempts, if connection_control_failed_connections_threshold is greater than zero.
The Password Validation Plugin

For information about how `connection_control_max_connection_delay` interacts with other connection-control system and status variables, see Section 7.2.1, “Connection-Control Plugin Installation”.

- `connection_control_min_connection_delay`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--connection-control-min-connection-delay=#</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>connection_control_min_connection_delay</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>2147483647</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The minimum delay in milliseconds for server response to failed connection attempts, if `connection_control_failed_connections_threshold` is greater than zero. This is also the amount by which the server increases the delay for additional successive failures once it begins delaying.

For information about how `connection_control_min_connection_delay` interacts with other connection-control system and status variables, see Section 7.2.1, “Connection-Control Plugin Installation”.

Connection-Control Status Variables

If the `CONNECTION_CONTROL` plugin is installed, it exposes this status variable:

- `Connection_control_delay_generated`

The number of times the server added a delay to its response to a failed connection attempt. This does not count attempts that occur before reaching the threshold defined by the `connection_control_failed_connections_threshold` system variable.

This variable provides a simple counter. For more detailed connection-control monitoring information, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS` table; see The `INFORMATION_SCHEMA CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS` Table.

Assigning a value to `connection_control_failed_connections_threshold` at runtime resets `Connection_control_delay_generated` to zero.

This variable was added in MySQL 5.7.17.

7.3 The Password Validation Plugin

The `validate_password` plugin serves to test passwords and improve security. The plugin exposes a set of system variables that enable you to define password policy.

The `validate_password` plugin implements these capabilities:

- In SQL statements that assign a password supplied as a cleartext value, the plugin checks the password against the current password policy and rejects the password if it is weak (the statement
returns an ER_NOT_VALID_PASSWORD error). This applies to the ALTER USER, CREATE USER, GRANT, and SET PASSWORD statements, and passwords given as arguments to the PASSWORD() and OLD_PASSWORD() functions.

- The VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH() SQL function assesses the strength of potential passwords. The function takes a password argument and returns an integer from 0 (weak) to 100 (strong).

For example, validate_password checks the cleartext password in the following statement. Under the default password policy, which requires passwords to be at least 8 characters long, the password is weak and the statement produces an error:

```sql
mysql> ALTER USER USER() IDENTIFIED BY 'abc';
ERROR 1819 (HY000): Your password does not satisfy the current policy requirements
```

Passwords specified as hashed values are not checked because the original password value is not available for checking:

```sql
mysql> ALTER USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost'
    > IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_native_password
    > AS '*0D3CED98EC10A777AEC23CC5348C08A633045E';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)
```

To configure password checking, modify the system variables having names of the form validate_password_xxx; these are the parameters that control password policy. See Section 7.3.2, “Password Validation Plugin Options and Variables”.

If validate_password is not installed, the validate_password_xxx system variables are not available, passwords in statements are not checked, and the VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH() function always returns 0. For example, without the plugin installed, accounts can be assigned passwords shorter than 8 characters.

Assuming that validate_password is installed, it implements three levels of password checking: LOW, MEDIUM, and STRONG. The default is MEDIUM; to change this, modify the value of validate_password_policy. The policies implement increasingly strict password tests. The following descriptions refer to default parameter values, which can be modified by changing the appropriate system variables.

- **LOW** policy tests password length only. Passwords must be at least 8 characters long. To change this length, modify validate_password_length.

- **MEDIUM** policy adds the conditions that passwords must contain at least 1 numeric character, 1 lowercase character, 1 uppercase character, and 1 special (nonalphanumeric) character. To change these values, modify validate_password_number_count, validate_password_mixed_case_count, and validate_password_special_char_count.

- **STRONG** policy adds the condition that password substrings of length 4 or longer must not match words in the dictionary file, if one has been specified. To specify the dictionary file, modify validate_password_dictionary_file.

In addition, as of MySQL 5.7.15, validate_password supports the capability of rejecting passwords that match the user name part of the effective user account for the current session, either forward or in reverse. To provide control over this capability, validate_password exposes a validate_password_check_user_name system variable, which is enabled by default.

### 7.3.1 Password Validation Plugin Installation

This section describes how to install the validate_password password-validation plugin. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.
Note

If you installed MySQL 5.7 using the MySQL Yum repository, MySQL SLES Repository, or RPM packages provided by Oracle, validate_password is enabled by default after you started your MySQL Server for the first time.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of plugin_dir at server startup.

The plugin library file base name is validate_password. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, .so for Unix and Unix-like systems, .dll for Windows).

To load the plugin at server startup, use the --plugin-load-add option to name the library file that contains it. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server my.cnf file (adjust the .so suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=validate_password.so
```

After modifying my.cnf, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to register the plugin at runtime, use this statement (adjust the .so suffix as necessary):

```
INSTALL PLUGIN validate_password SONAME 'validate_password.so';
```

INSTALL PLUGIN loads the plugin, and also registers it in the mysql.plugins system table to cause the plugin to be loaded for each subsequent normal server startup.

To verify plugin installation, examine the INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS table or use the SHOW PLUGINS statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
          FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
          WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE 'validate%';
+-------------------+---------------+
| PLUGIN_NAME       | PLUGIN_STATUS |
+-------------------+---------------+
| validate_password | ACTIVE        |
+-------------------+---------------+
```

If the plugin fails to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

If the plugin has been previously registered with INSTALL PLUGIN or is loaded with --plugin-load-add, you can use the --validate-password option at server startup to control plugin activation. For example, to load the plugin at startup and prevent it from being removed at runtime, use these options:

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=validate_password.so
validate-password=FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT
```

If it is desired to prevent the server from running without the password-validation plugin, use --validate-password with a value of FORCE or FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT to force server startup to fail if the plugin does not initialize successfully.

### 7.3.2 Password Validation Plugin Options and Variables

This section describes the options, system variables, and status variables that validate_password provides to enable its operation to be configured and monitored.

- **Password Validation Plugin Options**
Password Validation Plugin Options

To control the activation of the validate_password plugin, use this option:

•\n--validate-password[=value]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--validate-password[=value]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>ON, OFF, FORCE, FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This option controls how the server loads the validate_password plugin at startup. The value should be one of those available for plugin-loading options, as described in Installing and Uninstalling Plugins. For example, --validate-password=FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT tells the server to load the plugin at startup and prevents it from being removed while the server is running.

This option is available only if the validate_password plugin has been previously registered with INSTALL PLUGIN or is loaded with --plugin-load-add. See Section 7.3.1, “Password Validation Plugin Installation”.

Password Validation Plugin System Variables

If the validate_password plugin is enabled, it exposes several system variables that enable configuration of password checking:

```
mysql> SHOW VARIABLES LIKE 'validate_password\%';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable_name</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>validate_password_check_user_name</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>validate_password_dictionary_file</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>validate_password_length</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>validate_password_mixed_case_count</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>validate_password_number_count</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>validate_password_policy</td>
<td>MEDIUM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>validate_password_special_char_count</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To change how passwords are checked, you can set these system variables at server startup or at runtime. The following list describes the meaning of each variable.

• validate_password_check_user_name

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--validate-password-check-user-name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>validate_password_check_user_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Password Validation Plugin Options and Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whether validate_password compares passwords to the user name part of the effective user account for the current session and rejects them if they match. This variable is unavailable unless validate_password is installed.

By default, validate_password_check_user_name is disabled. This variable controls user name matching independent of the value of validate_password_policy.

When validate_password_check_user_name is enabled, it has these effects:

- Checking occurs in all contexts for which validate_password is invoked, which includes use of statements such as `ALTER USER` or `SET PASSWORD` to change the current user's password, and invocation of functions such as `PASSWORD()` and `VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH()`.

- The user names used for comparison are taken from the values of the `USER()` and `CURRENT_USER()` functions for the current session. An implication is that a user who has sufficient privileges to set another user's password can set the password to that user's name, and cannot set that user's password to the name of the user executing the statement. For example, 'root'@'localhost' can set the password for 'jeffrey'@'localhost' to 'jeffrey', but cannot set the password to 'root'.

- Only the user name part of the `USER()` and `CURRENT_USER()` function values is used, not the host name part. If a user name is empty, no comparison occurs.

- If a password is the same as the user name or its reverse, a match occurs and the password is rejected.

- User-name matching is case sensitive. The password and user name values are compared as binary strings on a byte-by-byte basis.

- If a password matches the user name, `VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH()` returns 0 regardless of how other validate_password system variables are set.

- validate_password_dictionary_file

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>validate_password_dictionary_file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic (&gt;= 5.7.8)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic (&lt;= 5.7.7)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>File name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The path name of the dictionary file that validate_password uses for checking passwords. This variable is unavailable unless validate_password is installed.

By default, this variable has an empty value and dictionary checks are not performed. For dictionary checks to occur, the variable value must be nonempty. If the file is named as a relative path, it is interpreted relative to the server data directory. File contents should be lowercase, one word per line. Contents are treated as having a character set of utf8. The maximum permitted file size is 1MB.

For the dictionary file to be used during password checking, the password policy must be set to 2 (STRONG); see the description of the validate_password_policy system variable. Assuming
that is true, each substring of the password of length 4 up to 100 is compared to the words in the
dictionary file. Any match causes the password to be rejected. Comparisons are not case sensitive.

For `validate_password_strength()`, the password is checked against all policies,
including STRONG, so the strength assessment includes the dictionary check regardless of the
`validate_password_policy` value.

`validate_password_dictionary_file` can be set at runtime and assigning a value causes the
named file to be read without a server restart.

• `validate_password_length`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>validate_password_length</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The minimum number of characters that `validate_password` requires passwords to have. This
variable is unavailable unless `validate_password` is installed.

The `validate_password_length` minimum value is a function of several other related system
variables. The value cannot be set less than the value of this expression:

```
validate_password_number_count + validate_password_special_char_count + (2 * validate_password_mixed_case_count)
```

If `validate_password` adjusts the value of `validate_password_length` due to the preceding
constraint, it writes a message to the error log.

• `validate_password_mixed_case_count`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>validate_password_mixed_case_count</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The minimum number of lowercase and uppercase characters that `validate_password` requires
passwords to have if the password policy is MEDIUM or stronger. This variable is unavailable unless
`validate_password` is installed.

For a given `validate_password_mixed_case_count` value, the password must have that many
lowercase characters, and that many uppercase characters.

• `validate_password_number_count`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>validate_password_number_count</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Password Validation Plugin Options and Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The minimum number of numeric (digit) characters that `validate_password` requires passwords to have if the password policy is `MEDIUM` or stronger. This variable is unavailable unless `validate_password` is installed.

- **validate_password_policy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>validate_password_policy</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The password policy enforced by `validate_password`. This variable is unavailable unless `validate_password` is installed.

`validate_password_policy` affects how `validate_password` uses its other policy-setting system variables, except for checking passwords against user names, which is controlled independently by `validate_password_check_user_name`.

The `validate_password_policy` value can be specified using numeric values 0, 1, 2, or the corresponding symbolic values `LOW`, `MEDIUM`, `STRONG`. The following table describes the tests performed for each policy. For the length test, the required length is the value of the `validate_password_length` system variable. Similarly, the required values for the other tests are given by other `validate_password_xxx` variables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>Tests Performed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 or LOW</td>
<td>Length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 or MEDIUM</td>
<td>Length; numeric, lowercase/uppercase, and special characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 or STRONG</td>
<td>Length; numeric, lowercase/uppercase, and special characters; dictionary file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **validate_password_special_char_count**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>validate_password_special_char_count</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7.4 The MySQL Keyring

MySQL Server supports a keyring service that enables internal server components and plugins to securely store sensitive information for later retrieval. The implementation is plugin-based:

- MySQL 5.7.11 and higher includes a keyring plugin, `keyring_file`, that stores keyring data in a file local to the server host. This plugin is available in all MySQL distributions, Community Edition and Enterprise Edition included. See Section 7.4.2, “Using the `keyring_file` File-Based Plugin”.

- MySQL 5.7.21 and higher includes a keyring plugin, `keyring_encrypted_file`, that stores keyring data in an encrypted file local to the server host. This plugin is available in MySQL Enterprise Edition distributions. See Section 7.4.3, “Using the `keyring_encrypted_file` Keyring Plugin”.

- MySQL 5.7.12 and higher includes `keyring_okv`, a KMIP 1.1 plugin for use with KMIP-compatible back end keyring storage products such as Oracle Key Vault and Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure Appliance. This plugin is available in MySQL Enterprise Edition distributions. See Section 7.4.4, “Using the `keyring_okv` KMIP Plugin”.

- MySQL 5.7.19 and higher includes `keyring_aws`, a plugin that communicates with the Amazon Web Services Key Management Service for key generation and uses a local file for key storage. This plugin is available in MySQL Enterprise Edition distributions. See Section 7.4.5, “Using the `keyring_aws` Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin”.

- MySQL 5.7.21 and higher supports a server operational mode that enables migration of keys between underlying keyring keystores. This enables DBAs to switch a MySQL installation from one keyring plugin to another. See Section 7.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”.

- MySQL 5.7.13 and higher includes an SQL interface for keyring key management, implemented as a set of user-defined functions (UDFs). See Section 7.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

#### Property Value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The minimum number of nonalphanumeric characters that `validate_password` requires passwords to have if the password policy is MEDIUM or stronger. This variable is unavailable unless `validate_password` is installed.

### Password Validation Plugin Status Variables

If the `validate_password` plugin is enabled, it exposes status variables that provide operational information:

```
mysql> SHOW STATUS LIKE 'validate_password%';
+-----------------------------------------------+---------------------+
| Variable_name                                 | Value               |
+-----------------------------------------------+---------------------+
| validate_password_dictionary_file_last_parsed | 2015-06-29 11:08:51 |
| validate_password_dictionary_file_words_count | 1902                |
+-----------------------------------------------+---------------------+
```

The following list describes the meaning of each status variable.

- **validate_password_dictionary_file_last_parsed**
  
  When the dictionary file was last parsed.

- **validate_password_dictionary_file_words_count**
  
  The number of words read from the dictionary file.
Warning

The `keyring_file` and `keyring_encrypted_file` plugins for encryption key management are not intended as a regulatory compliance solution. Security standards such as PCI, FIPS, and others require use of key management systems to secure, manage, and protect encryption keys in key vaults or hardware security modules (HSMs).

Uses for the keyring within MySQL include:

- The InnoDB storage engine uses the keyring to store its key for tablespace encryption. InnoDB can use any supported keyring plugin.

- MySQL Enterprise Audit uses the keyring to store the audit log file encryption password. The audit log plugin can use any supported keyring plugin.

For general keyring installation instructions, see Section 7.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”. For information specific to a given keyring plugin, see the section describing that plugin.

For information about using the keyring UDFs, see Section 7.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

Keyring plugins and UDFs access a keyring service that provides the interface for server components to the keyring. For information about accessing the keyring plugin service and writing keyring plugins, see The Keyring Service, and Writing Keyring Plugins.

### 7.4.1 Keyring Plugin Installation

Keyring service consumers require a keyring plugin to be installed. MySQL provides these plugin choices:

- **keyring_file**: A plugin that stores keyring data in a file local to the server host. Available in all MySQL distributions as of MySQL 5.7.11.

- **keyring_encrypted_file**: A plugin that stores keyring data in an encrypted file local to the server host. Available in MySQL Enterprise Edition distributions as of MySQL 5.7.21.

- **keyring_okv**: A plugin that uses KMIP-compatible back end keyring storage products such as Oracle Key Vault and Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure Appliance. Available in MySQL Enterprise Edition distributions as of MySQL 5.7.12.

- **keyring_aws**: A plugin that communicates with the Amazon Web Services Key Management Service as a back end for key generation and uses a local file for key storage. Available in MySQL Enterprise Edition distributions as of MySQL 5.7.19.

This section describes how to install the keyring plugin of your choosing. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

If you intend to use keyring user-defined functions (UDFs) in conjunction with the keyring plugin, install the UDFs following keyring installation using the instructions in Section 7.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

Installation for each keyring plugin is similar. The following instructions use `keyring_file`. Users of a different keyring plugin can substitute its name for `keyring_file`.

The `keyring_file` plugin library file base name is `keyring_file`. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, `.so` for Unix and Unix-like systems, `.dll` for Windows).
Keyring Plugin Installation

Note

Only one keyring plugin should be enabled at a time. Enabling multiple keyring plugins is unsupported and results may not be as anticipated.

The keyring plugin must be loaded early during the server startup sequence so that server components can access it as necessary during their own initialization. For example, the InnoDB storage engine uses the keyring for tablespace encryption, so the keyring plugin must be loaded and available prior to InnoDB initialization.

To load the plugin, use the `--early-plugin-load` option to name the plugin library file that contains it. For example, on platforms where the plugin library file suffix is `.so`, use these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
[mysqld]
early-plugin-load=keyring_file.so
```

As of MySQL 5.7.12, the default `--early-plugin-load` value is empty. To load a keyring plugin, you must use an explicit `--early-plugin-load` option with a nonempty value.

Important

In MySQL 5.7.11, the default `--early-plugin-load` value was the name of the `keyring_file` plugin library file, so that plugin was loaded by default. InnoDB tablespace encryption requires the `keyring_file` plugin to be loaded prior to InnoDB initialization, so this change of default `--early-plugin-load` value introduces an incompatibility for upgrades from 5.7.11 to 5.7.12 or higher. Administrators who have encrypted InnoDB tablespaces must take explicit action to ensure continued loading of the `keyring_file` plugin: Start the server with an `--early-plugin-load` option that names the plugin library file.

Before starting the server, check the notes for your chosen keyring plugin to see whether it permits or requires additional configuration:

- For `keyring_file`: Section 7.4.2, “Using the keyring_file File-Based Plugin”.
- For `keyring_okv`: Section 7.4.4, “Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin”.
- For `keyring_aws`: Section 7.4.5, “Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin”

After performing any plugin-specific configuration, verify plugin installation. With the MySQL server running, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
               FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
               WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE 'keyring%';
```

If the plugin fails to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

If no keyring plugin is available when a server component tries to access the keyring service, the service cannot be used by that component. As a result, the component may fail to initialize or may initialize with limited functionality. For example, if InnoDB finds that there are encrypted tablespaces when it initializes, it attempts to access the keyring. If the keyring is unavailable, InnoDB can access only unencrypted tablespaces. To ensure that InnoDB can access encrypted tablespaces as well, use `--early-plugin-load` to load the keyring plugin.
Plugins can be loaded by other methods, such as the `--plugin-load` or `--plugin-load-add` option or the `INSTALL PLUGIN` statement. However, keyring plugins loaded using those methods may be available too late in the server startup sequence for certain server components, such as InnoDB:

- Plugin loading using `--plugin-load` or `--plugin-load-add` occurs after InnoDB initialization.
- Plugins installed using `INSTALL PLUGIN` are registered in the `mysql.plugin` system table and loaded automatically for subsequent server restarts. However, because `mysql.plugin` is an InnoDB table, any plugins named in it can be loaded during startup only after InnoDB initialization.

### 7.4.2 Using the keyring_file File-Based Plugin

The `keyring_file` plugin is a keyring plugin that stores keyring data in a file local to the server host.

**Warning**

The `keyring_file` plugin for encryption key management is not intended as a regulatory compliance solution. Security standards such as PCI, FIPS, and others require use of key management systems to secure, manage, and protect encryption keys in key vaults or hardware security modules (HSMs).

To install the `keyring_file` plugin, use the general keyring installation instructions found in Section 7.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”, together with the configuration information specific to `keyring_file` found here.

To be usable during the server startup process, `keyring_file` must be loaded using the `--early-plugin-load` option. The `keyring_file_data` system variable optionally configures the location of the file used by the `keyring_file` plugin for data storage. The default value is platform specific. To configure the file location explicitly, set the variable value at startup. For example, use these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix and file location for your platform as necessary):

```
[mysqld]
early-plugin-load=keyring_file.so
keyring_file_data=/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring/keyring
```

Keyring operations are transactional: The `keyring_file` plugin uses a backup file during write operations to ensure that it can roll back to the original file if an operation fails. The backup file has the same name as the value of the `keyring_file_data` system variable with a suffix of `.backup`.

For additional information about `keyring_file_data`, see Section 7.4.11, “Keyring System Variables”.

As of MySQL 5.7.17, to ensure that keys are flushed only when the correct keyring storage file exists, `keyring_file` stores a SHA-256 checksum of the keyring in the file. Before updating the file, the plugin verifies that it contains the expected checksum.

The `keyring_file` plugin supports the functions that comprise the standard keyring service interface. Keyring operations performed by those functions are accessible at two levels:

- SQL interface: In SQL statements, call the user-defined functions (UDFs) described in Section 7.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.
- C interface: In C-language code, call the keyring service functions described in The Keyring Service.

Example (using UDFs):

```sql
SELECT keyring_key_generate('MyKey', 'AES', 32);
SELECT keyring_key_remove('MyKey');
```

The key types permitted by `keyring_file` are described in Section 7.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types”.
Using the keyring_encrypted_file Keyring Plugin

### 7.4.3 Using the keyring_encrypted_file Keyring Plugin

#### Note

The `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see https://www.mysql.com/products/.

The `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin is a keyring plugin that stores keyring data in an encrypted file local to the server host. This plugin is available as of MySQL 5.7.21.

#### Warning

The `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin for encryption key management is not intended as a regulatory compliance solution. Security standards such as PCI, FIPS, and others require use of key management systems to secure, manage, and protect encryption keys in key vaults or hardware security modules (HSMs).

To install the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin, use the general keyring installation instructions found in Section 7.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”, together with the configuration information specific to `keyring_encrypted_file` found here.

To be usable during the server startup process, `keyring_encrypted_file` must be loaded using the `--early-plugin-load` option. To specify the password for encrypting the keyring data file, set the `keyring_encrypted_file_password` system variable. (The password is mandatory; if not specified at server startup, `keyring_encrypted_file` initialization fails.) The `keyring_encrypted_file_data` system variable optionally configures the location of the file used by the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin for data storage. The default value is platform specific. To configure the file location explicitly, set the variable value at startup. For example, use these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix and file location for your platform as necessary and substitute your chosen password):

```
[mysqld]
early-plugin-load=keyring_encrypted_file.so
keyring_encrypted_file_data=/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring/keyring-encrypted
keyring_encrypted_file_password=password
```

Because the `my.cnf` file stores a password when written as shown, it should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server.

Keyring operations are transactional: The `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin uses a backup file during write operations to ensure that it can roll back to the original file if an operation fails. The backup file has the same name as the value of the `keyring_encrypted_file_data` system variable with a suffix of `.backup`.

For additional information about the system variables used to configure the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin, see Section 7.4.11, “Keyring System Variables”.

To ensure that keys are flushed only when the correct keyring storage file exists, `keyring_encrypted_file` stores a SHA-256 checksum of the keyring in the file. Before updating the file, the plugin verifies that it contains the expected checksum. In addition, `keyring_encrypted_file` encrypts file contents using AES before writing the file, and decrypts file contents after reading the file.

The `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin supports the functions that comprise the standard keyring service interface. Keyring operations performed by those functions are accessible at two levels:

- **SQL interface:** In SQL statements, call the user-defined functions (UDFs) described in Section 7.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.
- **C interface:** In C-language code, call the keyring service functions described in [The Keyring Service](#).
Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin

Example (using UDFs):

```sql
SELECT keyring_key_generate('MyKey', 'AES', 32);
SELECT keyring_key_remove('MyKey');
```

The key types permitted by `keyring_encrypted_file` are described in Section 7.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types”.

7.4.4 Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin

Note

The `keyring_okv` plugin is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see https://www.mysql.com/products/.

The Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) enables communication of cryptographic keys between a key management server and its clients. The `keyring_okv` keyring plugin uses the KMIP 1.1 protocol to communicate securely as a client of a KMIP back end. Keyring material is generated exclusively by the back end, not by `keyring_okv`. The plugin works with these KMIP-compatible products:

- Oracle Key Vault
- Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure Appliance

The `keyring_okv` plugin supports the functions that comprise the standard keyring service interface. Keyring operations performed by those functions are accessible at two levels:

- SQL interface: In SQL statements, call the user-defined functions (UDFs) described in Section 7.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.
- C interface: In C-language code, call the keyring service functions described in The Keyring Service.

Example (using UDFs):

```sql
SELECT keyring_key_generate('MyKey', 'AES', 32);
SELECT keyring_key_remove('MyKey');
```

The key types permitted by `keyring_okv` are described in Section 7.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types”.

To install the `keyring_okv` plugin, use the general keyring installation instructions found in Section 7.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”, together with the configuration information specific to `keyring_okv` found here.

- General keyring_okv Configuration
- Configuring keyring_okv for Oracle Key Vault
- Configuring keyring_okv for Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure Appliance
- Password-Protecting the keyring_okv Key File

General keyring_okv Configuration

Regardless of which KMIP back end the `keyring_okv` plugin uses for keyring storage, the `keyring_okv_conf_dir` system variable configures the location of the directory used by `keyring_okv` for its support files. The default value is empty, so you must set the variable to name a properly configured directory before the plugin can communicate with the KMIP back end. Unless
Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin

you do so, keyring_okv writes a message to the error log during server startup that it cannot communicate:

```
[Warning] Plugin keyring_okv reported: 'For keyring_okv to be initialized, please point the keyring_okv_conf_dir variable to a directory containing Oracle Key Vault configuration file and ssl materials'
```

The keyring_okv_conf_dir variable must name a directory that that contains the following items:

- **okvclient.ora**: A file that contains details of the KMIP back end with which keyring_okv will communicate.

- **ssl**: A directory that contains the certificate and key files required to establish a secure connection with the KMIP back end: CA.pem, cert.pem, and key.pem. As of MySQL 5.7.20, if the key file is password-protected, the ssl directory can contain a single-line text file named password.txt containing the password needed to decrypt the key file.

Both the okvclient.ora file and ssl directory with the certificate and key files are required for keyring_okv to work properly. The procedure used to populate the configuration directory with these files depends on the KMIP back end used with keyring_okv, as described elsewhere.

The configuration directory used by keyring_okv as the location for its support files should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server. For example, on Unix and Unix-like systems, to use the `/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring-okv` directory, the following commands (executed as root) create the directory and set its mode and ownership:

```
cd /usr/local/mysql
mkdir mysql-keyring-okv
chmod 750 mysql-keyring-okv
chown mysql mysql-keyring-okv
chgrp mysql mysql-keyring-okv
```

To be usable during the server startup process, keyring_okv must be loaded using the `--early-plugin-load` option. Also, set the keyring_okv_conf_dir system variable to tell keyring_okv where to find its configuration directory. For example, use these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the .so suffix and directory location for your platform as necessary):

```
[mysqld]
early-plugin-load=keyring_okv.so
keyring_okv_conf_dir=/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring-okv
```

For additional information about keyring_okv_conf_dir, see Section 7.4.11, “Keyring System Variables”.

### Configuring keyring_okv for Oracle Key Vault

The discussion here assumes that you are familiar with Oracle Key Vault. Some pertinent information sources:

- **Oracle Key Vault site**

- **Oracle Key Vault documentation**

In Oracle Key Vault terminology, clients that use Oracle Key Vault to store and retrieve security objects are called endpoints. To communicate with Oracle Key Vault, it is necessary to register as an endpoint and enroll by downloading and installing endpoint support files.

The following procedure briefly summarizes the process of setting up keyring_okv for use with Oracle Key Vault:

1. Create the configuration directory for the keyring_okv plugin to use.
2. Register an endpoint with Oracle Key Vault to obtain an enrollment token.

3. Use the enrollment token to obtain the `okvclient.jar` client software download.

4. Install the client software to populate the `keyring_okv` configuration directory that contains the Oracle Key Vault support files.

Use the following procedure to configure `keyring_okv` and Oracle Key Vault to work together. This description only summarizes how to interact with Oracle Key Vault. For details, visit the Oracle Key Vault site and consult the Oracle Key Vault Administrator's Guide.

1. Create the configuration directory that will contain the Oracle Key Vault support files, and make sure that the `keyring_okv_conf_dir` system variable is set to name that directory (for details, see General `keyring_okv` Configuration).

2. Log in to the Oracle Key Vault management console as a user who has the System Administrator role.


4. Provide the required endpoint information and click Register. The endpoint type should be Other. Successful registration results in an enrollment token.

5. Log out from the Oracle Key Vault server.

6. Connect again to the Oracle Key Vault server, this time without logging in. Use the endpoint enrollment token to enroll and request the `okvclient.jar` software download. Save this file to your system.

7. Install the `okvclient.jar` file using the following command (you must have JDK 1.4 or higher):

   ```
   java -jar okvclient.jar -d dir_name [-v]
   ```

   The directory name following the `-d` option is the location in which to install extracted files. The `-v` option, if given, causes log information to be produced that may be useful if the command fails.

   When the command asks for an Oracle Key Vault endpoint password, do not provide one. Instead, press Enter. (The result is that no password will be required when the endpoint connects to Oracle Key Vault.)

8. The preceding command produces an `okvclient.ora` file, which should be in this location under the directory named by the `-d` option in the preceding `java -jar` command:

   ```
   install_dir/conf/okvclient.ora
   ```

   The file contents include lines that look something like this:

   ```
   SERVER=host_ip:port_num
   STANDBY_SERVER=host_ip:port_num
   ```

   The `keyring_okv` plugin attempts to communicate with the server running on the host named by the `SERVER` variable and falls back to `STANDBY_SERVER` if that fails:

   - For the `SERVER` variable, a setting in the `okvclient.ora` file is mandatory.

   - For the `STANDBY_SERVER` variable, a setting in the `okvclient.ora` file is optional, as of MySQL 5.7.19. Prior to MySQL 5.7.19, a setting for `STANDBY_SERVER` is mandatory; if `okvclient.ora` is generated with no setting for `STANDBY_SERVER`, `keyring_okv` fails to initialize. The workaround is to check `oraclient.ora` and add a “dummy” setting for `STANDBY_SERVER`, if one is missing. For example:
9. Go to the Oracle Key Vault installer directory and test the setup by running this command:

```bash
okvutil/bin/okvutil list
```

The output should look something like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unique ID</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Identifier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>255AB8DE-C97F-482C-E053-0100007F28B9</td>
<td>Symmetric Key</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>264BF6E0-A20E-7C42-E053-0100007FB29C</td>
<td>Symmetric Key</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For a fresh Oracle Key Vault server (a server without any key in it), the output looks like this instead, to indicate that there are no keys in the vault:

```bash
no objects found
```

10. Use this command to extract the `ssl` directory containing SSL materials from the `okvclient.jar` file:

```bash
jar xf okvclient.jar ssl
```

11. Copy the Oracle Key Vault support files (the `okvclient.ora` file and the `ssl` directory) into the configuration directory.

12. (Optional) If you wish to password-protect the key file, use the instructions in Password-Protecting the keyring_okv Key File.

After completing the preceding procedure, restart the MySQL server. It loads the `keyring_okv` plugin and `keyring_okv` uses the files in its configuration directory to communicate with Oracle Key Vault.

### Configuring keyring_okv for Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure Appliance

Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure Appliance uses the KMIP protocol (version 1.1 or 1.2). As of MySQL 5.7.18, the `keyring_okv` keyring plugin (which supports KMIP 1.1) can use KeySecure as its KMIP back end for keyring storage.

Use the following procedure to configure `keyring_okv` and KeySecure to work together. The description only summarizes how to interact with KeySecure. For details, consult the section named Add a KMIP Server in the KeySecure User Guide.

1. Create the configuration directory that will contain the KeySecure support files, and make sure that the `keyring_okv_conf_dir` system variable is set to name that directory (for details, see General keyring_okv Configuration).

2. In the configuration directory, create a subdirectory named `ssl` to use for storing the required SSL certificate and key files.

3. In the configuration directory, create a file named `okvclient.ora`. It should have following format:

```ini
SERVER=host_ip:port_num
STANDBY_SERVER=host_ip:port_num
```

For example, if KeySecure is running on host 198.51.100.20 and listening on port 9002, the `okvclient.ora` file looks like this:

```ini
SERVER=198.51.100.20:9002
STANDBY_SERVER=198.51.100.20:9002
```
4. Connect to the KeySecure Management Console as an administrator with credentials for Certificate Authorities access.

5. Navigate to Security >> Local CAs and create a local certificate authority (CA).

6. Go to Trusted CA Lists. Select Default and click on Properties. Then select Edit for Trusted Certificate Authority List and add the CA just created.

7. Download the CA and save it in the `ssl` directory as a file named `CA.pem`.

8. Navigate to Security >> Certificate Requests and create a certificate. Then you will be able to download a compressed `tar` file containing certificate PEM files.

9. Extract the PEM files from in the downloaded file. For example, if the file name is `csr_w_pk_pkcs8.gz`, decompress and unpack it using this command:

   ```
   tar zxfv csr_w_pk_pkcs8.gz
   ```

   Two files result from the extraction operation: `certificate_request.pem` and `private_key_pkcs8.pem`.

10. Use this `openssl` command to decrypt the private key and create a file named `key.pem`:

    ```
    openssl pkcs8 -in private_key_pkcs8.pem -out key.pem
    ```

11. Copy the `key.pem` file into the `ssl` directory.

12. Copy the certificate request in `certificate_request.pem` into the clipboard.

13. Navigate to Security >> Local CAs. Select the same CA that you created earlier (the one you downloaded to create the `CA.pem` file), and click Sign Request. Paste the Certificate Request from the clipboard, choose a certificate purpose of Client (the keyring is a client of KeySecure), and click Sign Request. The result is a certificate signed with the selected CA in a new page.

14. Copy the signed certificate to the clipboard, then save the clipboard contents as a file named `cert.pem` in the `ssl` directory.

15. (Optional) If you wish to password-protect the key file, use the instructions in Password-Protecting the keyring_okv Key File.

After completing the preceding procedure, restart the MySQL server. It loads the `keyring_okv` plugin and `keyring_okv` uses the files in its configuration directory to communicate with KeySecure.

**Password-Protecting the keyring_okv Key File**

As of MySQL 5.7.20, you can optionally protect the key file with a password and supply a file containing the password to enable the key file to be decrypted. To do so, change location to the `ssl` directory and perform these steps:

1. Encrypt the `key.pem` key file. For example, use a command like this, and enter the encryption password at the prompts:

   ```
   openssl rsa -des3 -in key.pem -out key.pem.new
   Enter PEM pass phrase:
   Verifying - Enter PEM pass phrase:
   ```

2. Save the encryption password in a single-line text file named `password.txt` in the `ssl` directory.

3. Verify that the encrypted key file can be decrypted using the following command. The decrypted file should display on the console:
Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin

4. Remove the original key.pem file and rename key.pem.new to key.pem.

5. Change the ownership and access mode of new key.pem file and password.txt file as necessary to ensure that they have the same restrictions as other files in the ssl directory.

7.4.5 Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin

Note

The keyring_aws plugin is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see https://www.mysql.com/products/.

The keyring_aws plugin is a keyring plugin that communicates with the Amazon Web Services Key Management Service (AWS KMS) as a back end for key generation and uses a local file for key storage. All keyring material is generated exclusively by the AWS server, not by keyring_aws.

keyring_aws is available on these platforms:

- Debian 8
- EL7
- macOS 10.13 and 10.14
- SLES 12
- Ubuntu 14.04 and 16.04
- Windows

The discussion here assumes that you are familiar with AWS in general and KMS in particular. Some pertinent information sources:

- AWS site
- KMS documentation

The following sections provide configuration and usage information for the keyring_aws keyring plugin:

- keyring_aws Configuration
- keyring_aws Operation
- keyring_aws Credential Changes

keyring_aws Configuration

To install the keyring_aws plugin, use the general installation instructions found in Section 7.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”, together with the plugin-specific configuration information found here.

The plugin library file contains the keyring_aws plugin and two user-defined functions (UDFs), keyring_aws_rotate_cmk() and keyring_aws_rotate_keys().

To configure keyring_aws, you must obtain a secret access key that provides credentials for communicating with AWS KMS and write it to a configuration file:

1. Create an AWS KMS account.
2. Use AWS KMS to create a secret access key ID and secret access key. The access key serves to verify your identity and that of your applications.

3. Use the AWS KMS account to create a customer master key (CMK) ID. At MySQL startup, set the `keyring_aws_cmk_id` system variable to the CMK ID value. This variable is mandatory and there is no default. (Its value can be changed at runtime if desired using `SET GLOBAL`.)

4. If necessary, create the directory in which the configuration file will be located. The directory should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server. For example, on Unix and Unix-like systems, to use `/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring/keyring_aws_conf` as the file name, the following commands (executed as `root`) create its parent directory and set the directory mode and ownership:

   ```shell>
   cd /usr/local/mysql
   shell> mkdir mysql-keyring
   shell> chmod 750 mysql-keyring
   shell> chown mysql mysql-keyring
   shell> chgrp mysql mysql-keyring
   ```

   At MySQL startup, set the `keyring_aws_conf_file` system variable to `/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring/keyring_aws_conf` to indicate the configuration file location to the server.

5. Prepare the `keyring_aws` configuration file, which should contain two lines:

   - Line 1: The secret access key ID
   - Line 2: The secret access key

   For example, if the key ID is `wwwwwwwwwwwwEXAMPLE` and the key is `xxxxxxxxxxxxx/yyyyyyy/zzzzzzzzEXAMPLEKEY`, the configuration file looks like this:

   ```plaintext
   wwwwwwwwwwwwwEXAMPLE
   xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx/yyyyyyy/zzzzzzzzEXAMPLEKEY
   ```

   To be usable during the server startup process, `keyring_aws` must be loaded using the `--early-plugin-load` option. The `keyring_aws_cmk_id` system variable is mandatory and configures the customer master key (CMK) ID obtained from the AWS KMS server. The `keyring_aws_conf_file` and `keyring_aws_data_file` system variables optionally configure the locations of the files used by the `keyring_aws` plugin for configuration information and data storage. The file location variable default values are platform specific. To configure the locations explicitly, set the variable values at startup. For example, use these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix and file locations for your platform as necessary):

   ```plaintext
   [mysql]
   early-plugin-load=keyring_aws.so
   keyring_aws_cmk_id='arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:111122223333:key/abcd1234-ef56-ab12-cd34-ef56abcd1234'
   keyring_aws_conf_file=/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring/keyring_aws_conf
   keyring_aws_data_file=/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring/keyring_aws_data
   ```

   For the `keyring_aws` plugin to start successfully, the configuration file must exist and contain valid secret access key information, initialized as described previously. The storage file need not exist. If it does not, `keyring_aws` attempts to create it (as well as its parent directory, if necessary).

   For additional information about the system variables used to configure the `keyring_aws` plugin, see Section 7.4.11, “Keyring System Variables”.

   Start the MySQL server and install the UDFs associated with the `keyring_aws` plugin. This is a one-time operation, performed by executing the following statements (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):
keyring_aws Operation

At plugin startup, the keyring_aws plugin reads the AWS secret access key ID and key from its configuration file. It also reads any encrypted keys contained in its storage file into its in-memory cache.

During operation, keyring_aws maintains encrypted keys in the in-memory cache and uses the storage file as local persistent storage. Each keyring operation is transactional: keyring_aws either successfully changes both the in-memory key cache and the keyring storage file, or the operation fails and the keyring state remains unchanged.

To ensure that keys are flushed only when the correct keyring storage file exists, keyring_aws stores a SHA-256 checksum of the keyring in the file. Before updating the file, the plugin verifies that it contains the expected checksum.

The keyring_aws plugin supports the functions that comprise the standard keyring service interface. Keyring operations performed by these functions are accessible at two levels:

• C interface: In C-language code, call the keyring service functions described in The Keyring Service.

• SQL interface: In SQL statements, call the user-defined functions (UDFs) described in Section 7.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

Example (using UDFs):

```sql
SELECT keyring_key_generate('MyKey', 'AES', 32);
SELECT keyring_key_remove('MyKey');
```

In addition, the keyring_aws_rotate_cmk() and keyring_aws_rotate_keys() UDFs “extend” the keyring plugin interface to provide AWS-related capabilities not covered by the standard keyring service interface. These capabilities are accessible only by calling the UDFs. There are no corresponding C-language key service functions.

The key types permitted by keyring_aws are described in Section 7.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types”.

keyring_aws Credential Changes

Assuming that the keyring_aws plugin has initialized properly at server startup, it is possible to change the credentials used for communicating with AWS KMS:

1. Use AWS KMS to create a new secret access key ID and secret access key.

2. Store the new credentials in the configuration file (the file named by the keyring_aws_conf_file system variable). The file format is as described previously.

3. Reinitialize the keyring_aws plugin so that it rereads the configuration file. Assuming that the new credentials are valid, the plugin should initialize successfully.

There are two ways to reinitialize the plugin:

• Restart the server. This is simpler and has has no side effects, but is not suitable for installations that require minimal server downtime with as few restarts as possible.

• Reinitialize the plugin without restarting the server by executing the following statements (adjust the .so suffix for your platform as necessary):
Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores

Note

In addition to loading a plugin at runtime, INSTALL PLUGIN has the side effect of registering the plugin in the mysql.plugin system table. Because of this, if you decide to stop using keyring_aws, it is not sufficient to remove the --early-plugin-load option from the set of options used to start the server. That stops the plugin from loading early, but the server still attempts to load it when it gets to the point in the startup sequence where it loads the plugins registered in mysql.plugin.

Consequently, if you execute the UNINSTALL PLUGIN plus INSTALL PLUGIN sequence just described to change the AWS KMS credentials, then to stop using keyring_aws, it is necessary to execute UNINSTALL PLUGIN again to unregister the plugin in addition to removing the --early-plugin-load option.

7.4.6 Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores

As of MySQL 5.7.21, the MySQL server supports an operational mode that enables migration of keys between underlying keyring keystores. This enables DBAs to switch a MySQL installation from one keyring plugin to another. A migration server (that is, a server started in key migration mode) does not accept client connections. Instead, it runs only long enough to migrate keys, then exits. A migration server reports errors to the console (the standard error output).

It is possible to perform offline or online key migration:

• If you are sure that no running server on the local host is using the source or destination keystore, an offline migration is possible. In this case, the migration server can modify the keystores without possibility of a running server modifying keystore content during the migration.

• If a running server on the local host is using the source or destination keystore, an online migration must be performed. In this case, the migration server connects to the running server and instructs it to pause keyring operations while key migration is in progress.

The result of a key migration operation is that the destination keystore contains the keys it had prior to the migration, plus the keys from the source keystore. The source keystore is the same before and after the migration because keys are copied, not moved. If a key to be copied already exists in the destination keystore, an error occurs and the destination keystore is restored to its premigration state.

The user who invokes the server in key-migration mode must not be the root system user, and must have permission to read and write the keyring files.

To perform a key migration operation, determine which key migration options are needed. Migration options indicate which keyring plugins are involved, and whether to perform an offline or online migration:

• To indicate the source and destination keyring plugins, specify these options:

  • --keyring-migration-source: The source keyring plugin that manages the keys to be migrated.

  • --keyring-migration-destination: The destination keyring plugin to which the migrated keys are to be copied.

These options tell the server to run in key migration mode. Both options are mandatory for all key migration operations. The source and destination plugins must differ, and the migration server must support both plugins.
Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores

• For an offline migration, no additional key migration options are needed.

  Warning
  Do not perform offline migration involving a keystore that is in use by a running server.

• For an online migration, some running server currently is using the source or destination keystore. Specify the key migration options that indicate how to connect to the running server. This is necessary so that the migration server can connect to the running server and tell it to pause keyring use during the migration operation.

Use of any of the following options signifies an online migration:

• `--keyring-migration-host`: The host where the running server is located. This is always the local host.

• `--keyring-migration-user, --keyring-migration-password`: The user name and password for the account to use to connect to the running server.

• `--keyring-migration-port`: For TCP/IP connections, the port number to connect to on the running server.

• `--keyring-migration-socket`: For Unix socket file or Windows named pipe connections, the socket file or named pipe to connect to on the running server.

For additional details about the key migration options, see Section 7.4.10, “Keyring Command Options”.

Start the migration server with the key migration options determined as just described, possibly with other options. Keep the following considerations in mind:

• Other server options might be required, such as other configuration parameters for the two keyring plugins. For example, if `keyring_file` is one of the plugins, you must set the `keyring_file_data` system variable if the keyring data file location is not the default location. Other non-keyring options may be required as well. One way to specify these options is by using `--defaults-file` to name an option file that contains the required options.

• If you invoke the migration server from a system account different from that normally used to run MySQL, it might create keyring directories or files that are inaccessible to the server during normal operation. Suppose that `mysqld` normally runs as the `mysql` system user, but you invoke the migration server while logged in as `isabel`. Any new directories or files created by the migration server will be owned by `isabel`. Subsequent startup will fail when a server run as the `mysql` system user attempts to access file system objects owned by `isabel`.

  To avoid this problem, start the migration server as the `root` system user and provide a `--user=user_name` option, where `user_name` is the system account normally used to run MySQL.

• The migration server expects path name option values to be full paths. Relative path names may not be resolved as you expect.

Example command line for offline key migration:

    mysqld --defaults-file=/usr/local/mysql/etc/my.cnf
    --keyring-migration-source=keyring_file.so
    --keyring-migration-destination=keyring_encrypted_file.so
    --keyring_encrypted_file_password=password

Example command line for online key migration:
mysqld --defaults-file=/usr/local/mysql/etc/my.cnf
   --keyring-migration-source=keyring_file.so
   --keyring-migration-destination=keyring_encrypted_file.so
   --keyring-encrypted_file_password=password
   --keyring-migration-host=localhost
   --keyring-migration-user=root
   --keyring-migration-password=root_password

The key migration server performs the migration operation as follows:

1. (Online migration only) Connect to the running server using the connection options. The account used to connect must have the `SUPER` privilege required to modify the global `keyring_operations` system variable.

2. (Online migration only) Disable `keyring_operations` on the running server. (The running server must support `keyring_operations`, which means it must be from MySQL 5.7.21 or higher.)

3. Load the source and destination keyring plugins.

4. Copy keys from the source keyring to the destination keyring.

5. Unload the keyring plugins.

6. (Online migration only) Enable `keyring_operations` on the running server.

7. (Online migration only) Disconnect from the running server.

8. Exit.

If an error occurs during key migration, any keys that were copied to the destination plugin are removed, leaving the destination keystore unchanged.

**Important**

For an online migration operation, the migration server takes care of enabling and disabling `keyring_operations` on the running server. However, if the migration server exits abnormally (for example, if someone forcibly terminates it), it is possible that `keyring_operations` will not have been re-enabled on the running server, leaving it unable to perform keyring operations. In this case, it may be necessary to connect to the running server and enable `keyring_operations` manually.

After a successful online key migration operation, the running server might need to be restarted:

- If the running server was using the source keystore, it need not be restarted after the migration.

- If the running server was using the source keystore before the migration but should use the destination keystore after the migration, it must be reconfigured to use the destination keyring plugin and restarted.

- If the running server was using the destination keystore and will continue to use it, it should be restarted after the migration to load all keys migrated into the destination keystore.

**Note**

MySQL server key migration mode supports pausing a single running server. To perform a key migration if multiple key servers are using the keystores involved, use this procedure:

1. Connect to each running server manually and set `keyring_operations=OFF`.

2. Use the migration server to perform an offline key migration.
3. Connect to each running server manually and set `keyring_operations=ON`.
All running servers must support the `keyring_operations=ON` system variable.

### 7.4.7 Supported Keyring Key Types

MySQL Keyring supports generating keys of different types (encryption algorithms) and lengths. The available key types depend on which keyring plugin is installed. A given plugin may also impose constraints on key lengths per key type.

Table 7.15, “Keyring Plugin Key Types” summarizes the permitted key types per keyring plugin. Lengths are in bytes. For a key generated using one of the keyring user-defined functions (UDFs) described in Section 7.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”, the length can be no more than 2,048 bytes, due to limitations of the UDF interface.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin Name</th>
<th>Permitted Key Type</th>
<th>Permitted Key Lengths for Key Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>keyring_encrypted_file</td>
<td>AES, DSA, RSA</td>
<td>No special restrictions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keyring_file</td>
<td>AES, DSA, RSA</td>
<td>No special restrictions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keyring_okv</td>
<td>AES</td>
<td>16, 24, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keyring_aws</td>
<td>AES</td>
<td>16, 24, 32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.4.8 General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions

MySQL Server supports a keyring service that enables internal server components and plugins to securely store sensitive information for later retrieval.

As of MySQL 5.7.13, MySQL Server includes an SQL interface for keyring key management, implemented as a set of general-purpose user-defined functions (UDFs) that access the functions provided by the internal keyring service. The keyring UDFs are contained in a plugin library file, which also contains a `keyring_udf` plugin that must be enabled prior to UDF invocation. For these UDFs to be used, a keyring plugin such as `keyring_file` or `keyring_okv` must be enabled.

The UDFs described here are general purpose and intended for use with any keyring plugin. A given keyring plugin might have UDFs of its own that are intended for use only with that plugin; see Section 7.4.9, “Plugin-Specific Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

The following sections provide installation instructions for the keyring UDFs and demonstrate how to use them. For information about the keyring service functions invoked by the UDFs, see The Keyring Service. For general keyring information, see Section 7.4, “The MySQL Keyring”.

#### 7.4.8.1 Installing or Uninstalling General-Purpose Keyring Functions

This section describes how to install or uninstall the keyring user-defined functions (UDFs), which are implemented in a plugin library file that also contains a `keyring_udf` plugin. For general information
about installing or uninstalling plugins and UDFs, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins, and Installing and Uninstalling User-Defined Functions.

The keyring UDFs enable keyring key management operations, but the keyring_udf plugin must also be installed because the UDFs will not work correctly without it. Attempts to use the UDFs without the keyring_udf plugin result in an error.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of plugin_dir at server startup.

The plugin library file base name is keyring_udf. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, .so for Unix and Unix-like systems, .dll for Windows).

To install the keyring_udf plugin and the UDFs, use the INSTALL PLUGIN and CREATE FUNCTION statements (adjust the .so suffix for your platform as necessary):

| INSTALL PLUGIN keyring_udf SONAME 'keyring_udf.so'; |
| CREATE FUNCTION keyring_key_generate RETURNS INTEGER SONAME 'keyring_udf.so'; |
| CREATE FUNCTION keyring_key_fetch RETURNS STRING SONAME 'keyring_udf.so'; |
| CREATE FUNCTION keyring_key_length_fetch RETURNS INTEGER SONAME 'keyring_udf.so'; |
| CREATE FUNCTION keyring_key_type_fetch RETURNS STRING SONAME 'keyring_udf.so'; |
| CREATE FUNCTION keyring_key_store RETURNS INTEGER SONAME 'keyring_udf.so'; |
| CREATE FUNCTION keyring_key_remove RETURNS INTEGER SONAME 'keyring_udf.so'; |

If the plugin and UDFs are used on a master replication server, install them on all slave servers as well to avoid replication problems.

Once installed as just described, the plugin and UDFs remain installed until uninstalled. To remove them, use the UNINSTALL PLUGIN and DROP FUNCTION statements:

| UNINSTALL PLUGIN keyring_udf; |
| DROP FUNCTION keyring_key_generate; |
| DROP FUNCTION keyring_key_fetch; |
| DROP FUNCTION keyring_key_length_fetch; |
| DROP FUNCTION keyring_key_type_fetch; |
| DROP FUNCTION keyring_key_store; |
| DROP FUNCTION keyring_key_remove; |

7.4.8.2 Using General-Purpose Keyring Functions

Before using the keyring user-defined functions (UDFs), install them according to the instructions provided in Section 7.4.8.1, “Installing or Uninstalling General-Purpose Keyring Functions”.

The keyring UDFs are subject to these constraints:

- To use any keyring UDF, the keyring_udf plugin must be enabled. Otherwise, an error occurs:

```
ERROR 1123 (HY000): Can't initialize function 'keyring_key_generate';
This function requires keyring_udf plugin which is not installed.
Please install
```

To install the keyring_udf plugin, see Section 7.4.8.1, “Installing or Uninstalling General-Purpose Keyring Functions”.

- The keyring UDFs invoke keyring service functions (see The Keyring Service). The service functions in turn use whatever keyring plugin is installed (for example, keyring_file or keyring_okv).
Therefore, to use any keyring UDF, some underlying keyring plugin must be enabled. Otherwise, an error occurs:

```
ERROR 3188 (HY000): Function 'keyring_key_generate' failed because underlying keyring service returned an error. Please check if a keyring plugin is installed and that provided arguments are valid for the keying you are using.
```

To install a keyring plugin, see Section 7.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”.

- To use any keyring UDF, a user must possess the global `EXECUTE` privilege. Otherwise, an error occurs:

```
ERROR 1123 (HY000): Can't initialize function 'keyring_key_generate'; The user is not privileged to execute this function. User needs to have EXECUTE
```

To grant the global `EXECUTE` privilege to a user, use this statement:

```
GRANT EXECUTE ON *.* TO user;
```

Alternatively, should you prefer to avoid granting the global `EXECUTE` privilege while still permitting users to access specific key-management operations, “wrapper” stored programs can be defined (a technique described later in this section).

- A key stored in the keyring by a given user can be manipulated later only by the same user. That is, the value of the `CURRENT_USER()` function at the time of key manipulation must have the same value as when the key was stored in the keyring. (This constraint rules out the use of the keyring UDFs for manipulation of instance-wide keys, such as those created by InnoDB to support tablespace encryption.)

To enable multiple users to perform operations on the same key, “wrapper” stored programs can be defined (a technique described later in this section).

- Keyring UDFs support the key types and lengths supported by the underlying keyring plugin, with the additional constraint that keys cannot be longer than 2,048 bytes (16,384 bits), due to limitations of the UDF interface. See Section 7.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types”.

To create a new random key and store it in the keyring, call `keyring_key_generate()`, passing to it an ID for the key, along with the key type (encryption method) and its length in bytes. The following call creates a 2,048-bit DSA-encrypted key named `MyKey`:

```
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate('MyKey', 'DSA', 256);
+-------------------------------------------+
| keyring_key_generate('MyKey', 'DSA', 256) |
+-------------------------------------------+
|                                         1 |
+-------------------------------------------+
```

A return value of 1 indicates success. If the key cannot be created, the return value is `NULL` and an error occurs. One reason this might be is that the underlying keyring plugin does not support the specified combination of key type and key length; see Section 7.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types”.

To be able to check the return type regardless of whether an error occurs, use `SELECT ... INTO @var_name` and test the variable value:

```
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate('', '', -1) INTO @x;
ERROR 3188 (HY000): Function 'keyring_key_generate' failed because underlying keyring service returned an error. Please check if a keyring plugin is installed and that provided arguments are valid
```
for the keyring you are using.

```sql
mysql> SELECT @x;
+-----+
| @x  |
+-----+
| NULL |
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate('x', 'AES', 16) INTO @x;
mysql> SELECT @x;
+-----+
| @x  |
+-----+
|    1 |
```

This technique also applies to other keyring UDFs that for failure return a value and an error.

The ID passed to `keyring_key_generate()` provides a means by which to refer to the key in subsequent UDF calls. For example, use the key ID to retrieve its type as a string or its length in bytes as an integer:

```sql
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_type_fetch('MyKey');
+---------------------------------+
| keyring_key_type_fetch('MyKey') |
+---------------------------------+
| DSA                             |
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_length_fetch('MyKey');
+-----------------------------------+
| keyring_key_length_fetch('MyKey') |
+-----------------------------------+
|                               256 |
```

To retrieve a key value, pass the key ID to `keyring_key_fetch()`. The following example uses `HEX()` to display the key value because it may contain nonprintable characters. The example also uses a short key for brevity, but be aware that longer keys provide better security:

```sql
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate('MyShortKey', 'DSA', 8);
+----------------------------------------------+
| keyring_key_generate('MyShortKey', 'DSA', 8) |
+----------------------------------------------+
|                                            1 |
mysql> SELECT HEX(keyring_key_fetch('MyShortKey'));
+--------------------------------------+
| HEX(keyring_key_fetch('MyShortKey'))   |
+--------------------------------------+
| 1DB3B0FC3328A24C                      |
```

Keyring UDFs treat key IDs, types, and values as binary strings, so comparisons are case-sensitive. For example, IDs of `MyKey` and `mykey` refer to different keys.

To remove a key, pass the key ID to `keyring_key_remove()`:

```sql
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_remove('MyKey');
+-----------------------------+
| keyring_key_remove('MyKey') |
+-----------------------------+
|                           1 |
```

To obfuscate and store a key that you provide, pass the key ID, type, and value to `keyring_key_store()`:
As indicated previously, a user must have the global `EXECUTE` privilege to call keyring UDFs, and the user who stores a key in the keyring initially must be the same user who performs subsequent operations on the key later, as determined from the `CURRENT_USER()` value in effect for each UDF call. To permit key operations to users who do not have the global `EXECUTE` privilege or who may not be the key “owner,” use this technique:

1. Define “wrapper” stored programs that encapsulate the required key operations and have a `DEFINER` value equal to the key owner.

2. Grant the `EXECUTE` privilege for specific stored programs to the individual users who should be able to invoke them.

3. If the operations implemented by the wrapper stored programs do not include key creation, create any necessary keys in advance, using the account named as the `DEFINER` in the stored program definitions.

This technique enables keys to be shared among users and provides to DBAs more fine-grained control over who can do what with keys, without having to grant global privileges.

The following example shows how to set up a shared key named `SharedKey` that is owned by the DBA, and a `get_shared_key()` stored function that provides access to the current key value. The value can be retrieved by any user with the `EXECUTE` privilege for that function, which is created in the `key_schema` schema.

From a MySQL administrative account (‘root’@‘localhost’ in this example), create the administrative schema and the stored function to access the key:

```sql
mysql> CREATE SCHEMA key_schema;
mysql> CREATE DEFINER = 'root'@'localhost'
    FUNCTION key_schema.get_shared_key()
    RETURNS BLOB READS SQL DATA
    RETURN keyring_key_fetch('SharedKey');
```

From the administrative account, ensure that the shared key exists:

```sql
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate('SharedKey', 'DSA', 8);
+---------------------------------------------+
| keyring_key_generate('SharedKey', 'DSA', 8) |
+---------------------------------------------+
|                                           1 |
```

From the administrative account, create an ordinary user account to which key access is to be granted:

```sql
mysql> CREATE USER 'key_user'@'localhost'
    IDENTIFIED BY 'key_user_pwd';
```

From the `key_user` account, verify that, without the proper `EXECUTE` privilege, the new account cannot access the shared key:

```sql
mysql> SELECT HEX(key_schema.get_shared_key());
ERROR 1370 (42000): execute command denied to user 'key_user'@'localhost'
```
General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions

```sql
for routine 'key_schema.get_shared_key'
```

From the administrative account, grant `EXECUTE` to `key_user` for the stored function:

```sql
mysql> GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION key_schema.get_shared_key
    TO 'key_user'@'localhost';
```

From the `key_user` account, verify that the key is now accessible:

```sql
mysql> SELECT HEX(key_schema.get_shared_key());
```

```
+-----------------------------------+
| HEX(key_schema.get_shared_key())  |
| 9BAFB9E75CEEB013                  |
+-----------------------------------+
```

### 7.4.8.3 General-Purpose Keyring Function Reference

For each general-purpose keyring user-defined function (UDF), this section describes its purpose, calling sequence, and return value. For information about the conditions under which these UDFs can be invoked, see Section 7.4.8.2, “Using General-Purpose Keyring Functions”.

- `keyring_key_fetch(key_id)`

  Given a key ID, deobfuscates and returns the key value.

  **Arguments:**

  - `key_id`: A string that specifies the key ID.

  **Return value:**

  Returns the key value as a string for success, `NULL` if the key does not exist, or `NULL` and an error for failure.

  **Note**

  Keyring values retrieved using `keyring_key_fetch()` are limited to 2,048 bytes, due to limitations of the UDF interface. A keyring value longer than that length can be stored using a keyring service function (see The Keyring Service), but if retrieved using `keyring_key_fetch()`, is truncated to 2,048 bytes.

**Example:**

```sql
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate('RSA_key', 'RSA', 16);
```

```
+--------------------------------------------+
| keyring_key_generate('RSA_key', 'RSA', 16) |
|                                          1 |
+--------------------------------------------+

mysql> SELECT HEX(keyring_key_fetch('RSA_key'));
```

```
+-----------------------------------+
| HEX(keyring_key_fetch('RSA_key'))  |
| 91C2253B696064D3556984B6630F891A    |
+-----------------------------------+
```

mysql> SELECT keyring_key_type_fetch('RSA_key');
```

```
+-----------------------------------+
| keyring_key_type_fetch('RSA_key') |
| RSA                               |
+-----------------------------------+
```
The example uses `HEX()` to display the key value because it may contain nonprintable characters. The example also uses a short key for brevity, but be aware that longer keys provide better security.

- `keyring_key_generate(key_id, key_type, key_length)`
  
  Generates a new random key with a given ID, type, and length, and stores it in the keyring. The type and length values must be consistent with the values supported by the underlying keyring plugin, with the additional constraint that keys cannot be longer than 2,048 bytes (16,384 bits), due to limitations of the UDF interface. For the permitted types per plugin, see The Keyring Service.

  Arguments:
  
  - `key_id`: A string that specifies the key ID.
  - `key_type`: A string that specifies the key type.
  - `key_length`: An integer that specifies the key length in bytes. The maximum length is 2,048.

  Return value:

  Returns 1 for success, or `NULL` and an error for failure.

  Example:

  
  ```
  mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate('RSA_key', 'RSA', 384);
  +---------------------------------------------+
  | keyring_key_generate('RSA_key', 'RSA', 384) |
  +---------------------------------------------+
  |                                           1 |
  +---------------------------------------------+
  ```

- `keyring_key_length_fetch(key_id)`
  
  Given a key ID, returns the key length.

  Arguments:

  - `key_id`: A string that specifies the key ID.

  Return value:

  Returns the key length in bytes as an integer for success, `NULL` if the key does not exist, or `NULL` and an error for failure.

  Example:

  See the description of `keyring_key_fetch()`.

- `keyring_key_remove(key_id)`
  
  Removes the key with a given ID from the keyring.

  Arguments:

  - `key_id`: A string that specifies the key ID.

  Return value:
Returns 1 for success, or NULL for failure.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_remove('AES_key');
+-------------------------------+
| keyring_key_remove('AES_key') |
| 1                             |
+-------------------------------+
```

• `keyring_key_store(key_id, key_type, key)`

Obfuscates and stores a key in the keyring.

Arguments:

• `key_id`: A string that specifies the key ID.
• `key_type`: A string that specifies the key type.
• `key`: A string that specifies the key value.

Return value:

Returns 1 for success, or NULL and an error for failure.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_store('new key', 'DSA', 'My key value');
+-----------------------------------------------------+
| keyring_key_store('new key', 'DSA', 'My key value') |
| 1                                                   |
+-----------------------------------------------------+
```

• `keyring_key_type_fetch(key_id)`

Given a key ID, returns the key type.

Arguments:

• `key_id`: A string that specifies the key ID.

Return value:

Returns the key type as a string for success, NULL if the key does not exist, or NULL and an error for failure.

Example:

See the description of `keyring_key_fetch()`.

### 7.4.9 Plugin-Specific Keyring Key-Management Functions

For each keyring plugin-specific user-defined function (UDF), this section describes its purpose, calling sequence, and return value. For information about general-purpose keyring UDFs, see Section 7.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

• `keyring_aws_rotate_cmk()`

This UDF is associated with the `keyring_aws` plugin. Its use requires the `SUPER` privilege.
keyring_aws_rotate_cmk() rotates the customer master key (CMK). Rotation changes only the key that AWS KMS uses for subsequent data key-encryption operations. AWS KMS maintains previous CMK versions, so keys generated using previous CMKs remain decryptable after rotation.

Rotation changes the CMK value used inside AWS KMS but does not change the ID used to refer to it, so there is no need to change the keyring_aws_cmk_id system variable after calling keyring_aws_rotate_cmk().

Arguments:
None.

Return value:
Returns 1 for success, or NULL and an error for failure.

keyring_aws_rotate_keys()
This UDF is associated with the keyring_aws plugin. Its use requires the SUPER privilege.

keyring_aws_rotate_keys() rotates keys stored in the keyring_aws storage file named by the keyring_aws_data_file system variable. Rotation sends each key stored in the file to AWS KMS for re-encryption using the value of the keyring_aws_cmk_id system variable as the CMK value, and stores the new encrypted keys in the file.

keyring_aws_rotate_keys() is useful for key re-encryption under these circumstances:

• After rotating the CMK; that is, after invoking the keyring_aws_rotate_cmk() UDF
• After changing the keyring_aws_cmk_id system variable to a different key value

Arguments:
None.

Return value:
Returns 1 for success, or NULL and an error for failure.

7.4.10 Keyring Command Options
MySQL supports the following keyring-related command-line options:

• --keyring-migration-destination=plugin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--keyring-migration-destination=plugin_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The destination keyring plugin for key migration. See Section 7.4.6, ‘Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores’. The format and interpretation of the option value is the same as described for the --keyring-migration-source option.

Note
--keyring-migration-source and --keyring-migration-destination are mandatory for all keyring migration operations. The source
and destination plugins must differ, and the migration server must support both plugins.

- **--keyring-migration-host=host_name**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--keyring-migration-host=host_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>localhost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The host location of the running server that is currently using one of the key migration keystores. See Section 7.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”. Migration always occurs on the local host, so the option always specifies a value for connecting to a local server, such as `localhost`, `127.0.0.1`, `::1`, or the local host IP address or host name.

- **--keyring-migration-password[=password]**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--keyring-migration-password[=password]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The password for connecting to the running server that is currently using one of the key migration keystores. See Section 7.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”. If you omit the `password` value following the option name on the command line, the server prompts for one.

Specifying a password on the command line should be considered insecure. See Section 2.2.1, “End-User Guidelines for Password Security”. You can use an option file to avoid giving the password on the command line. In this case, the file should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the migration server.

- **--keyring-migration-port=port_num**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--keyring-migration-port=port_num</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>3306</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For TCP/IP connections, the port number for connecting to the running server that is currently using one of the key migration keystores. See Section 7.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”.

- **--keyring-migration-socket=path**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--keyring-migration-socket={file_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For Unix socket file or Windows named pipe connections, the socket file or named pipe for connecting to the running server that is currently using one of the key migration keystores. See Section 7.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”.

- **--keyring-migration-source=plugin**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--keyring-migration-source=plugin_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The source keyring plugin for key migration. See Section 7.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”.

The option value is similar to that for **--plugin-load**, except that only one plugin library can be specified. The value is given as name=plugin_library or plugin_library. The name is the name of a plugin to load, and plugin_library is the name of the library file that contains the plugin code. If the plugin library is named without any preceding plugin name, the server loads all plugins in the library. The server looks for plugin library files in the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable.

Note

**--keyring-migration-source** and **--keyring-migration-destination** are mandatory for all keyring migration operations. The source and destination plugins must differ, and the migration server must support both plugins.

- **--keyring-migration-user=user_name**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--keyring-migration-user=user_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The user name for connecting to the running server that is currently using one of the key migration keystores. See Section 7.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”.

### 7.4.11 Keyring System Variables

MySQL Keyring plugins support the following system variables. Use them to configure keyring plugin operation. These variables are unavailable unless the appropriate keyring plugin is installed (see Section 7.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”).

- **keyring_aws_cmk_id**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--keyring-aws-cmk-id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>keyring_aws_cmk_id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The customer master key (CMK) ID obtained from the AWS KMS server and used by the keyring_aws plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed, but if it is installed, a value for this variable is mandatory.

- **keyring_aws_conf_file**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--keyring-aws-conf-file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>keyring_aws_conf_file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>File name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>platform specific</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The location of the configuration file for the keyring_aws keyring plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed.

At plugin startup, keyring_aws reads the AWS secret access key ID and key from the configuration file. For the keyring_aws plugin to start successfully, the configuration file must exist and contain valid secret access key information, initialized as described in Section 7.4.5, “Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin”.

The default file name is keyring_aws_conf, located in the default keyring file directory. The location of this default directory is the same as for the keyring_file_data system variable. See the description of that variable for details, as well as for considerations to take into account if you create the directory manually.

- **keyring_aws_data_file**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--keyring-aws-data-file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>keyring_aws_data_file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>File name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>platform specific</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The location of the storage file for the keyring_aws keyring plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed.

At plugin startup, if the value assigned to keyring_aws_data_file specifies a file that does not exist, the keyring_aws plugin attempts to create it (as well as its parent directory, if necessary). If the file does exist, keyring_aws reads any encrypted keys contained in the file into its in-memory cache. keyring_aws does not cache unencrypted keys in memory.

The default file name is keyring_aws_data, located in the default keyring file directory. The location of this default directory is the same as for the keyring_file_data system variable. See the description of that variable for details, as well as for considerations to take into account if you create the directory manually.

- **keyring_aws_region**
### Keyring System Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Command-Line Format</strong></td>
<td><code>--keyring-aws-region</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduced</strong></td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
<td><code>keyring_aws_region</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope</strong></td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic</strong></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Value</strong></td>
<td><code>us-east-1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Valid Values</strong></td>
<td><code>ap-northeast-1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ap-northeast-2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ap-south-1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ap-southeast-1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>ap-southeast-2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>eu-central-1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>eu-west-1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>sa-east-1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>us-east-1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>us-west-1</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>us-west-2</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The AWS region.

- `keyring_encrypted_file_data`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Command-Line Format</strong></td>
<td><code>--keyring-encrypted-file-data=file_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduced</strong></td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
<td><code>keyring_encrypted_file_data</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope</strong></td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic</strong></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>File name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Value</strong></td>
<td><code>platform specific</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The path name of the data file used for secure data storage by the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed. The file location should be in a directory considered for use only by keyring plugins. For example, do not locate the file under the data directory.

Keyring operations are transactional: The `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin uses a backup file during write operations to ensure that it can roll back to the original file if an operation fails. The backup file has the same name as the value of the `keyring_encrypted_file_data` system variable with a suffix of `.backup`.

Do not use the same `keyring_encrypted_file` data file for multiple MySQL instances. Each instance should have its own unique data file.

The default file name is `keyring_encrypted`, located in a directory that is platform specific and depends on the value of the `INSTALL_LAYOUT` CMake option, as shown in the following table. To specify the default directory for the file explicitly if you are building from source, use the `INSTALL_MYSQLKEYRINGDIR` CMake option.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>INSTALL_LAYOUT</code> Value</th>
<th>Default <code>keyring_encrypted_file_data</code> Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEB, RPM, SLES, SVR4</td>
<td><code>/var/lib/mysql-keyring/keyring_encrypted</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otherwise</td>
<td><code>keyring/keyring_encrypted</code> under the CMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

At plugin startup, if the value assigned to `keyring_encrypted_file_data` specifies a file that does not exist, the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin attempts to create it (as well as its parent directory, if necessary).

If you create the directory manually, it should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server. For example, on Unix and Unix-like systems, to use the `/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring` directory, the following commands (executed as `root`) create the directory and set its mode and ownership:

```bash
cd /usr/local/mysql
mkdir mysql-keyring
chmod 750 mysql-keyring
chown mysql mysql-keyring
chgrp mysql mysql-keyring
```

If the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin cannot create or access its data file, it writes an error message to the error log. If an attempted runtime assignment to `keyring_encrypted_file_data` results in an error, the variable value remains unchanged.

---

**Important**

Once the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin has created its data file and started to use it, it is important not to remove the file. Loss of the file will cause data encrypted using its keys to become inaccessible. (It is permissible to rename or move the file, as long as you change the value of `keyring_encrypted_file_data` to match.)

---

* `keyring_encrypted_file_password`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-encrypted-file-password</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>keyring_encrypted_file_password</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The password used by the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed. The password is mandatory for plugin operation; if not specified at server startup, `keyring_encrypted_file` initialization fails.
If this variable is specified in an option file, the file should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server.

**Important**

Once the `keyring_encrypted_file_password` value has been set, changing it does not rotate the keyring password and could make the server inaccessible. If an incorrect password is provided, the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin cannot load keys from the encrypted keyring file.

The password value cannot be displayed at runtime with `SHOW VARIABLES` or the Performance Schena `global_variables` table because the display value is obfuscated.

- `keyring_file_data`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-file-data=file_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>keyring_file_data</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>File name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>platform specific</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The path name of the data file used for secure data storage by the `keyring_file` plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed. The file location should be in a directory considered for use only by keyring plugins. For example, do not locate the file under the data directory.

Keyring operations are transactional: The `keyring_file` plugin uses a backup file during write operations to ensure that it can roll back to the original file if an operation fails. The backup file has the same name as the value of the `keyring_file_data` system variable with a suffix of `.backup`.

Do not use the same `keyring_file` data file for multiple MySQL instances. Each instance should have its own unique data file.

The default file name is `keyring`, located in a directory that is platform specific and depends on the value of the `INSTALL_LAYOUT` CMake option, as shown in the following table. To specify the default directory for the file explicitly if you are building from source, use the `INSTALL_MYSQLKEYRINGDIR` CMake option.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>INSTALL_LAYOUT</code> Value</th>
<th>Default <code>keyring_file_data</code> Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEB, RPM, SLES, SVR4</td>
<td><code>/var/lib/mysql-keyring/keyring</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otherwise</td>
<td><code>keyring/keyring</code> under the CMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

At plugin startup, if the value assigned to `keyring_file_data` specifies a file that does not exist, the `keyring_file` plugin attempts to create it (as well as its parent directory, if necessary).

If you create the directory manually, it should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server. For example, on Unix and Unix-like systems, to use the `/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring` directory, the following commands (executed as `root`) create the directory and set its mode and ownership:

```
cd /usr/local/mysql
```
If the `keyring_file` plugin cannot create or access its data file, it writes an error message to the error log. If an attempted runtime assignment to `keyring_file_data` results in an error, the variable value remains unchanged.

**Important**

Once the `keyring_file` plugin has created its data file and started to use it, it is important not to remove the file. For example, InnoDB uses the file to store the master key used to decrypt the data in tables that use InnoDB tablespace encryption; see InnoDB Tablespace Encryption. Loss of the file will cause data in such tables to become inaccessible. (It is permissible to rename or move the file, as long as you change the value of `keyring_file_data` to match.) It is recommended that you create a separate backup of the keyring data file immediately after you create the first encrypted table and before and after master key rotation.

- **keyring_okv_conf_dir**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-okv-conf-dir=dir_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>keyring_okv_conf_dir</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Directory name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>empty_string</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The path name of the directory that stores configuration information used by the `keyring_okv` plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed. The location should be a directory considered for use only by the `keyring_okv` plugin. For example, do not locate the directory under the data directory.

The default `keyring_okv_conf_dir` value is empty. For the `keyring_okv` plugin to be able to access Oracle Key Vault, the value must be set to a directory that contains Oracle Key Vault configuration and SSL materials. For instructions on setting up this directory, see Section 7.4.4, "Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin".

The directory should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server. For example, on Unix and Unix-like systems, to use the `/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring-okv` directory, the following commands (executed as `root`) create the directory and set its mode and ownership:

```bash
cd /usr/local/mysql
mkdir mysql-keyring-okv
chmod 750 mysql-keyring-okv
chown mysql mysql-keyring-okv
chgrp mysql mysql-keyring-okv
```

If the value assigned to `keyring_okv_conf_dir` specifies a directory that does not exist, or that does not contain configuration information that enables a connection to Oracle Key Vault to be established, `keyring_okv` writes an error message to the error log. If an attempted runtime
assignment to `keyring_okv_conf_dir` results in an error, the variable value and keyring operation remain unchanged.

- **keyring_operations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>keyring_operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whether keyring operations are enabled. This variable is used during key migration operations. See Section 7.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”.

### 7.5 MySQL Enterprise Audit

**Note**

MySQL Enterprise Audit is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see [https://www.mysql.com/products/](https://www.mysql.com/products/).

MySQL Enterprise Edition includes MySQL Enterprise Audit, implemented using a server plugin named `audit_log`. MySQL Enterprise Audit uses the open MySQL Audit API to enable standard, policy-based monitoring, logging, and blocking of connection and query activity executed on specific MySQL servers. Designed to meet the Oracle audit specification, MySQL Enterprise Audit provides an out of box, easy to use auditing and compliance solution for applications that are governed by both internal and external regulatory guidelines.

When installed, the audit plugin enables MySQL Server to produce a log file containing an audit record of server activity. The log contents include when clients connect and disconnect, and what actions they perform while connected, such as which databases and tables they access.

After you install the audit plugin (see Section 7.5.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit”), it writes an audit log file. By default, the file is named `audit.log` in the server data directory. To change the name of the file, set the `audit_log_file` system variable at server startup.

By default, audit log file contents are written in new-style XML format, without compression or encryption. To select the file format, set the `audit_log_format` system variable at server startup. For details on file format and contents, see Section 7.5.4, “Audit Log File Formats”.

For more information about controlling how logging occurs, including audit log file naming and format selection, see Section 7.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Control”. To perform filtering of audited events, see Section 7.5.6, “Audit Log Filtering”. For descriptions of the parameters used to configure the audit log plugin, see Section 7.5.8.4, “Audit Log Options and Variables”.

If the audit log plugin is enabled, the Performance Schema (see MySQL Performance Schema) has instrumentation for it. To identify the relevant instruments, use this query:

```sql
SELECT NAME FROM performance_schema.setup_instruments
WHERE NAME LIKE '%/alog/%';
```

### 7.5.1 Audit Log Components

MySQL Enterprise Audit is based on the audit log plugin and related components:
Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit

- A server-side plugin named `audit_log` examines auditable events and determines whether to write them to the audit log.
- User-defined functions enable manipulation of filtering definitions that control logging behavior, the encryption password, and log file reading.
- Tables in the `mysql` system database provide persistent storage of filter and user account data.
- System variables enable audit log configuration and status variables provide runtime operational information.

**Note**
Prior to MySQL 5.7.13, MySQL Enterprise Audit consists only of the `audit_log` plugin and operates in legacy mode. See Section 7.5.7, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”.

### 7.5.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit

This section describes how to install or uninstall MySQL Enterprise Audit, which is implemented using the audit log plugin and related components described in Section 7.5.1, “Audit Log Components”. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

**Note**
If installed, the `audit_log` plugin involves some minimal overhead even when disabled. To avoid this overhead, do not install MySQL Enterprise Audit unless you plan to use it.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

**Note**
The instructions here apply for MySQL 5.7.13 or higher. For MySQL versions prior to 5.7.13, see Installing MySQL Enterprise Audit in MySQL 5.6 Reference Manual.

Also, prior to MySQL 5.7.13, MySQL Enterprise Audit consists only of the `audit_log` plugin and includes none of the other components described in Section 7.5.1, “Audit Log Components”. As of MySQL 5.7.13, if the `audit_log` plugin is already installed from a version of MySQL prior to 5.7.13, uninstall it using the following statement and restart the server before installing the current version:

```
UNINSTALL PLUGIN audit_log;
```

To install MySQL Enterprise Audit, look in the `share` directory of your MySQL installation and choose the script that is appropriate for your platform. The available scripts differ in the suffix used to refer to the plugin library file:

- `audit_log_filter_win_install.sql`: Choose this script for Windows systems that use `.dll` as the file name suffix.
- `audit_log_filter_linux_install.sql`: Choose this script for Linux and similar systems that use `.so` as the file name suffix.

Run the script as follows. The example here uses the Linux installation script. Make the appropriate substitution for your system.
Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit

```
shell> mysql -u root -p < audit_log_filter_linux_install.sql
Enter password: (enter root password here)
```

**Note**

Some MySQL versions have introduced changes to the structure of the MySQL Enterprise Audit tables. To ensure that your tables are up to date for upgrades from earlier versions of MySQL 5.7, run `mysql_update --force` (which will also perform any other needed updates). If you prefer to run the update statements only for the MySQL Enterprise Audit tables, see the following discussion.

As of MySQL 5.7.23, for new MySQL installations, the **USER** and **HOST** columns in the `audit_log_user` table used by MySQL Enterprise Audit have definitions that better correspond to the definitions of the **User** and **Host** columns in the `mysql.user` system table. For upgrades to an installation for which MySQL Enterprise Audit is already installed, it is recommended that you alter the table definitions as follows:

```
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_user
  DROP FOREIGN KEY audit_log_user_ibfk_1;
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_filter
  ENGINE=InnoDB;
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_filter
  CONVERT TO CHARACTER SET utf8 COLLATE utf8_bin;
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_user
  ENGINE=InnoDB;
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_user
  CONVERT TO CHARACTER SET utf8 COLLATE utf8_bin;
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_user
  MODIFY COLUMN USER VARCHAR(32);
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_user
  ADD FOREIGN KEY (FILTERNAME) REFERENCES mysql.audit_log_filter(NAME);
```

As of MySQL 5.7.21, for a new installation of MySQL Enterprise Audit, **InnoDB** is used instead of **MyISAM** for the audit log tables. For upgrades to a 5.7.21 or 5.7.22 installation for which MySQL Enterprise Audit is already installed, it is recommended that you alter the audit log tables to use **InnoDB**:

```
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_user ENGINE=InnoDB;
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_filter ENGINE=InnoDB;
```

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE 'audit%';
```

```
+-------------+---------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUGIN_NAME</th>
<th>PLUGIN_STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audit_log</td>
<td>ACTIVE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+-------------+---------------+
```

If the plugin fails to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

After MySQL Enterprise Audit is installed, you can use the `--audit-log` option for subsequent server startups to control **audit_log** plugin activation. For example, to prevent the plugin from being removed at runtime, use this option:

```
[mysqld]
```
If it is desired to prevent the server from running without the audit plugin, use `--audit-log` with a value of `FORCE` or `FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT` to force server startup to fail if the plugin does not initialize successfully.

**Important**

By default, rule-based audit log filtering logs no auditable events for any users. This differs from legacy audit log behavior (prior to MySQL 5.7.13), which logs all auditable events for all users (see Section 7.5.7, "Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering"). Should you wish to produce log-everything behavior with rule-based filtering, create a simple filter to enable logging and assign it to the default account:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_filter('log_all', '{ "filter": { "log": true } }');
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('%', 'log_all');
```

The filter assigned to `%` is used for connections from any account that has no explicitly assigned filter (which initially is true for all accounts).

Once installed as just described, MySQL Enterprise Audit remains installed until uninstalled. To remove it, execute the following statements:

```sql
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS mysql.audit_log_filter;
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS mysql.audit_log_user;
UNINSTALL PLUGIN audit_log;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_filter_set_filter;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_filter_remove_filter;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_filter_set_user;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_filter_remove_user;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_filter_flush;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_encryption_password_get;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_encryption_password_set;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_read;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_read_bookmark;
```

### 7.5.3 MySQL Enterprise Audit Security Considerations

By default, contents of audit log files produced by the audit log plugin are not encrypted and may contain sensitive information, such as the text of SQL statements. For security reasons, audit log files should be written to a directory accessible only to the MySQL server and to users with a legitimate reason to view the log. The default file name is `audit.log` in the data directory. This can be changed by setting the `audit_log_file` system variable at server startup. Other audit log files may exist due to log rotation.

For additional security, enable audit log file encryption. See Audit Log File Encryption.

### 7.5.4 Audit Log File Formats

The MySQL server calls the audit log plugin to write an audit record to its log file whenever an auditable event occurs. Typically the first audit record written after plugin startup contains the server description and startup options. Elements following that one represent events such as client connect and disconnect events, executed SQL statements, and so forth. Only top-level statements are logged, not statements within stored programs such as triggers or stored procedures. Contents of files referenced by statements such as `LOAD DATA` are not logged.

To select the log format that the audit log plugin uses to write its log file, set the `audit_log_format` system variable at server startup. These formats are available:

- Old-style XML format (`audit_log_format=OLD`): The original audit log format used by default in older MySQL series.
• New-style XML format (**audit_log_format=NEW**): An XML format that has better compatibility with Oracle Audit Vault than old-style XML format. MySQL 5.7 uses new-style XML format by default.

• JSON format (**audit_log_format=JSON**)

By default, audit log file contents are written in new-style XML format, without compression or encryption.

**Note**

For information about issues to consider when changing the log format, see *Audit Log File Format*.

The following sections describe the available audit logging formats:

• **Old-Style XML Audit Log File Format**

• **New-Style XML Audit Log File Format**

• **JSON Audit Log File Format**

**Old-Style XML Audit Log File Format**

Here is a sample log file in old-style XML format (**audit_log_format=OLD**), reformatted slightly for readability:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?><AUDIT>
  <AUDIT_RECORD
    TIMESTAMP="2017-10-16T14:25:00 UTC"
    RECORD_ID="1_2017-10-16T14:25:00"
    NAME="Audit"
    SERVER_ID="1"
    VERSION="1"
    STARTUP_OPTIONS="--port=3306"
    OS_VERSION="i686-Linux"
    MYSQL_VERSION="5.7.21-log"/>

  <AUDIT_RECORD
    TIMESTAMP="2017-10-16T14:25:24 UTC"
    RECORD_ID="2_2017-10-16T14:25:00"
    NAME="Connect"
    CONNECTION_ID="4"
    STATUS="0"
    STATUS_CODE="0"
    USER="root"
    OS_LOGIN=""
    HOST="localhost"
    IP="127.0.0.1"
    COMMAND_CLASS="connect"
    CONNECTION_TYPE="SSL/TLS"
    PRIV_USER="root"
    PROXY_USER=""
    DB="test"/>

  ...

  <AUDIT_RECORD
    TIMESTAMP="2017-10-16T14:25:24 UTC"
    RECORD_ID="6_2017-10-16T14:25:00"
    NAME="Query"
    CONNECTION_ID="4"
    STATUS="0"
    STATUS_CODE="0"
    USER="root[root] @ localhost [127.0.0.1]"
    OS_LOGIN=""
    HOST="localhost"
    IP="127.0.0.1"
    COMMAND_CLASS="drop_table"
    SQLTEXT="DROP TABLE IF EXISTS t"/>

  ...

  <AUDIT_RECORD
```
The audit log file is written as XML, using UTF-8 (up to 4 bytes per character). The root element is `<AUDIT>`. The root element contains `<AUDIT_RECORD>` elements, each of which provides information about an audited event. When the audit log plugin begins writing a new log file, it writes the XML declaration and opening `<AUDIT>` root element tag. When the plugin closes a log file, it writes the closing `</AUDIT>` root element tag. The closing tag is not present while the file is open.

Attributes of `<AUDIT_RECORD>` elements have these characteristics:

- Some attributes appear in every `<AUDIT_RECORD>` element. Others are optional and may appear depending on the audit record type.
- Order of attributes within an `<AUDIT_RECORD>` element is not guaranteed.
- Attribute values are not fixed length. Long values may be truncated as indicated in the attribute descriptions given later.
- The `<`, `>`, "", and & characters are encoded as &lt;:, &gt;:, &quot;, and &amp;, respectively. NUL bytes (U+00) are encoded as the ? character.
- Characters not valid as XML characters are encoded using numeric character references. Valid XML characters are:

```
#x9  |  #xA  |  #xD  |  [#x20-#xD7FF]  |  [#xE000-#xFFFD]  |  [#x10000-#x10FFFF]
```

The following attributes are mandatory in every `<AUDIT_RECORD>` element:

- **NAME**

  A string representing the type of instruction that generated the audit event, such as a command that the server received from a client.

  **Example:** NAME="Query"

  Some common **NAME** values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audit</td>
<td>When auditing starts, which may be server startup time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect</td>
<td>When a client connects, also known as logging in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Query</td>
<td>An SQL statement (executed directly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepare</td>
<td>Preparation of an SQL statement; usually followed by Execute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execute</td>
<td>Execution of an SQL statement; usually follows Prepare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutdown</td>
<td>Server shutdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quit</td>
<td>When a client disconnects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoAudit</td>
<td>Auditing has been turned off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The possible values are Audit, Binlog Dump, Change user, Close stmt, Connect Out, Connect, Create DB, Daemon, Debug, Delayed insert, Drop DB, Execute, Fetch, Field
Audit Log File Formats

List, Init DB, Kill, Long Data, NoAudit, Ping, Prepare, Processlist, Query, Quit, Refresh, Register Slave, Reset stmt, Set option, Shutdown, Sleep, Statistics, Table Dump, Time.

With the exception of "Audit" and "NoAudit", these values correspond to the COM_xxx command values listed in the my_command.h header file. For example, "Create DB" and "Change user" correspond to COM_CREATE_DB and COM_CHANGE_USER, respectively.

1. **RECORD_ID**

A unique identifier for the audit record. The value is composed from a sequence number and timestamp, in the format SEQ_TIMESTAMP. When the audit log plugin opens the audit log file, it initializes the sequence number to the size of the audit log file, then increments the sequence by 1 for each record logged. The timestamp is a UTC value in YYYY-MM-DDT hh:mm:ss format indicating the date and time when the audit log plugin opened the file.

Example: RECORD_ID="12_2017-10-16T14:25:00"

2. **TIMESTAMP**

A string representing a UTC value in YYYY-MM-DDT hh:mm:ss UTC format indicating the date and time when the audit event was generated. For example, the event corresponding to execution of an SQL statement received from a client has a TIMESTAMP value occurring after the statement finishes, not when it was received.

Example: TIMESTAMP="2017-10-16T14:25:32 UTC"

The following attributes are optional in <AUDIT_RECORD> elements. Many of them occur only for elements with specific values of the NAME attribute.

3. **COMMAND_CLASS**

A string that indicates the type of action performed.

Example: COMMAND_CLASS="drop_table"

The values correspond to the statement/sql/xxx command counters: for example, xxx is drop_table and select for DROP TABLE and SELECT statements, respectively. The following statement displays the possible names:

```sql
SELECT REPLACE(EVENT_NAME, 'statement/sql/', '') AS name
FROM performance_schema.events_statements_summary_global_by_event_name
WHERE EVENT_NAME LIKE 'statement/sql/%'
ORDER BY name;
```

4. **CONNECTION_ID**

An unsigned integer representing the client connection identifier. This is the same as the value returned by the CONNECTION_ID() function within the session.

Example: CONNECTION_ID="127"

5. **CONNECTION_TYPE**

The security state of the connection to the server. Permitted values are TCP/IP (TCP/IP connection established without encryption), SSL/TLS (TCP/IP connection established with encryption), Socket (Unix socket file connection), Named Pipe (Windows named pipe connection), and Shared Memory (Windows shared memory connection).

Example: CONNECTION_TYPE="SSL/TLS"

6. **DB**
A string representing the default database name.

Example: `DB="test"`

- **HOST**
  A string representing the client host name.

Example: `HOST="localhost"`

- **IP**
  A string representing the client IP address.

Example: `IP="127.0.0.1"`

- **MYSQL_VERSION**
  A string representing the MySQL server version. This is the same as the value of the `VERSION()` function or `version` system variable.

Example: `MYSQL_VERSION="5.7.21-log"`

- **OS_LOGIN**
  A string representing the external user name used during the authentication process, as set by the plugin used to authenticate the client. With native (built-in) MySQL authentication, or if the plugin does not set the value, this attribute is empty. The value is the same as that of the `external_user` system variable (see Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”).

Example: `OS_LOGIN="jeffrey"`

- **OS_VERSION**
  A string representing the operating system on which the server was built or is running.

Example: `OS_VERSION="x86_64-Linux"`

- **PRIV_USER**
  A string representing the user that the server authenticated the client as. This is the user name that the server uses for privilege checking, and it may differ from the `USER` value.

Example: `PRIV_USER="jeffrey"`

- **PROXY_USER**
  A string representing the proxy user (see Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”). The value is empty if user proxying is not in effect.

Example: `PROXY_USER="developer"`

- **SERVER_ID**
  An unsigned integer representing the server ID. This is the same as the value of the `server_id` system variable.

Example: `SERVER_ID="1"`

- **SQLTEXT**
  A string representing the text of an SQL statement. The value can be empty. Long values may be truncated. The string, like the audit log file itself, is written using UTF-8 (up to 4 bytes per character),


so the value may be the result of conversion. For example, the original statement might have been received from the client as an SJIS string.

**Example:** `SQLTEXT="DELETE FROM t1"

- **STARTUP_OPTIONS**

A string representing the options that were given on the command line or in option files when the MySQL server was started.

**Example:** `STARTUP_OPTIONS="--port=3306 --log_output=FILE"

- **STATUS**

An unsigned integer representing the command status: 0 for success, nonzero if an error occurred. This is the same as the value of the `mysql_errno()` C API function. See the description for **STATUS_CODE** for information about how it differs from **STATUS**.

The audit log does not contain the SQLSTATE value or error message. To see the associations between error codes, SQLSTATE values, and messages, see Server Error Message Reference.

Warnings are not logged.

**Example:** `STATUS="1051"

- **STATUS_CODE**

An unsigned integer representing the command status: 0 for success, 1 if an error occurred.

The **STATUS_CODE** value differs from the **STATUS** value: **STATUS_CODE** is 0 for success and 1 for error, which is compatible with the EZ_collector consumer for Audit Vault. **STATUS** is the value of the `mysql_errno()` C API function. This is 0 for success and nonzero for error, and thus is not necessarily 1 for error.

**Example:** `STATUS_CODE="0"

- **USER**

A string representing the user name sent by the client. This may differ from the **PRIV_USER** value.

- **VERSION**

An unsigned integer representing the version of the audit log file format.

**Example:** `VERSION="1"

### New-Style XML Audit Log File Format

Here is a sample log file in new-style XML format (**audit_log_format=NEW**), reformatted slightly for readability:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<AUDIT>
  <AUDIT_RECORD>
    <TIMESTAMP>2017-10-16T14:06:33 UTC</TIMESTAMP>
    <RECORD_ID>1_2017-10-16T14:06:33</RECORD_ID>
    <NAME>Audit</NAME>
    <SERVER_ID>1</SERVER_ID>
    <VERSION>1</VERSION>
    <STARTUP_OPTIONS>/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqld
      --socket=/usr/local/mysql/mysql.sock
      --port=3306</STARTUP_OPTIONS>
    <OS_VERSION>i686-Linux</OS_VERSION>
    <MYSQL_VERSION>5.7.21-log</MYSQL_VERSION>
  </AUDIT_RECORD>
</AUDIT>
```
The audit log file is written as XML, using UTF-8 (up to 4 bytes per character). The root element is `<AUDIT>`. The root element contains `<AUDIT_RECORD>` elements, each of which provides information about an audited event. When the audit log plugin begins writing a new log file, it writes the XML declaration and opening `<AUDIT>` root element tag. When the plugin closes a log file, it writes the closing `</AUDIT>` root element tag. The closing tag is not present while the file is open.

Elements within `<AUDIT_RECORD>` elements have these characteristics:

- Some elements appear in every `<AUDIT_RECORD>` element. Others are optional and may appear depending on the audit record type.
- Order of elements within an `<AUDIT_RECORD>` element is not guaranteed.
- Element values are not fixed length. Long values may be truncated as indicated in the element descriptions given later.
- The `<`, `>`, `.`, and `&` characters are encoded as `&lt;`, `&gt;`, `&quot;`, and `&amp;`, respectively. NUL bytes (U+00) are encoded as the `?` character.
- Characters not valid as XML characters are encoded using numeric character references. Valid XML characters are:

```
#x9 | #xA | #xD | [#x20-#xD7FF] | [#xE000-#xFFFD] | [#x10000-#x10FFFF]
```

The following elements are mandatory in every `<AUDIT_RECORD>` element:

- `<NAME>`

A string representing the type of instruction that generated the audit event, such as a command that the server received from a client.

Example:

```xml
<NAME>Query</NAME>
```

Some common `<NAME>` values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audit</td>
<td>When auditing starts, which may be server startup time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect</td>
<td>When a client connects, also known as logging in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Query</td>
<td>An SQL statement (executed directly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepare</td>
<td>Preparation of an SQL statement; usually followed by Execute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execute</td>
<td>Execution of an SQL statement; usually follows Prepare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutdown</td>
<td>Server shutdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quit</td>
<td>When a client disconnects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoAudit</td>
<td>Auditing has been turned off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The possible values are Audit, Binlog Dump, Change user, Close stmt, Connect Out, Connect, Create DB, Daemon, Debug, Delayed insert, Drop DB, Execute, Fetch, Field List, Init DB, Kill, Long Data, NoAudit, Ping, Prepare, Processlist, Query, Quit, Refresh, Register Slave, Reset stmt, Set option, Shutdown, Sleep, Statistics, Table Dump, Time.

With the exception of Audit and NoAudit, these values correspond to the COM_XXX command values listed in the my_command.h header file. For example, Create DB and Change user correspond to COM_CREATE_DB and COM_CHANGE_USER, respectively.

- `<RECORD_ID>`

A unique identifier for the audit record. The value is composed from a sequence number and timestamp, in the format SEQ_TIMESTAMP. When the audit log plugin opens the audit log file, it initializes the sequence number to the size of the audit log file, then increments the sequence by 1
Audit Log File Formats

for each record logged. The timestamp is a UTC value in **YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss** format indicating the date and time when the audit log plugin opened the file.

Example:

```xml
<RECORD_ID>12_2017-10-16T14:06:33</RECORD_ID>
```

- **<TIMESTAMP>**

A string representing a UTC value in **YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss** UTC format indicating the date and time when the audit event was generated. For example, the event corresponding to execution of an SQL statement received from a client has a **<TIMESTAMP>** value occurring after the statement finishes, not when it was received.

Example:

```xml
<TIMESTAMP>2017-10-16T14:09:45 UTC</TIMESTAMP>
```

The following elements are optional in **<AUDIT_RECORD>** elements. Many of them occur only with specific **<NAME>** element values.

- **<COMMAND_CLASS>**

A string that indicates the type of action performed.

Example:

```xml
<COMMAND_CLASS>drop_table</COMMAND_CLASS>
```

The values correspond to the **statement/sql/xxx** command counters; for example, **xxx** is **drop_table** and **select** for **DROP TABLE** and **SELECT** statements, respectively. The following statement displays the possible names:

```sql
SELECT REPLACE(EVENT_NAME, 'statement/sql/', '') AS name
FROM performance_schema.events_statements_summary_global_by_event_name
WHERE EVENT_NAME LIKE 'statement/sql/%'
ORDER BY name;
```

- **<CONNECTION_ID>**

An unsigned integer representing the client connection identifier. This is the same as the value returned by the **CONNECTION_ID()** function within the session.

Example:

```xml
<CONNECTION_ID>127</CONNECTION_ID>
```

- **<CONNECTION_TYPE>**

The security state of the connection to the server. Permitted values are **TCP/IP** (TCP/IP connection established without encryption), **SSL/TLS** (TCP/IP connection established with encryption), **Socket** (Unix socket file connection), **Named Pipe** (Windows named pipe connection), and **Shared Memory** (Windows shared memory connection).

Example:

```xml
<CONNECTION_TYPE>SSL/TLS</CONNECTION_TYPE>
```

- **<DB>**
A string representing the default database name.

Example:

```xml
<DB>test</DB>
```

- `<HOST>`

A string representing the client host name.

Example:

```xml
<HOST>localhost</HOST>
```

- `<IP>`

A string representing the client IP address.

Example:

```xml
<IP>127.0.0.1</IP>
```

- `<MYSQL_VERSION>`

A string representing the MySQL server version. This is the same as the value of the `VERSION()` function or `version` system variable.

Example:

```xml
<MYSQL_VERSION>5.7.21-log</MYSQL_VERSION>
```

- `<OS_LOGIN>`

A string representing the external user name used during the authentication process, as set by the plugin used to authenticate the client. With native (built-in) MySQL authentication, or if the plugin does not set the value, this element is empty. The value is the same as that of the `external_user` system variable (see Section 5.10, "Proxy Users").

Example:

```xml
<OS_LOGIN>jeffrey</OS_LOGIN>
```

- `<OS_VERSION>`

A string representing the operating system on which the server was built or is running.

Example:

```xml
<OS_VERSION>x86_64-Linux</OS_VERSION>
```

- `<PRIV_USER>`

A string representing the user that the server authenticated the client as. This is the user name that the server uses for privilege checking, and may differ from the `<USER>` value.

Example:

```xml
<PRIV_USER>jeffrey</PRIV_USER>
```
• `<PROXY_USER>`

A string representing the proxy user (see Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”). The value is empty if user proxying is not in effect.

Example:

```
<PROXY_USER>developer</PROXY_USER>
```

• `<SERVER_ID>`

An unsigned integer representing the server ID. This is the same as the value of the `server_id` system variable.

Example:

```
<SERVER_ID>1</SERVER_ID>
```

• `<SQLTEXT>`

A string representing the text of an SQL statement. The value can be empty. Long values may be truncated. The string, like the audit log file itself, is written using UTF-8 (up to 4 bytes per character), so the value may be the result of conversion. For example, the original statement might have been received from the client as an SJIS string.

Example:

```
<SQLTEXT>DELETE FROM t1</SQLTEXT>
```

• `<STARTUP_OPTIONS>`

A string representing the options that were given on the command line or in option files when the MySQL server was started. The first option is the path to the server executable.

Example:

```
<STARTUP_OPTIONS>/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqld
    --port=3306 --log_output=FILE</STARTUP_OPTIONS>
```

• `<STATUS>`

An unsigned integer representing the command status: 0 for success, nonzero if an error occurred. This is the same as the value of the `mysql_errno()` C API function. See the description for `<STATUS_CODE>` for information about how it differs from `<STATUS>`.

The audit log does not contain the SQLSTATE value or error message. To see the associations between error codes, SQLSTATE values, and messages, see `Server Error Message Reference`.

Warnings are not logged.

Example:

```
<STATUS>1051</STATUS>
```

• `<STATUS_CODE>`

An unsigned integer representing the command status: 0 for success, 1 if an error occurred.

The `STATUS_CODE` value differs from the `STATUS` value: `STATUS_CODE` is 0 for success and 1 for error, which is compatible with the EZ_collector consumer for Audit Vault. `STATUS` is the value of
the `mysql_errno()` C API function. This is 0 for success and nonzero for error, and thus is not necessarily 1 for error.

Example:

```xml
<STATUS_CODE>0</STATUS_CODE>
```

- `<USER>`

A string representing the user name sent by the client. This may differ from the `<PRIV_USER>` value.

Example:

```xml
<User>root[root] @ localhost [127.0.0.1]</User>
```

- `<VERSION>`

An unsigned integer representing the version of the audit log file format.

Example:

```xml
<VERSION>1</VERSION>
```

**JSON Audit Log File Format**

For JSON-format audit logging (Audit log_format=JSON), the log file contents form a JSON array with each array element representing an audited event as a JSON hash of key-value pairs. Examples of complete event records appear later in this section. The following is an excerpt of partial events:

```json
[
  {
    "timestamp": "2018-01-15 13:50:01",
    "id": 0,
    "class": "audit",
    "event": "startup",
    ...
  },
  {
    "timestamp": "2018-01-15 15:02:32",
    "id": 0,
    "class": "connection",
    "event": "connect",
    ...
  },
  ...
  {
    "timestamp": "2018-01-15 17:37:26",
    "id": 0,
    "class": "table_access",
    "event": "insert",
    ...
  }
]
```

The audit log file is written using UTF-8 (up to 4 bytes per character). When the audit log plugin begins writing a new log file, it writes the opening `]` array marker. When the plugin closes a log file, it writes the closing `]` array marker. The closing marker is not present while the file is open.

Items within audit records have these characteristics:

- Some items appear in every audit record. Others are optional and may appear depending on the audit record type.
• Order of items within an audit record is not guaranteed.

• Item values are not fixed length. Long values may be truncated as indicated in the item descriptions given later.

• The " and \ characters are encoded as \" and \\, respectively.

The following examples show the JSON object formats for different event types (as indicated by the **class** and **event** items), reformatted slightly for readability:

**Auditing startup event:**

```json
{ "timestamp": "2018-01-15 14:21:56", "id": 0, "class": "audit", "event": "startup", "connection_id": 0, "startup_data": { "server_id": 1, "os_version": "i686-Linux", "mysql_version": "5.7.21-log", "args": ["/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqld", "--loose-audit-log-format=JSON", "--log-error=log.err", "--pid-file=mysql.pid", "--port=3306" ] } }
```

When the audit log plugin starts as a result of server startup (as opposed to being enabled at runtime), **connection_id** is set to 0, and **account** and **login** are not present.

**Auditing shutdown event:**

```json
{ "timestamp": "2018-01-15 14:28:20", "id": 3, "class": "audit", "event": "shutdown", "connection_id": 0, "shutdown_data": { "server_id": 1 } }
```

When the audit log plugin is uninstalled as a result of server shutdown (as opposed to being disabled at runtime), **connection_id** is set to 0, and **account** and **login** are not present.

**Connect or change-user event:**

```json
{ "timestamp": "2018-01-15 14:23:18", "id": 1, "class": "connection", "event": "connect", "connection_id": 5, "account": { "user": "root", "host": "localhost" }, "login": { "user": "root", "os": "", "ip": ":1", "proxy": "" }, "connection_data": { "connection_type": "ssl", "status": 0, "db": "test" } }
```

**Disconnect event:**

```json
{ "timestamp": "2018-01-15 14:24:45", "id": 3, "class": "connection", "event": "disconnect", "connection_id": 5, "account": { "user": "root", "host": "localhost" }, "login": { "user": "root", "os": "", "ip": ":1", "proxy": "" }, "connection_data": { "connection_type": "ssl" } }
```
Audit Log File Formats

Query event:

```json
{ "timestamp": "2018-01-15 14:23:35", "id": 2, "class": "general", "event": "status", "connection_id": 5, "account": { "user": "root", "host": "localhost" }, "login": { "user": "root", "os": "", "ip": "::1", "proxy": "" }, "general_data": { "command": "Query", "sql_command": "show_variables", "query": "SHOW VARIABLES", "status": 0 } }
```

Table access event (read, delete, insert, update):

```json
{ "timestamp": "2018-01-15 14:23:41", "id": 0, "class": "table_access", "event": "insert", "connection_id": 5, "account": { "user": "root", "host": "localhost" }, "login": { "user": "root", "os": "", "ip": "127.0.0.1", "proxy": "" }, "table_access_data": { "db": "test", "table": "t1", "query": "INSERT INTO t1 (i) VALUES(1),(2),(3)" } }
```

The items in the following list appear at the top level of JSON-format audit records: Each item value is either a scalar or a JSON hash. For items that have a hash value, the description lists only the item names within that hash. For more complete descriptions of second-level hash items, see later in this section.

- **account**
  
The MySQL account associated with the event. The value is a hash containing these items equivalent to the value of the `CURRENT_USER()` function within the section: user, host.

  Example:

  ```json
  "account": { "user": "root", "host": "localhost" } 
  ```

- **class**
  
  A string representing the event class. The class defines the type of event, when taken together with the `event` item that specifies the event subclass.

  Example:

  ```json
  "class": "connection" 
  ```

The following table shows the permitted combinations of `class` and `event` values.

**Table 7.16 Audit Log Class and Event Combinations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Value</th>
<th>Permitted Event Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>startup, shutdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>connect, change_user, disconnect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general</td>
<td>status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access_data</td>
<td>read, delete, insert, update</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Audit Log File Formats

• **connection_data**

Information about a client connection. The value is a hash containing these items: `connection_type`, `status`, `db`. This item occurs only for audit records with a `class` value of `connection`.

Example:

```json
"connection_data": { "connection_type": "ssl",  
  "status": 0, 
  "db": "test" }
```

• **connection_id**

An unsigned integer representing the client connection identifier. This is the same as the value returned by the `CONNECTION_ID()` function within the session.

Example:

```json
"connection_id": 5
```

• **event**

A string representing the subclass of the event class. The subclass defines the type of event, when taken together with the `class` item that specifies the event class. For more information, see the `class` item description.

Example:

```json
"event": "connect"
```

• **general_data**

Information about an executed statement or command. The value is a hash containing these items: `command`, `sql_command`, `query`, `status`. This item occurs only for audit records with a `class` value of `general`.

Example:

```json
"general_data": { "command": "Query",  
  "sql_command": "show_variables", 
  "query": "SHOW VARIABLES", 
  "status": 0 }
```

• **id**

An unsigned integer representing an event ID.

Example:

```json
"id": 2
```

For audit records that have the same `timestamp` value, their `id` values distinguish them and form a sequence. Within the audit log, `timestamp/id` pairs are unique. These pairs are bookmarks that identify event locations within the log.

• **login**

Information indicating how a client connected to the server. The value is a hash containing these items: `user`, `os`, `ip`, `proxy`.
Audit Log File Formats

Example:

```json
"login": { "user": "root", "os": ",", "ip": ":1", "proxy": "" }
```

- **shutdown_data**

Information pertaining to audit log plugin termination. The value is a hash containing these items:

  - **server_id** This item occurs only for audit records with class and event values of audit and shutdown, respectively.

Example:

```json
"shutdown_data": { "server_id": 1 }
```

- **startup_data**

Information pertaining to audit log plugin initialization. The value is a hash containing these items:

  - **server_id**
  - **os_version**
  - **mysql_version**
  - **args**. This item occurs only for audit records with class and event values of audit and startup, respectively.

Example:

```json
"startup_data": { "server_id": 1,  "os_version": "i686-Linux",  "mysql_version": "5.7.21-log",  "args": ["/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqld",  "--loose-audit-log-format=JSON",  "--log-error=log.err",  "--pid-file=mysqld.pid",  "--port=3306"] }
```

- **table_access_data**

Information about an access to a table. The value is a hash containing these items: db, table, query, sql_command. This item occurs only for audit records with a class value of table_access.

Example:

```json
"table_access_data": { "db": "test",  "table": "t1",  "query": "INSERT INTO t1 (i) VALUES(1),(2),(3)",  "sql_command": "insert" }
```

- **timestamp**

A string representing a UTC value in YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss format indicating the date and time when the audit event was generated. For example, the event corresponding to execution of an SQL statement received from a client has a timestamp value occurring after the statement finishes, not when it was received.

Example:

```json
"timestamp": "2018-01-15 13:50:01"
```

For audit records that have the same timestamp value, their id values distinguish them and form a sequence. Within the audit log, timestamp/id pairs are unique. These pairs are bookmarks that identify event locations within the log.

These items appear within hash values associated with top-level items of JSON-format audit records:
Audit Log File Formats

• **args**

An array of options that were given on the command line or in option files when the MySQL server was started. The first option is the path to the server executable.

Example:

```json
"args": ["/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqld",
        "--loose-audit-log-format=JSON",
        "--log-error=log.err",
        "--pid-file=myqld.pid",
        "--port=3306"]
```

• **command**

A string representing the type of instruction that generated the audit event, such as a command that the server received from a client.

Example:

```json
"command": "Query"
```

• **connection_type**

The security state of the connection to the server. Permitted values are tcp/ip (TCP/IP connection established without encryption), ssl (TCP/IP connection established with encryption), socket (Unix socket file connection), named_pipe (Windows named pipe connection), and shared_memory (Windows shared memory connection).

Example:

```json
"connection_type": "tcp/tcp"
```

• **db**

A string representing a database name. For connection_data, it is the default database. For table_access_data, it is the table database.

Example:

```json
"db": "test"
```

• **host**

A string representing the client host name.

Example:

```json
"host": "localhost"
```

• **ip**

A string representing the client IP address.

Example:

```json
"ip": '::1'
```

• **mysql_version**
A string representing the MySQL server version. This is the same as the value of the `VERSION()` function or `version` system variable.

Example:

```json
"mysql_version": "5.7.21-log"
```

• **os**

A string representing the external user name used during the authentication process, as set by the plugin used to authenticate the client. With native (built-in) MySQL authentication, or if the plugin does not set the value, this attribute is empty. The value is the same as that of the `external_user` system variable. See Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”.

Example:

```json
"os": "jeffrey"
```

• **os_version**

A string representing the operating system on which the server was built or is running.

Example:

```json
"os_version": "i686-Linux"
```

• **proxy**

A string representing the proxy user (see Section 5.10, “Proxy Users”). The value is empty if user proxying is not in effect.

Example:

```json
"proxy": "developer"
```

• **query**

A string representing the text of an SQL statement. The value can be empty. Long values may be truncated. The string, like the audit log file itself, is written using UTF-8 (up to 4 bytes per character), so the value may be the result of conversion. For example, the original statement might have been received from the client as an SJIS string.

Example:

```json
"query": "DELETE FROM t1"
```

• **server_id**

An unsigned integer representing the server ID. This is the same as the value of the `server_id` system variable.

Example:

```json
"server_id": 1
```

• **sql_command**

A string that indicates the SQL statement type.
Example:

```
"sql_command": "insert"
```

The values correspond to the `statement/sql/xxx` command counters; for example, `xxx` is `drop_table` and `select` for `DROP TABLE` and `SELECT` statements, respectively. The following statement displays the possible names:

```
SELECT REPLACE(EVENT_NAME, 'statement/sql/', '') AS name
FROM performance_schema.events_statements_summary_global_by_event_name
WHERE EVENT_NAME LIKE 'statement/sql/%'
ORDER BY name;
```

- **status**

An unsigned integer representing the command status: 0 for success, nonzero if an error occurred. This is the same as the value of the `mysql_errno()` C API function.

The audit log does not contain the SQLSTATE value or error message. To see the associations between error codes, SQLSTATE values, and messages, see [Server Error Message Reference](#).

Warnings are not logged.

Example:

```
"status": 1051
```

- **table**

A string representing a table name.

Example:

```
"table": "t1"
```

- **user**

A string representing a user name. The meaning differs depending on the item within which `user` occurs:

- Within `account` items, `user` is a string representing the user that the server authenticated the client as. This is the user name that the server uses for privilege checking.
- Within `login` items, `user` is a string representing the user name sent by the client.

Example:

```
"user": "root"
```

### 7.5.5 Audit Log Logging Control

This section describes how to control general characteristics of audit logging, such as the file to which the audit log plugin writes events, the format of written events, and whether compression and encryption are enabled.

- **Audit Log File Name**
- **Audit Log File Format**
Audit Log Logging Control

- Audit Log File Compression
- Audit Log File Encryption
- Audit Log File Manual Uncompression and Decryption
- Audit Logging Write Strategy
- Audit Log File Space Management and Name Rotation
- Audit Log File Reading

For additional information about the user-defined functions and system variables that affect audit logging, see Section 7.5.8.2, “Audit Log Functions”, and Section 7.5.8.4, “Audit Log Options and Variables”.

The audit log plugin can also control which audited events are written to the audit log file, based on the account from which events originate or event content. See Section 7.5.6, “Audit Log Filtering”.

Audit Log File Name

To control the audit log file name, set the `audit_log_file` system variable at server startup. By default, the name is `audit.log` in the server data directory. For security reasons, the audit log file should be written to a directory accessible only to the MySQL server and to users with a legitimate reason to view the log.

As of MySQL 5.7.21, the plugin interprets the `audit_log_file` value as composed of a base name and an optional suffix. If compression or encryption are enabled, the effective file name (the name actually used to create the log file) differs from the configured file name because it has additional suffixes:

- If compression is enabled, the plugin adds a suffix of `.gz`.
- If encryption is enabled, the plugin adds a suffix of `.enc`.

The effective audit log file name is the resulting name after adding possible compression and encryption suffixes to the configured file name. For example, if the configured `audit_log_file` value is `audit.log`, the effective file name is one of these values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audit.log</td>
<td>Not compressed or encrypted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit.log.gz</td>
<td>Compressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit.log.enc</td>
<td>Encrypted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| audit.log.gz.enc | Compressed and encrypted |}

Prior to MySQL 5.7.21, the configured and effective log file names are the same. For example, if the configured `audit_log_file` value is `audit.log`, the audit log plugin writes to `audit.log`.

The audit log plugin performs certain actions at initialization and termination time based on the audit log file name:

As of MySQL 5.7.21:

- During initialization, the plugin checks whether a file with the audit log file name already exists and renames it if so. (In this case, the plugin assumes that the previous server invocation exited unexpectedly with the audit log plugin running.) The plugin then writes to a new empty audit log file.
- At termination, the plugin renames the audit log file.
- When renaming occurs (whether at plugin initialization or termination), the renamed file has a timestamp inserted after its base name and before its suffix. For example, if the file name is
Audit Log Logging Control

The plugin renames it to a value such as `audit.20180115T140633.log`. The timestamp is a UTC value in `YYYYMMDDThhmmss` format.

Prior to MySQL 5.7.21, only the XML log formats are available and the plugin performs rudimentary integrity checking:

- During initialization, the plugin checks whether the file ends with an `</AUDIT>` tag and truncates the tag before writing any `</AUDIT_RECORD>` elements. If the log file exists but does not end with `</AUDIT>` or the `</AUDIT>` tag cannot be truncated, the plugin considers the file malformed and renames it. (Such renaming can occur if the server exits unexpectedly with the audit log plugin running.) The plugin then writes to a new empty audit log file.

- At termination, no file renaming occurs.

- When renaming occurs at plugin initialization, the renamed file has `.corrupted`, a timestamp, and `.xml` added to the end. For example, if the file name is `audit.log`, the plugin renames it to a value such as `audit.log.corrupted.15081807937726520.xml`. The timestamp value is similar to a Unix timestamp, with the last 7 digits representing the fractional second part. For information about interpreting the timestamp, see Audit Log File Space Management and Name Rotation.

Audit Log File Format

To control the audit log file format, set the `audit_log_format` system variable at server startup. By default, the format is `NEW` (new-style XML format). For details about each format, see Section 7.5.4, “Audit Log File Formats”.

If you change `audit_log_format`, it is recommended that you also change `audit_log_file`. Otherwise, there will be two sets of log files with the same base name but different formats.

**Note**

Prior to MySQL 5.7.21, changing the value of `audit_log_format` can result in writing log entries in one format to an existing log file that contains entries in a different format. To avoid this issue, use the following procedure:

1. Stop the server.
2. Either change the value of the `audit_log_file` system variable so the plugin writes to a different file, or rename the current audit log file manually.
3. Restart the server with the new value of `audit_log_format`. The audit log plugin creates a new log file and writes entries to it in the selected format.

Audit Log File Compression

Audit log file compression is available as of MySQL 5.7.21. Compression can be enabled for any log format.

To control whether audit log file compression is enabled, set the `audit_log_compression` system variable at server startup. Permitted values are `NONE` (no compression; the default) and `GZIP` (GNU Zip compression).

If both compression and encryption are enabled, compression occurs before encryption. To recover the original file manually, first decrypt it, then uncompress it. See Audit Log File Manual Uncompression and Decryption.

Audit Log File Encryption

Audit log file encryption is available as of MySQL 5.7.21. Encryption can be enabled for any log format. Encryption is based on a user-defined password. To use this feature, the MySQL keyring must be enabled because audit logging uses it for password storage. Any keyring plugin can be used; for instructions, see Section 7.4, “The MySQL Keyring”.

238
To control whether audit log file encryption is enabled, set the `audit_log_encryption` system variable at server startup. Permitted values are `NONE` (no encryption; the default) and `AES` (AES-256-CBC cipher encryption).

To set or get the encryption password, use these user-defined functions (UDFs):

- To set the encryption password, invoke `audit_log_encryption_password_set()`, which stores the password in the keyring, renames the current log file, and begins a new log file encrypted with the new password. The renamed file has a timestamp inserted after its base name and before its suffix. For example, if the file name is `audit.log.enc`, the plugin renames it to a value such as `audit.20180115T140633.log.enc`. The timestamp is a UTC value in `YYYYMMDDThhmmss` format.

  Previously written audit log files are not re-encrypted with the new password. Remember the previous password should you need to decrypt those files.

- To get the current encryption password, invoke `audit_log_encryption_password_get()`, which retrieves the password from the keyring.

For the first server startup after audit log encryption is enabled, the audit log plugin automatically generates the initial encryption password and stores it in the keyring. To discover this password, invoke `audit_log_encryption_password_get()`.

For additional information about audit log encryption functions, see Section 7.5.8.2, “Audit Log Functions”.

If both compression and encryption are enabled, compression occurs before encryption. To recover the original file manually, first decrypt it, then uncompress it. See Audit Log File Manual Uncompression and Decryption.

### Audit Log File Manual Uncompression and Decryption

Audit log files can be uncompressed and decrypted using standard tools. This should be done only for log files that have been closed and are no longer in use, not for the log file that the audit log plugin is currently writing. You can recognize closed log files because they will have been renamed by the audit log plugin to include a timestamp in the file name.

For this discussion, assume that `audit_log_file` is set to `audit.log`. In that case, a closed audit log file has one of these names:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>audit.timestamp.log</code></td>
<td>Not compressed or encrypted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>audit.timestamp.log.gz</code></td>
<td>Compressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>audit.timestamp.log.enc</code></td>
<td>Encrypted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>audit.timestamp.log.gz.enc</code></td>
<td>Compressed and encrypted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To uncompress a compressed log file manually, use `gunzip`, `gzip -d`, or equivalent command. For example:

```
gunzip -c audit.timestamp.log.gz > audit.timestamp.log
```

To decrypt an encrypted log file manually, use the `openssl` command. For example:

```
openssl enc -d -aes-256-cbc -pass password -md sha256
    -in audit.timestamp.log.enc -out audit.timestamp.log
```

If both compression and encryption are enabled for audit logging, compression occurs before encryption. In this case, the file name has `.gz` and `.enc` suffixes added, corresponding to the order in which those operations occur. To recover the original file manually, perform the operations in reverse. That is, first decrypt the file, then uncompress it:
Audit Log Logging Control

openssl enc -d -aes-256-cbc -pass pass:password -md sha256 -in audit.timestamp.log.gz.enc -out audit.timestamp.log.gz

gunzip -c audit.timestamp.log.gz > audit.timestamp.log

Audit Logging Write Strategy

The audit log plugin can use any of several strategies for log writes. Regardless of strategy, logging occurs on a best-effort basis, with no guarantee of consistency.

To specify a write strategy, set the audit_log_strategy system variable at server startup. By default, the strategy value is ASYNCHRONOUS and the plugin logs asynchronously to a buffer, waiting if the buffer is full. It's possible to tell the plugin not to wait (PERFORMANCE) or to log synchronously, either using file system caching (SEMISYNCHRONOUS) or forcing output with a sync() call after each write request (SYNCHRONOUS).

For asynchronous write strategy, the audit_log_buffer_size system variable is the buffer size in bytes. Set this variable at server startup to change the buffer size. The plugin uses a single buffer, which it allocates when it initializes and removes when it terminates. The plugin does not allocate this buffer for nonasynchronous write strategies.

Asynchronous logging strategy has these characteristics:

• Minimal impact on server performance and scalability.

• Blocking of threads that generate audit events for the shortest possible time; that is, time to allocate the buffer plus time to copy the event to the buffer.

• Output goes to the buffer. A separate thread handles writes from the buffer to the log file.

With asynchronous logging, the integrity of the log file may be compromised if a problem occurs during a write to the file or if the plugin does not shut down cleanly (for example, in the event that the server host exits unexpectedly). To reduce this risk, set audit_log_strategy to use synchronous logging.

A disadvantage of PERFORMANCE strategy is that it drops events when the buffer is full. For a heavily loaded server, the audit log may have events missing.

Audit Log File Space Management and Name Rotation

The audit log file has the potential to grow very large and consume a lot of disk space. To enable management of the space used by its log files, the audit log plugin provides the audit_log_rotate_on_size and audit_log_flush system variables, which control audit log file rotation and flushing. Rotation can be done manually, or automatically based on file size.

Manual audit log file rotation. By default, audit_log_rotate_on_size=0 and there is no log rotation except that which you perform manually. In this case, the audit log plugin closes and reopens the log file when the audit_log_flush value changes from disabled to enabled. Log file renaming must be done externally to the server. Suppose that the log file name is audit.log and you want to maintain the three most recent log files, cycling through the names audit.log.1.xml through audit.log.3.xml. On Unix, perform rotation manually like this:

1. From the command line, rename the current log files:

   mv audit.log.2.xml audit.log.3.xml
   mv audit.log.1.xml audit.log.2.xml
   mv audit.log audit.log.1.xml

   At this point, the plugin is still writing to the current log file, which has been renamed to audit.log.1.xml.

2. Connect to the server and flush the log file so the plugin closes it and reopens a new audit.log file:
SET GLOBAL audit_log_flush = ON;

**Note**

For JSON-format logging, renaming audit log files manually makes them unavailable to the log-reading functions because the audit log plugin no longer can determine that they are part of the log file sequence (see Audit Log File Reading). Consider setting `audit_log_rotate_on_size` greater than 0 to use size-based rotation instead.

**Automatic size-based audit log file rotation.** If `audit_log_rotate_on_size` is greater than 0, setting `audit_log_flush` has no effect. Instead, whenever a write to the log file causes its size to exceed the `audit_log_rotate_on_size` value, the audit log plugin closes the file, renames it, and opens a new log file.

The plugin renames the original file as follows:

- As of MySQL 5.7.21, the renamed file has a timestamp inserted after its base name and before its suffix. For example, if the file name is `audit.log`, the plugin renames it to a value such as `audit.20180115T140633.log`. The timestamp is a UTC value in `YYYYMMDD` `T` `hhmmss` format.

- Prior to MySQL 5.7.21, the renamed file has a timestamp and `.xml` added to the end. For example, if the file name is `audit.log`, the plugin renames it to a value such as `audit.log.15159344437726520.xml`. The timestamp value is similar to a Unix timestamp, with the last 7 digits representing the fractional second part. By inserting a decimal point, the value can be interpreted using the `FROM_UNIXTIME()` function:

  ```sql
  mysql> SELECT FROM_UNIXTIME(1515934443.7726520);
  +-----------------------------------+
  | FROM_UNIXTIME(1515934443.7726520) |
  | 2018-01-14 06:54:03.772652        |
  +-----------------------------------+
  ```

  **Note**

  With size-based log file rotation, renamed log files do not rotate off the end of the name sequence. Instead, they have unique names and accumulate indefinitely. To avoid excessive space use, remove old files periodically, backing them up first as necessary.

**Audit Log File Reading**

The audit log plugin enables bookmarking and reading of JSON-format audit log files. (These capabilities do not apply to files written in other log formats.)

When the audit log plugin initializes and is configured for JSON logging, it uses the directory containing the audit log file (determined from the `audit_log_file` value) as the location to search for readable audit log files. To do this, it uses the value of `audit_log_file` to determine the file base name and suffix values, then looks for files with names that match the following pattern, where `[…]` indicates optional file name parts:

```
basename.[timestamp].suffix[.gz][.enc]
```

The plugin opens each matching file, checks that it really contains JSON audit records, and sorts them using the timestamps from the first record of each file to construct a list of log files that are subject to use with the log-reading functions.

The plugin cannot include in the sequence files that were renamed manually and do not match the preceding pattern, or that were encrypted with a password different from the current password.

To read events from the audit log, use these user-defined functions (UDFs):
Audit Log Logging Control

- `audit_log_read_bookmark()` returns a JSON string representing a bookmark for the most recently written audit log event. This bookmark is suitable for passing to `audit_log_read()` to indicate to that function where to begin reading. Example bookmark:

  ```json
  { "timestamp": "2018-01-15 21:03:44", "id": 0 }
  ```

- `audit_log_read()` reads events from the audit log and returns a JSON string containing an array of audit events.

Example `audit_log_read()` invocation using the current bookmark:

```sql
mysql> SELECT audit_log_read(audit_log_read_bookmark());
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------+
| audit_log_read(audit_log_read_bookmark())                             |
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------+
| [ {"timestamp":"2018-01-15 22:41:24","id":0,"class":"connection",... |
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------+
```

Each event in the `audit_log_read()` return value is a JSON hash, except that the last array element may be a JSON null value to indicate no following events are available to read. For example:

```json
[
  { "timestamp": "2018-01-15 22:08:08", "id": 10,
    "class": "general", "event": "status",
    ...
  },
  { "timestamp": "2018-01-15 22:08:08", "id": 11,
    "class": "connection", "event": "disconnect",
    ...
  },
  { "timestamp": "2018-01-15 13:39:33", "id": 0,
    "class": "connection", "event": "connect",
    ...
  },
  { "timestamp": "2018-01-15 13:39:33", "id": 1,
    "class": "general", "event": "status",
    ...
  },
  { "timestamp": "2018-01-15 13:39:33", "id": 2,
    "class": "connection", "event": "disconnect",
    ...
  },
  null
]
```

Use `audit_log_read()` like this:

- For the first call to `audit_log_read()` within a session, pass a bookmark indicating where to begin reading.

- If the final value of the returned array is not a JSON null value, there are more events following those just read and `audit_log_read()` can be called without or with a bookmark argument. Without an argument, reading continues with the next unread event. With a bookmark argument, reading continues from the bookmark.

- If the final value of the returned array is a JSON null value, there are no more events left to be read and the next call to `audit_log_read()` must include a bookmark argument.

A bookmark is a JSON hash that indicates where and how much to read. The following items are significant in the bookmark value (other items are ignored):
Audit Log Filtering

- **timestamp, id**: The location within the audit log of the first event to read. Both items must be present to completely specify a position.

- **max_array_length**: The maximum number of events to read from the log. If omitted, the default is to read to the end of the log or until the read buffer is full, whichever comes first.

The result returned from either log-reading function is a binary string. To use the string with functions that require a nonbinary string (such as the functions that manipulate JSON values), convert it to `utf8mb4`. Suppose that a bookmark has this value:

```sql
mysql> SELECT @mark := audit_log_read_bookmark() AS mark;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{ &quot;timestamp&quot;: &quot;2018-01-15 16:10:28&quot;, &quot;id&quot;: 2 }</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Calling `audit_log_read()` with that bookmark can return multiple events. To set a limit on the number of events read by `audit_log_read()`, convert the bookmark to `utf8mb4`, then add to it a `max_array_length` item with a value of 1. For example, using the preceding bookmark, convert and modify it as follows:

```sql
mysql> SET @mark = CONVERT(@mark USING utf8mb4);
mysql> SET @mark := JSON_SET(@mark, '$.max_array_length', 1);
mysql> SELECT @mark;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>@mark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{ &quot;id&quot;: 2, &quot;timestamp&quot;: &quot;2018-01-15 16:10:28&quot;, &quot;max_array_length&quot;: 1 }</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The modified bookmark, when passed to `audit_log_read()`, produces a result of a single audit record.

To set a limit on the number of bytes that `audit_log_read()` reads, set the `audit_log_read_buffer_size` system variable. As of MySQL 5.7.23, this variable has a default of 32KB and can be set at runtime. Each client should set its session value of `audit_log_read_buffer_size` appropriately for its use of `audit_log_read()`. Prior to MySQL 5.7.23, `audit_log_read_buffer_size` has a default of 1MB, affects all clients, and can be changed only at server startup.

For additional information about audit log-reading functions, see Section 7.5.8.2, “Audit Log Functions”.

### 7.5.6 Audit Log Filtering

**Note**

This section describes how audit log filtering works as of MySQL 5.7.13 if the audit log plugin and the accompanying audit tables and UDFs are installed. If the plugin is installed but not the accompanying audit tables and UDFs, the plugin operates in legacy filtering mode, described in Section 7.5.7, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”. Legacy mode is filtering behavior as it was prior to MySQL 5.7.13; that is, before the introduction of rule-based filtering.

Prior to MySQL 5.7.13, the audit log plugin had the capability of controlling logging of audited events by filtering them based on the account from which events originate or event status. As of MySQL 5.7.13, filtering capabilities are extended:

- Audited events can be filtered using these characteristics:
  - User account
  - Audit event class
Audit Log Filtering

- Audit event subclass
- Value of event fields such as those that indicate operation status or SQL statement executed

Audit filtering is rule based:

- A filter definition creates a set of auditing rules. Definitions can be configured to include or exclude events for logging based on the characteristics just described.
- As of MySQL 5.7.20, filter rules have the capability of blocking (aborting) execution of qualifying events, in addition to existing capabilities for event logging.
- Multiple filters can be defined, and any given filter can be assigned to any number of user accounts.
- It is possible to define a default filter to use with any user account that has no explicitly assigned filter.

Audit filters can be defined, displayed, and modified using an SQL interface based on user-defined functions (UDFs).

Audit filter definitions are stored in the tables in the `mysql` system database.

Within a given session, the value of the read-only `audit_log_filter_id` system variable indicates whether a filter has been assigned to the session.

**Note**

By default, rule-based audit log filtering logs no auditable events for any users. To log all auditable events for all users, use the following statements, which create a simple filter to enable logging and assign it to the default account:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_filter('log_all', '{ "filter": { "log": true } }');
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('%', 'log_all');
```

The filter assigned to `%` is used for connections from any account that has no explicitly assigned filter (which initially is true for all accounts).

The following list briefly summarizes the UDFs that implement the SQL interface for audit filtering control:

- `audit_log_filter_set_filter()`: Define a filter
- `audit_log_filter_remove_filter()`: Remove a filter
- `audit_log_filter_set_user()`: Start filtering a user account
- `audit_log_filter_remove_user()`: Stop filtering a user account
- `audit_log_filter_flush()`: Flush manual changes to the filter tables to affect ongoing filtering

For usage examples and complete details about the filtering functions, see Section 7.5.6.1, “Using Audit Log Filtering Functions”, and Section 7.5.8.2, “Audit Log Functions”.

Audit log filtering functions are subject to these constraints:

- To use any filtering function, the `audit_log` plugin must be enabled. Otherwise, an error occurs:
Audit Log Filtering

The audit tables must also exist or an error occurs:

```sql
mysql> SELECT audit_log_filter_flush();
+-----------------------------------+
| audit_log_filter_flush()           |
+-----------------------------------+
| ERROR: Could not reinitialize audit log filters. |
+-----------------------------------+
```

To install the `audit_log` plugin, see Section 7.5.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit”.

- To use any filtering function, a user must possess the `SUPER` privilege. Otherwise, an error occurs:

```sql
mysql> SELECT audit_log_filter_flush();\G
*************************** 1. row ***************************
audit_log_filter_flush(): ERROR: Request ignored for 'user1'@'localhost'.
SUPER_ACL needed to perform operation
```

To grant the `SUPER` privilege to a user account, use this statement:

```sql
GRANT SUPER ON *.* TO user;
```

Alternatively, should you prefer to avoid granting the `SUPER` privilege while still permitting users to access specific filtering functions, “wrapper” stored programs can be defined. This technique is described in the context of keyring UDFs in Section 7.4.8.2, “Using General-Purpose Keyring Functions”; it can be adapted for use with filtering UDFs.

- The `audit_log` plugin operates in legacy mode if it is installed but the accompanying audit tables and functions are not created. The plugin writes these messages to the error log at server startup:

```sql
[Warning] Plugin audit_log reported: 'Failed to open the audit log filter tables.'
[Warning] Plugin audit_log reported: 'Audit Log plugin supports a filtering, which has not been installed yet. Audit Log plugin will run in the legacy mode, which will be disabled in the next release.'
```

In legacy mode, filtering can be done based only on event account or status. For details, see Section 7.5.7, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”.

### 7.5.6.1 Using Audit Log Filtering Functions

Before using the audit log user-defined functions (UDFs), install them according to the instructions provided in Section 7.5.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit”. The `SUPER` privilege is required to use any of these functions.

The audit log filtering functions enable filtering control by providing an interface to create, modify, and remove filter definitions and assign filters to user accounts.

Filter definitions are `JSON` values. For information about using `JSON` data in MySQL, see The JSON Data Type. This section shows some simple filter definitions. For more information about filter definitions, see Section 7.5.6.2, “Writing Audit Log Filter Definitions”.

When a connection arrives, the audit log plugin determines which filter to use for the new session by searching for the user account name in the current filter assignments:

- If a filter is assigned to the user, the audit log uses that filter.
- Otherwise, if no user-specific filter assignment exists, but there is a filter assigned to the default account (`%`), the audit log uses the default filter.
• Otherwise, the audit log selects no audit events from the session for processing.

If a change-user operation occurs during a session (see `mysql_change_user()`), filter assignment for the session is updated using the same rules but for the new user.

By default, no accounts have a filter assigned, so no processing of auditable events occurs for any account.

Suppose that instead you want the default to be to log only connection-related activity (for example, to see connect, change-user, and disconnect events, but not the SQL statements users execute while connected). To achieve this, define a filter (shown here named `log_conn_events`) that enables logging only of events in the `connection` class, and assign that filter to the default account, represented by the `%` account name:

```sql
SET @f = '{ "filter": { "class": { "name": "connection" } } }';
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_filter('log_conn_events', @f);
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('%', 'log_conn_events');
```

Now the audit log uses this default account filter for connections from any account that has no explicitly defined filter.

To assign a filter explicitly to a particular user account or accounts, define the filter, then assign it to the relevant accounts:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_filter('log_all', '{ "filter": { "log": true } }');
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('user1@localhost', 'log_all');
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('user2@localhost', 'log_all');
```

Now full logging is enabled for `user1@localhost` and `user2@localhost`. Connections from other accounts continue to be filtered using the default account filter.

To disassociate a user account from its current filter, either unassign the filter or assign a different filter:

• Unassign the filter from the user account:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_remove_user('user1@localhost');
```

Filtering of current sessions for the account remains unaffected. Subsequent connections from the account are filtered using the default account filter if there is one, and are not logged otherwise.

• Assign a different filter to the user account:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_filter('log_nothing', '{ "filter": { "log": false } }');
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('user1@localhost', 'log_nothing');
```

Filtering of current sessions for the account remains unaffected. Subsequent connections from the account are filtered using the new filter. For the filter shown here, that means no logging for new connections from `user1@localhost`.

For audit log filtering, user name and host name comparisons are case-sensitive. This differs from comparisons for privilege checking, for which host name comparisons are not case-sensitive.

To remove a filter, do this:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_remove_filter('log_nothing');
```

Removing a filter also unassigns it from any users to whom it has been assigned, including any current sessions for those users.

The filtering UDFs just described affect audit filtering immediately and update the audit log tables in the `mysql` system database that store filters and user accounts (see Section 7.5.8.1, “Audit Log Tables”). It is also possible to modify the audit log tables directly using statements such as `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`.
and `DELETE`, but such changes do not affect filtering immediately. To flush your changes and make them operational, call `audit_log_filter_flush()`:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_flush();
```

To determine whether a filter has been assigned to the current session, check the session value of the read-only `audit_log_filter_id` system variable. If the value is 0, no filter is assigned. A nonzero value indicates the internally maintained ID of the assigned filter:

```sql
mysql> SELECT @@audit_log_filter_id;
+-----------------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>@@audit_log_filter_id</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+-----------------------+
```

### 7.5.6.2 Writing Audit Log Filter Definitions

Filter definitions are JSON values. For information about using JSON data in MySQL, see [The JSON Data Type](#).

Filter definitions have this form, where `actions` indicates how filtering takes place:

```json
{ "filter": actions }
```

The following discussion describes permitted constructs in filter definitions.

- **Logging All Events**
- **Logging Specific Event Classes**
- **Logging Specific Event Subclasses**
- **Inclusive and Exclusive Logging**
- **Testing Event Field Values**
- **Blocking Execution of Specific Events**
- **Logical Operators**
- **Referencing Predefined Variables**
- **Referencing Predefined Functions**
- **Replacing a User Filter**

#### Logging All Events

To explicitly enable or disable logging of all events, use a `log` element in the filter:

```json
{    "filter": { "log": true }
}
```

The `log` value can be either `true` or `false`.

The preceding filter enables logging of all events. It is equivalent to:

```json
{    "filter": { }
}
```

Logging behavior depends on the `log` value and whether `class` or `event` items are specified:
• With log specified, its given value is used.

• Without log specified, logging is true if no class or event item is specified, and false otherwise (in which case, class or event can include their own log item).

Logging Specific Event Classes

To log events of a specific class, use a class element in the filter, with its name field denoting the name of the class to log:

```
{  
  "filter": {  
    "class": { "name": "connection" }  
  }  
}
```

The name value can be connection, general, or table_access to log connection, general, or table-access events, respectively.

The preceding filter enables logging of events in the connection class. It is equivalent to the following filter with log items made explicit:

```
{  
  "filter": {  
    "log": false,  
    "class": { "log": true,  
      "name": "connection" }  
  }  
}
```

To enable logging of multiple classes, define the class value as a JSON array element that names the classes:

```
{  
  "filter": {  
    "class": [  
      { "name": "connection" },  
      { "name": "general" },  
      { "name": "table_access" }  
    ]  
  }  
}
```

Note

When multiple instances of a given item appear at the same level within a filter definition, the item values can be combined into a single instance of that item within an array value. The preceding definition can be written like this:

```
{  
  "filter": {  
    "class": [  
      { "name": [ "connection", "general", "table_access" ] }  
    ]  
  }  
}
```

Logging Specific Event Subclasses

To select specific event subclasses, use an event item containing a name item that names the subclasses. The default action for events selected by an event item is to log them. For example, this filter enables logging for the named event subclasses:

```
{  
  "filter": {  
    "event": [  
      { "name": [ "connection", "general", "table_access" ] }  
    ]  
  }  
}
```
Audit Log Filtering

```json
{
  "filter": {
    "class": {
      "name": "connection",
      "event": {
        "name": "connect",
        "name": "disconnect"
      },
      "name": "general",
      "name": "table_access",
      "event": {
        "name": "insert",
        "name": "delete",
        "name": "update"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The `event` item can also contain explicit `log` items to indicate whether to log qualifying events. This `event` item selects multiple events and explicitly indicates logging behavior for them:

```json
"event": [
  { "name": "read", "log": false },
  { "name": "insert", "log": true },
  { "name": "delete", "log": true },
  { "name": "update", "log": true }
]
```

As of MySQL 5.7.20, the `event` item can also indicate whether to block qualifying events, if it contains an `abort` item. For details, see Blocking Execution of Specific Events.

Table 7.17, “Event Class and Subclass Combinations” describes the permitted subclass values for each event class.

**Table 7.17 Event Class and Subclass Combinations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Class</th>
<th>Event Subclass</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>connect</td>
<td>Connection initiation (successful or unsuccessful)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>change_user</td>
<td>User re-authentication with different user/password during session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>disconnect</td>
<td>Connection termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general</td>
<td>status</td>
<td>General operation information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>Table read statements, such as <code>SELECT</code> or <code>INSERT INTO ... SELECT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>delete</td>
<td>Table delete statements, such as <code>DELETE</code> or <code>TRUNCATE TABLE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>insert</td>
<td>Table insert statements, such as <code>INSERT</code> or <code>REPLACE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>update</td>
<td>Table update statements, such as <code>UPDATE</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7.18, “Log and Abort Characteristics Per Event Class and Subclass Combination” describes for each event subclass whether it can be logged or aborted.

**Table 7.18 Log and Abort Characteristics Per Event Class and Subclass Combination**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Class</th>
<th>Event Subclass</th>
<th>Can be Logged</th>
<th>Can be Aborted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>connect</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>change_user</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Audit Log Filtering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Class</th>
<th>Event Subclass</th>
<th>Can be Logged</th>
<th>Can be Aborted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>disconnect</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general</td>
<td>status</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>delete</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>insert</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>update</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inclusive and Exclusive Logging

A filter can be defined in inclusive or exclusive mode:

- Inclusive mode logs only explicitly specified items.
- Exclusive mode logs everything but explicitly specified items.

To perform inclusive logging, disable logging globally and enable logging for specific classes. This filter logs `connect` and `disconnect` events in the `connection` class, and events in the `general` class:

```json
    {     
        "filter": {     
            "log": false,     
            "class": [     
                {     
                    "name": "connection",     
                    "event": [     
                        { "name": "connect", "log": true },     
                        { "name": "disconnect", "log": true }     
                    ]     
                },     
                { "name": "general", "log": true }     
            ]     
    }
```

To perform exclusive logging, enable logging globally and disable logging for specific classes. This filter logs everything except events in the `general` class:

```json
    {     
        "filter": {     
            "log": true,     
            "class": {     
                "name": "general", "log": false     
            }     
        }
    }
```

This filter logs `change_user` events in the `connection` class, and `table_access` events:

```json
    {     
        "filter": {     
            "log": true,     
            "class": [     
                {     
                    "name": "connection",     
                    "event": [     
                        { "name": "connect", "log": false },     
                        { "name": "disconnect", "log": false }     
                    ]     
                },     
                { "name": "general", "log": false }     
            ]     
        }
    }
```
Testing Event Field Values

To enable logging based on specific event field values, specify a `field` item within the `log` item that indicates the field name and its expected value:

```json
{
  "filter": {
    "class": {
      "name": "general",
      "event": {
        "name": "status",
        "log": {
          "field": { "name": "general_command.str", "value": "Query" }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Each event contains event class-specific fields that can be accessed from within a filter to perform custom filtering.

A connection event indicates when a connection-related activity occurs during a session, such as a user connecting to or disconnecting from the server. Table 7.19, “Connection Event Fields” indicates the permitted fields for connection events.

**Table 7.19 Connection Event Fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Field Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>status</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Event status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0: OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Otherwise: Failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection_id</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Connection ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>User name specified during authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>User name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priv_user.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Authenticated user name (account user name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priv_user.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Authenticated user name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>external_user.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>External user name (provided by third-party authentication plugin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>external_user.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>External user name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proxy_user.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Proxy user name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proxy_user.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Proxy user name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Connected user host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Connected user host length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Connected user IP address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Connected user IP address length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>database.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Database name specified at connect time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>database.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Database name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection_type</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Connection type:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or &quot;::undefined&quot;: Undefined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or &quot;::tcp/ip&quot;: TCP/IP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The "::xxx" values are symbolic pseudo-constants that may be given instead of the literal numeric values. They must be quoted as strings and are case-sensitive.

A general event indicates the status code of an operation and its details. Table 7.20, "General Event Fields" indicates the permitted fields for general events.

### Table 7.20 General Event Fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Field Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>general_error_code</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Event status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0: OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Otherwise: Failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_thread_id</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Connection/thread ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_user.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>User name specified during authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_user.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>User name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_command.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Command name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_command.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Command name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_query.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>SQL statement text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_query.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>SQL statement text length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_host.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Host name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_host.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Host name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_sql_command.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>SQL command type name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_sql_command.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>SQL command type name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_external_user.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>External user name (provided by third-party authentication plugin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_external_user.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>External user name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_ip.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Connected user IP address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general_ip.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Connection user IP address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `general_command.str` indicates a command name: Query, Execute, Quit, or Change user.

A general event with the `general_command.str` field set to Query or Execute contains `general_sql_command.str` set to a value that specifies the type of SQL command: alter_db, alter_db_upgrade, admin_commands, and so forth. These values can be seen as the last components of the Performance Schema instruments displayed by this statement:

```sql
mysql> SELECT NAME FROM performance_schema.setup_instruments
WHERE NAME LIKE 'statement/sql/%' ORDER BY NAME;
```

```
+---------------------------------------+
| NAME                                  |
| statement/sql/alter_db                |
| statement/sql/alter_db_upgrade        |
| statement/sql/alter_event             |
```
Audit Log Filtering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>statement/sql/alter_function</th>
<th>statement/sql/alter_instance</th>
<th>statement/sql/alter_procedure</th>
<th>statement/sql/alter_server</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

A table-access event provides information about specific table accesses. Table 7.21, “Table-Access Event Fields” indicates the permitted fields for table-access events.

**Table 7.21 Table-Access Event Fields**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Field Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>connection_id</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Event connection ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sql_command_id</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>SQL command ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>SQL statement text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>SQL statement text length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_database.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Database name associated with event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_database.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Database name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Table name associated with event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_name.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Table name length</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following list shows which statements produce which table-access events:

- **read event:**
  - SELECT
  - INSERT ... SELECT (for tables referenced in SELECT clause)
  - REPLACE ... SELECT (for tables referenced in SELECT clause)
  - UPDATE ... WHERE (for tables referenced in WHERE clause)
  - HANDLER ... READ

- **delete event:**
  - DELETE
  - TRUNCATE TABLE

- **insert event:**
  - INSERT
  - INSERT ... SELECT (for table referenced in INSERT clause)
  - REPLACE
  - REPLACE ... SELECT (for table referenced in REPLACE clause)
  - LOAD DATA
  - LOAD XML

- **update event:**
  - UPDATE
  - UPDATE ... WHERE (for tables referenced in UPDATE clause)
Blocking Execution of Specific Events

As of MySQL 5.7.20, event items can include an abort item that indicates whether to prevent qualifying events from executing. For example, abort enables rules to be written that block execution of specific SQL statements.

The abort item must appear within an event item. For example:

```json
"event": {
  "name": qualifying event subclass names
  "abort": condition
}
```

For event subclasses selected by the name item, the abort action is true or false, depending on condition evaluation. If the condition evaluates to true, the event is blocked. Otherwise, the event continues executing.

The condition specification can be as simple as true or false, or it can be more complex such that evaluation depends on event characteristics.

This filter blocks INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements:

```json
{
  "filter": {
    "class": {
      "name": "table_access",
      "event": {
        "name": [ "insert", "update", "delete" ],
        "abort": true
      }
    }
  }
}
```

This more complex filter blocks the same statements, but only for a specific table (finances.bank_account):

```json
{
  "filter": {
    "class": {
      "name": "table_access",
      "event": {
        "name": [ "insert", "update", "delete" ],
        "abort": {
          "and": [
            { "field": { "name": "table_database.str", "value": "finances" } },
            { "field": { "name": "table_name.str", "value": "bank_account" } }
          ]
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Statements matched and blocked by the filter return an error to the client:

```
ERROR 1045 (28000): Statement was aborted by an audit log filter
```

Not all events can be blocked (see Table 7.18, “Log and Abort Characteristics Per Event Class and Subclass Combination”). For an event that cannot, the audit log writes a warning to the error log rather than blocking it.

For attempts to define a filter in which the abort item appears elsewhere than in an event item, an error occurs.
Logical Operators

Logical operators (and, or, not) can be used in log items. This permits construction of more advanced filtering configurations:

```json
{
  "filter": {
    "class": {
      "name": "general",
      "event": {
        "name": "status",
        "log": {
          "or": [
            {
              "and": [
                {
                  "field": { "name": "general_command.str",    "value": "Query" } },
                {
                  "field": { "name": "general_command.length", "value": 5 } }
              ]
            },
            {
              "and": [
                {
                  "field": { "name": "general_command.str",    "value": "Execute" } },
                {
                  "field": { "name": "general_command.length", "value": 7 } }
              ]
            }
          ]
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Referencing Predefined Variables

To refer to a predefined variable in a log condition, use a variable item, which tests equality against a given value:

```json
{
  "filter": {
    "class": {
      "name": "general",
      "event": {
        "name": "status",
        "log": {
          "variable": {
            "name": "audit_log_connection_policy_value", "value": "::none"
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Each predefined variable corresponds to a system variable. By writing a filter that tests a predefined variable, you can modify filter operation by setting the corresponding system variable, without having to redefine the filter. For example, by writing a filter that tests the value of the `audit_log_connection_policy_value` predefined variable, you can modify filter operation by changing the value of the `audit_log_connection_policy` system variable.

The `audit_log_xxx_policy` system variables are used for the legacy mode audit log (see Section 7.5.7, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”). With rule-based audit log filtering, those variables remain visible (for example, using SHOW VARIABLES), but changes to them have no effect unless you write filters containing constructs that refer to them.

The following list describes the permitted predefined variables for variable items:

- `audit_log_connection_policy_value`
Audit Log Filtering

This variable corresponds to the value of the `audit_log_connection_policy` system variable. The value is an unsigned integer. Table 7.22, “`audit_log_connection_policy_value` Values” shows the permitted values and the corresponding `audit_log_connection_policy` values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Corresponding <code>audit_log_connection_policy</code> Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 or &quot;::none&quot;</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 or &quot;::errors&quot;</td>
<td>ERRORS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 or &quot;::all&quot;</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The "::xxx" values are symbolic pseudo-constants that may be given instead of the literal numeric values. They must be quoted as strings and are case-sensitive.

• `audit_log_policy_value`

This variable corresponds to the value of the `audit_log_policy` system variable. The value is an unsigned integer. Table 7.23, “`audit_log_policy_value` Values” shows the permitted values and the corresponding `audit_log_policy` values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Corresponding <code>audit_log_policy</code> Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 or &quot;::none&quot;</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 or &quot;::logins&quot;</td>
<td>LOGINS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 or &quot;::all&quot;</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 or &quot;::queries&quot;</td>
<td>QUERIES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The "::xxx" values are symbolic pseudo-constants that may be given instead of the literal numeric values. They must be quoted as strings and are case-sensitive.

• `audit_log_statement_policy_value`

This variable corresponds to the value of the `audit_log_statement_policy` system variable. The value is an unsigned integer. Table 7.24, “`audit_log_statement_policy_value` Values” shows the permitted values and the corresponding `audit_log_statement_policy` values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Corresponding <code>audit_log_statement_policy</code> Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 or &quot;::none&quot;</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 or &quot;::errors&quot;</td>
<td>ERRORS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 or &quot;::all&quot;</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The "::xxx" values are symbolic pseudo-constants that may be given instead of the literal numeric values. They must be quoted as strings and are case-sensitive.

**Referencing Predefined Functions**

To refer to a predefined function in a log condition, use a `function` item, which takes `name` and `args` values to specify the function name and its arguments, respectively:

```json
{  
  "filter": {  
    "class": {  
```

256
The function as specified in the `name` item should be the function name only, without parentheses or the argument list. Arguments in the `args` item, if there is one, must be given in the order listed in the function description. Arguments can refer to predefined variables, event fields, or string or numeric constants.

The preceding filter determines whether to log `general` class `status` events depending on whether the current user is found in the `audit_log_include_accounts` system variable. That user is constructed using fields in the event.

The following list describes the permitted predefined functions for `function` items:

- **audit_log_exclude_accounts_is_null()**
  Checks whether the `audit_log_exclude_accounts` system variable is `NULL`. This function can be helpful when defining filters that correspond to the legacy audit log implementation.
  
  Arguments:
  
  None.

- **audit_log_include_accounts_is_null()**
  Checks whether the `audit_log_include_accounts` system variable is `NULL`. This function can be helpful when defining filters that correspond to the legacy audit log implementation.
  
  Arguments:
  
  None.

- **debug_sleep(millisec)**
  Sleeps for the given number of milliseconds. This function is used during performance measurement. `debug_sleep()` is available for debug builds only.
  
  Arguments:
  
  - `millisec`: An unsigned integer that specifies the number of milliseconds to sleep.

- **find_in_exclude_list(account)**
  Checks whether an account string exists in the audit log exclude list (the value of the `audit_log_exclude_accounts` system variable).
  
  Arguments:
  
  - `account`: A string that specifies the user account name.
Checks whether an account string exists in the audit log include list (the value of the `audit_log_include_accounts` system variable).

**Arguments:**
- `account`: A string that specifies the user account name.

**string_find(text, substr)**
Checks whether the `substr` value is contained in the `text` value. This search is case-sensitive.

**Arguments:**
- `text`: The text string to search.
- `substr`: The substring to search for in `text`.

### Replacing a User Filter

In some cases, the filter definition can be changed dynamically. To do this, define a `filter` configuration within an existing `filter`. For example:

```json
{
  "filter": {
    "id": "main",
    "class": {
      "name": "table_access",
      "event": {
        "name": [ "update", "delete" ],
        "log": false,
        "filter": {
          "class": {
            "name": "general",
            "event": { "name": "status",
                       "filter": { "ref": "main" } }
          },
          "activate": {
            "or": {
              [ "field": { "name": "table_name.str", "value": "temp_1" } ],
              [ "field": { "name": "table_name.str", "value": "temp_2" } ]
            }
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

A new filter is activated when the `activate` element within a subfilter evaluates to `true`. Using `activate` in a top-level `filter` is not permitted.

A new filter can be replaced with the original one by using a `ref` item inside the subfilter to refer to the original filter `id`.

The filter shown operates like this:

- The `main` filter waits for `table_access` events, either `update` or `delete`.

- If the `update` or `delete table_access` event occurs on the `temp_1` or `temp_2` table, the filter is replaced with the internal one (without an `id`, since there is no need to refer to it explicitly).

- If the end of the command is signalled (`general` / `status` event), an entry is written to the audit log file and the filter is replaced with the `main` filter.

The filter is useful to log statements that update or delete anything from the `temp_1` or `temp_2` tables, such as this one:
UPDATE temp_1, temp_3 SET temp_1.a=21, temp_3.a=23;

The statement generates multiple `table_access` events, but the audit log file will contain only `general/status` entries.

### Note

Any `id` values used in the definition are evaluated with respect only to that definition. They have nothing to do with the value of the `audit_log_filter_id` system variable.

### 7.5.7 Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering

### Note

This section describes legacy audit log filtering, which applies under either of these circumstances:

- Before MySQL 5.7.13, that is, prior to the introduction of rule-based audit log filtering described in Section 7.5.6, “Audit Log Filtering”.
- As of MySQL 5.7.13, if the `audit_log` plugin is installed but not the accompanying audit tables and UDFs needed for rule-based filtering.

The audit log plugin can filter audited events. This enables you to control whether audited events are written to the audit log file based on the account from which events originate or event status. Status filtering occurs separately for connection events and statement events.

- Event Filtering by Account
- Event Filtering by Status

### Event Filtering by Account

To filter audited events based on the originating account, set one of these system variables at server startup or runtime:

- `audit_log_include_accounts`: The accounts to include in audit logging. If this variable is set, only these accounts are audited.
- `audit_log_exclude_accounts`: The accounts to exclude from audit logging. If this variable is set, all but these accounts are audited.

The value for either variable can be `NULL` or a string containing one or more comma-separated account names, each in `user_name@host_name` format. By default, both variables are `NULL`, in which case, no account filtering is done and auditing occurs for all accounts.

Modifications to `audit_log_include_accounts` or `audit_log_exclude_accounts` affect only connections created subsequent to the modification, not existing connections.

Example: To enable audit logging only for the `user1` and `user2` local host account accounts, set the `audit_log_include_accounts` system variable like this:

```sql
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = 'user1@localhost,user2@localhost';
```

Only one of `audit_log_include_accounts` or `audit_log_exclude_accounts` can be non-`NULL` at a time:

- If you set `audit_log_include_accounts`, the server sets `audit_log_exclude_accounts` to `NULL`.
Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering

- If you attempt to set `audit_log_exclude_accounts`, an error occurs unless `audit_log_include_accounts` is NULL. In this case, you must first clear `audit_log_include_accounts` by setting it to NULL.

```sql
-- This sets audit_log_exclude_accounts to NULL
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = value;
-- This fails because audit_log_include_accounts is not NULL
SET GLOBAL audit_log_exclude_accounts = value;
-- To set audit_log_exclude_accounts, first set audit_log_include_accounts to NULL
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = NULL;
SET GLOBAL audit_log_exclude_accounts = value;
```

If you inspect the value of either variable, be aware that `SHOW VARIABLES` displays NULL as an empty string. To avoid this, use `SELECT` instead:

```sql
mysql> SHOW VARIABLES LIKE 'audit_log_include_accounts';
+--------------------------+-------+
| Variable_name            | Value |
|--------------------------+-------+
| audit_log_include_accounts |      |
+--------------------------+-------+
mysql> SELECT @@audit_log_include_accounts;
+----------------------------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>@@audit_log_include_accounts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

If a user name or host name requires quoting because it contains a comma, space, or other special character, quote it using single quotes. If the variable value itself is quoted with single quotes, double each inner single quote or escape it with a backslash. The following statements each enable audit logging for the local root account and are equivalent, even though the quoting styles differ:

```sql
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = 'root@localhost';
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = '''root''@'''localhost'''';
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = '\\root\@localhost\';
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = '"root"@"localhost"';
```

The last statement will not work if the ANSI_QUOTES SQL mode is enabled because in that mode double quotes signify identifier quoting, not string quoting.

Event Filtering by Status

To filter audited events based on status, set the following system variables at server startup or runtime. These variables apply only for legacy audit log filtering. For JSON audit log filtering, different status variables apply; see Section 7.5.8.4, “Audit Log Options and Variables”.

- `audit_log_connection_policy`: Logging policy for connection events
- `audit_log_statement_policy`: Logging policy for statement events

Each variable takes a value of ALL (log all associated events; this is the default), ERRORS (log only failed events), or NONE (do not log events). For example, to log all statement events but only failed connection events, use these settings:

```sql
SET GLOBAL audit_log_statement_policy = ALL;
SET GLOBAL audit_log_connection_policy = ERRORS;
```

Another policy system variable, `audit_log_policy`, is available but does not afford as much control as `audit_log_connection_policy` and `audit_log_statement_policy`. It can be set only at server startup. At runtime, it is a read-only variable. It takes a value of ALL (log all events; this is the default), LOGINS (log connection events), QUERIES (log statement events), or NONE (do not log
events). For any of those values, the audit log plugin logs all selected events without distinction as to success or failure. Use of `audit_log_policy` at startup works as follows:

- If you do not set `audit_log_policy` or set it to its default of `ALL`, any explicit settings for `audit_log_connection_policy` or `audit_log_statement_policy` apply as specified. If not specified, they default to `ALL`.

- If you set `audit_log_policy` to a non-`ALL` value, that value takes precedence over and is used to set `audit_log_connection_policy` and `audit_log_statement_policy`, as indicated in the following table. If you also set either of those variables to a value other than their default of `ALL`, the server writes a message to the error log to indicate that their values are being overridden.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Startup <code>audit_log_policy</code> Value</th>
<th>Resulting <code>audit_log_connection_policy</code> Value</th>
<th>Resulting <code>audit_log_statement_policy</code> Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LOGINS</td>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUERIES</td>
<td>NONE</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONE</td>
<td>NONE</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**7.5.8 Audit Log Reference**

The following discussion serves as a reference to MySQL Enterprise Audit components:

- Section 7.5.8.1, “Audit Log Tables”
- Section 7.5.8.2, “Audit Log Functions”
- Section 7.5.8.3, “Audit Log Option and Variable Reference”
- Section 7.5.8.4, “Audit Log Options and Variables”
- Section 7.5.8.5, “Audit Log Status Variables”

To install the audit log tables and functions, use the instructions provided in Section 7.5.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit”. Unless those components are installed, the `audit_log` plugin operates in legacy mode. See Section 7.5.7, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”.

**7.5.8.1 Audit Log Tables**

MySQL Enterprise Audit uses tables in the `mysql` system database for persistent storage of filter and user account data. The tables can be accessed only by users with privileges for that database. The tables use the `InnoDB` storage engine (`MyISAM` prior to MySQL 5.7.21).

If these tables are missing, the `audit_log` plugin operates in legacy mode. See Section 7.5.7, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”.

The `audit_log_filter` table stores filter definitions. The table has these columns:

- **NAME**
  - The filter name.

- **FILTER**
  - The filter definition associated with the filter name. Definitions are stored as `JSON` values.

The `audit_log_user` table stores user account information. The table has these columns:

- **USER**
  - The user name part of an account. For an account `user1@localhost`, the `USER` part is `user1`. 
• **HOST**

The host name part of an account. For an account `user1@localhost`, the **HOST** part is `localhost`.

• **FILTERNAME**

The name of the filter assigned to the account. The filter name associates the account with a filter defined in the `audit_log_filter` table.

### 7.5.8.2 Audit Log Functions

This section describes, for each audit log user-defined function (UDF), its purpose, calling sequence, and return value. For information about the conditions under which these UDFs can be invoked, see Section 7.5.6, “Audit Log Filtering”.

Each audit log UDF returns a string that indicates whether the operation succeeded. **OK** indicates success. **ERROR**: `message` indicates failure.

These audit log UDFs are available:

• **audit_log_encryption_password_get()**

Retrieves the current audit log encryption password as a binary string. The password is fetched from the MySQL keyring, which must be enabled or an error occurs. Any keyring plugin can be used; for instructions, see Section 7.4, “The MySQL Keyring”.

For additional information about audit log encryption, see Audit Log File Encryption.

Arguments:

None.

Return value:

The password string for success (up to 766 bytes), or **NULL** and an error for failure.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT audit_log_encryption_password_get();
+-------------------------------+
| audit_log_encryption_password_get() |
| secret                         |
+-------------------------------+
```

• **audit_log_encryption_password_set(password)**

Sets the audit log encryption password and stores it in the MySQL keyring, which must be enabled or an error occurs. Any keyring plugin can be used; for instructions, see Section 7.4, “The MySQL Keyring”.

For additional information about audit log encryption, see Audit Log File Encryption.

Arguments:

password: The password string. The maximum permitted length is 766 bytes.

Return value:

1 for success, 0 for failure.

Example:
### Audit Log Reference

#### mysql> SELECT audit_log_encryption_password_set(password);

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>audit_log_encryption_password_set(password)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **audit_log_filter_flush()**

  Calling any of the other filtering UDFs affects operational audit log filtering immediately and updates the audit log tables. If instead you modify the contents of those tables directly using statements such as `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE`, the changes do not affect filtering immediately. To flush your changes and make them operational, call `audit_log_filter_flush()`.

  `audit_log_filter_flush()` affects all current sessions and detaches them from their previous filters. Current sessions are no longer logged unless they disconnect and reconnect, or execute a change-user operation.

  If this function fails, an error message is returned and the audit log is disabled until the next successful call to `audit_log_filter_flush()`.

  **Arguments:**

  None.

  **Return value:**

  A string that indicates whether the operation succeeded. **OK** indicates success. **ERROR: message** indicates failure.

  **Example:**

  ```
  mysql> SELECT audit_log_filter_flush();
  +--------------------------+
  | audit_log_filter_flush() |
  | OK                       |
  +--------------------------+
  ```

- **audit_log_filter_remove_filter(filter_name)**

  Given a filter name, removes the filter from the current set of filters. It is not an error for the filter not to exist.

  If a removed filter is assigned to any user accounts, those users stop being filtered (they are removed from the `audit_log_user` table). Termination of filtering includes any current sessions for those users: They are detached from the filter and no longer logged.

  **Arguments:**

  - **filter_name**: A string that specifies the filter name.

  **Return value:**

  A string that indicates whether the operation succeeded. **OK** indicates success. **ERROR: message** indicates failure.

  **Example:**

  ```
  mysql> SELECT audit_log_filter_remove_filter('SomeFilter');
  +-----------------------------------------------+
  ```
• **audit_log_filter_remove_user(user_name)**

Given a user account name, cause the user to be no longer assigned to a filter. It is not an error if the user has no filter assigned. Filtering of current sessions for the user remains unaffected. New connections for the user are filtered using the default account filter if there is one, and are not logged otherwise.

If the name is %, the function removes the default account filter that is used for any user account that has no explicitly assigned filter.

Arguments:

• **user_name**: The user account name as a string in `user_name@host_name` format, or % to represent the default account.

Return value:

A string that indicates whether the operation succeeded. OK indicates success. ERROR: message indicates failure.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT audit_log_filter_remove_user('user1@localhost');
+-------------------------------------------------+
| audit_log_filter_remove_user('user1@localhost') |
| OK                                              |
+-------------------------------------------------+
```

• **audit_log_filter_set_filter(filter_name, definition)**

Given a filter name and definition, adds the filter to the current set of filters. If the filter already exists and is used by any current sessions, those sessions are detached from the filter and are no longer logged. This occurs because the new filter definition has a new filter ID that differs from its previous ID.

Arguments:

• **filter_name**: A string that specifies the filter name.

• **definition**: A JSON value that specifies the filter definition.

Return value:

A string that indicates whether the operation succeeded. OK indicates success. ERROR: message indicates failure.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SET @f = '{ "filter": { "log": false } }';
mysql> SELECT audit_log_filter_set_filter('SomeFilter', @f);
+-----------------------------------------------+
| audit_log_filter_set_filter('SomeFilter', @f) |
| OK                                            |
+-----------------------------------------------+
```

• **audit_log_filter_set_user(user_name, filter_name)**
Given a user account name and a filter name, assigns the filter to the user. A user can be assigned only one filter, so if the user was already assigned a filter, the assignment is replaced. Filtering of current sessions for the user remains unaffected. New connections are filtered using the new filter.

As a special case, the name % represents the default account. The filter is used for connections from any user account that has no explicitly assigned filter.

Arguments:

• **user_name**: The user account name as a string in `user_name@host_name` format, or % to represent the default account.

• **filter_name**: A string that specifies the filter name.

Return value:

A string that indicates whether the operation succeeded. **OK** indicates success. **ERROR: message** indicates failure.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('user1@localhost', 'SomeFilter');
+------------------------------------------------------------+
| audit_log_filter_set_user('user1@localhost', 'SomeFilter') |
+------------------------------------------------------------+
| OK                                                         |
+------------------------------------------------------------+
```

**audit_log_read([arg])**

Reads events from the audit log and returns a binary **JSON** string containing an array of audit events. If the audit log format is not **JSON**, an error occurs.

Each event in the return value is a **JSON** hash, except that the last array element may be a **JSON null** value to indicate no following events are available to read.

For the first call to **audit_log_read()** within a session, pass a bookmark indicating where to begin reading. If the final value of the returned array is not a **JSON null** value, there are more events following those just read and **audit_log_read()** can be called without or with a bookmark argument. Without an argument, reading continues with the next unread event. With a bookmark argument, reading continues from the bookmark.

If the final value of the returned array is a **JSON null** value, there are no more events left to be read and the next call to **audit_log_read()** must include a bookmark argument.

To obtain a bookmark for the most recently written event, call **audit_log_read_bookmark()**.

For additional information about audit log-reading functions, see [Audit Log File Reading](#).

Arguments:

**arg**: An optional bookmark, represented as a string containing a **JSON** hash that indicates where and how much to read. The following items are significant in the **arg** value (other items are ignored):

• **timestamp, id**: The location within the audit log of the first event to read. Both items must be present to completely specify a position.

• **max_array_length**: The maximum number of events to read from the log. If omitted, the default is to read to the end of the log or until the read buffer is full, whichever comes first.

Return value:
A binary JSON string containing an array of audit events for success, or NULL and an error for failure.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT audit_log_read(audit_log_read_bookmark());
```

• `audit_log_read_bookmark()`

Returns a binary JSON string representing a bookmark for the most recently written audit log event. If the audit log format is not JSON, an error occurs.

The bookmark is a JSON hash with `timestamp` and `id` items indicating the event position within the audit log. It is suitable for passing to `audit_log_read()` to indicate to that function where to begin reading.

For additional information about audit log-reading functions, see Audit Log File Reading.

Arguments:

None.

Return value:

A binary JSON string containing a bookmark for success, or NULL and an error for failure.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT audit_log_read_bookmark();
```

7.5.8.3 Audit Log Option and Variable Reference

Table 7.25 Audit Log Option and Variable Reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Cmd-Line</th>
<th>Option File</th>
<th>System Var</th>
<th>Status Var</th>
<th>Var Scope</th>
<th>Dynamic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audit-log</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_buffer_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_connection_policy</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_current_session</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_current_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_event_max_drop_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_events</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_events_filtered</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_events_lost</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_events_written</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_exclude_accounts</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_file</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7.5.8.4 Audit Log Options and Variables

This section describes the command options and system variables that control operation of MySQL Enterprise Audit. If values specified at startup time are incorrect, the `audit_log` plugin may fail to initialize properly and the server does not load it. In this case, the server may also produce error messages for other audit log settings because it will not recognize them.

To control the activation of the audit log plugin, use this option:

- `--audit-log[=value]`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log[=value]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>ON, OFF, FORCE, FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This option controls how the server loads the `audit_log` plugin at startup. It is available only if the plugin has been previously registered with `INSTALL_PLUGIN` or is loaded with `--plugin-load` or `--plugin-load-add`. See Section 7.5.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit”.

The option value should be one of those available for plugin-loading options, as described in Installing and Uninstalling Plugins. For example, `--audit-log=FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT` tells the server to load the plugin and prevent it from being removed while the server is running.

If the audit log plugin is enabled, it exposes several system variables that permit control over logging:

```
mysql> SHOW VARIABLES LIKE 'audit_log%';
+-----------------------------+--------------+
| Variable_name               | Value        |
|-----------------------------+--------------+
| audit_log_buffer_size       | 1048576      |
| audit_log_connection_policy | ALL          |
| audit_log_current_session   | OFF          |
| audit_log_exclude_accounts  |              |
| audit_log_file              | audit.log    |
| audit_log_filter_id         | 0            |
| audit_log_flush             | OFF          |
```
You can set any of these variables at server startup, and some of them at runtime. Those that are available only for legacy mode audit log filtering are so noted.

- **audit_log_buffer_size**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-buffer-size=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_buffer_size</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1048576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>4096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value (64-bit platforms)</td>
<td>18446744073709547520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value (32-bit platforms)</td>
<td>4294967295</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the audit log plugin writes events to the log asynchronously, it uses a buffer to store event contents prior to writing them. This variable controls the size of that buffer, in bytes. The server adjusts the value to a multiple of 4096. The plugin uses a single buffer, which it allocates when it initializes and removes when it terminates. The plugin allocates this buffer only if logging is asynchronous.

- **audit_log_compression**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-compression=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_compression</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>NONE, GZIP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The type of compression for the audit log file. Permitted values are NONE (no compression; the default) and GZIP (GNU Zip compression). For more information, see Audit Log File Compression.

- **audit_log_connection_policy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-connection-policy=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Audit Log Reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_connection_policy</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>ALL</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td><code>ALL</code> <code>ERRORS</code> <code>NONE</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Note

This variable applies only to legacy mode audit log filtering (see Section 7.5.7, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”).

The policy controlling how the audit log plugin writes connection events to its log file. The following table shows the permitted values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>ALL</code></td>
<td>Log all connection events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ERRORS</code></td>
<td>Log only failed connection events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>NONE</code></td>
<td>Do not log connection events</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Note

At server startup, any explicit value given for `audit_log_connection_policy` may be overridden if `audit_log_policy` is also specified, as described in Section 7.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Control”.

### `audit_log_current_session`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_current_session</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global, Session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>depends on filtering policy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whether audit logging is enabled for the current session. The session value of this variable is read only. It is set when the session begins based on the values of the `audit_log_include_accounts` and `audit_log_exclude_accounts` system variables. The audit log plugin uses the session value to determine whether to audit events for the session. (There is a global value, but the plugin does not use it.)

### `audit_log_encryption`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-encryption=value</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### System Variable: `audit_log_encryption`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_encryption</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>NONE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td><code>NONE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>AES</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The type of encryption for the audit log file. Permitted values are **NONE** (no encryption; the default) and **AES** (AES-256-CBC cipher encryption). For more information, see [Audit Log File Encryption](#).

- **`audit_log_exclude_accounts`**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-exclude-accounts=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_exclude_accounts</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>NULL</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Note

This variable applies only to legacy mode audit log filtering (see [Section 7.5.7, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”](#)).

The accounts for which events should not be logged. The value should be **NULL** or a string containing a list of one or more comma-separated account names. For more information, see [Section 7.5.6, “Audit Log Filtering”](#).

Modifications to **`audit_log_exclude_accounts`** affect only connections created subsequent to the modification, not existing connections.

- **`audit_log_file`**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-file=file_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_file</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>File name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>audit.log</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The base name and suffix of the file to which the audit log plugin writes events. The default value is `audit.log`, regardless of logging format. To have the name suffix correspond to the format, set the
name explicitly, choosing a different suffix (for example, audit.xml for XML format, audit.json for JSON format).

If the value of `audit_log_file` is a relative path name, the plugin interprets it relative to the data directory. If the value is a full path name, the plugin uses the value as is. A full path name may be useful if it is desirable to locate audit files on a separate file system or directory. For security reasons, the audit log file should be written to a directory accessible only to the MySQL server and to users with a legitimate reason to view the log.

For details about how the audit log plugin interprets the `audit_log_file` value and the rules for file renaming that occurs at plugin initialization and termination, see Audit Log File Name.

As of MySQL 5.7.21, the audit log plugin uses the directory containing the audit log file (determined from the `audit_log_file` value) as the location to search for readable audit log files. From these log files and the current file, the plugin constructs a list of the ones that are subject to use with the audit log bookmarking and reading functions. See Audit Log File Reading.

- **audit_log_filter_id**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_filter_id</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global, Session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The session value of this variable indicates the internally maintained ID of the audit filter for the current session. A value of 0 means that the session has no filter assigned.

- **audit_log_flush**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_flush</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When this variable is set to enabled (1 or ON), the audit log plugin closes and reopens its log file to flush it. (The value remains OFF so that you need not disable it explicitly before enabling it again to perform another flush.) Enabling this variable has no effect unless `audit_log_rotate_on_size` is 0. For more information, see Section 7.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Control”.

- **audit_log_format**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-format=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_format</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Audit Log Reference**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NEW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values (&gt;= 5.7.21)</td>
<td>OLD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NEW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>JSON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values (&gt;= 5.7.9, &lt;= 5.7.20)</td>
<td>OLD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NEW</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The audit log file format. Permitted values are **OLD** (old-style XML), **NEW** (new-style XML; the default), and (as of MySQL 5.7.21) **JSON**. For details about each format, see Section 7.5.4, “Audit Log File Formats”.

**Note**

For information about issues to consider when changing the log format, see Audit Log File Format.

- **audit_log_include_accounts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-include-accounts=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_include_accounts</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

This variable applies only to legacy mode audit log filtering (see Section 7.5.7, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”).

The accounts for which events should be logged. The value should be **NULL** or a string containing a list of one or more comma-separated account names. For more information, see Section 7.5.6, “Audit Log Filtering”.

Modifications to **audit_log_include_accounts** affect only connections created subsequent to the modification, not existing connections.

- **audit_log_policy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-policy=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_policy</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The policy controlling how the audit log plugin writes events to its log file. The following table shows the permitted values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>Log all events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGINS</td>
<td>Log only login events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUERIES</td>
<td>Log only query events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONE</td>
<td>Log nothing (disable the audit stream)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`audit_log_policy` can be set only at server startup. At runtime, it is a read-only variable. Two other system variables, `audit_log_connection_policy` and `audit_log_statement_policy`, provide finer control over logging policy and can be set either at startup or at runtime. If you use `audit_log_policy` at startup instead of the other two variables, the server uses its value to set those variables. For more information about the policy variables and their interaction, see Section 7.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Control”.

- `audit_log_read_buffer_size`

The buffer size for reading from the audit log file, in bytes. The `audit_log_read()` function reads no more than this many bytes. Log file reading is supported only for JSON log format. For more information, see Audit Log File Reading.
As of MySQL 5.7.23, this variable has a default of 32KB and can be set at runtime. Each client should set its session value of `audit_log_read_buffer_size` appropriately for its use of `audit_log_read()`. Prior to MySQL 5.7.23, `audit_log_read_buffer_size` has a default of 1MB, affects all clients, and can be changed only at server startup.

- **audit_log_rotate_on_size**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-rotate-on-size=N</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_rotate_on_size</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the `audit_log_rotate_on_size` value is 0, the audit log plugin does not perform automatic log file rotation. Instead, use `audit_log_flush` to close and reopen the log on demand. In this case, manually rename the file externally to the server before flushing it.

If the `audit_log_rotate_on_size` value is greater than 0, automatic size-based log file rotation occurs. Whenever a write to the log file causes its size to exceed the `audit_log_rotate_on_size` value, the audit log plugin closes the current log file, renames it, and opens a new log file.

For more information about audit log file rotation, see Audit Log File Space Management and Name Rotation.

If you set this variable to a value that is not a multiple of 4096, it is truncated to the nearest multiple. (Thus, setting it to a value less than 4096 has the effect of setting it to 0 and no rotation occurs, except manually.)

- **audit_log_statement_policy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-statement-policy=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_statement_policy</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>All, Errors, None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note

This variable applies only to legacy mode audit log filtering (see Section 7.5.7, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”).

274
The policy controlling how the audit log plugin writes statement events to its log file. The following table shows the permitted values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>Log all statement events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERRORS</td>
<td>Log only failed statement events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONE</td>
<td>Do not log statement events</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note
At server startup, any explicit value given for `audit_log_statement_policy` may be overridden if `audit_log_policy` is also specified, as described in Section 7.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Control”.

- `audit_log_strategy`:
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-strategy=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_strategy</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>ASYNCHRONOUS</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td><code>ASYNCHRONOUS</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>PERFORMANCE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>SEMISYNCHRONOUS</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>SYNCHRONOUS</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The logging method used by the audit log plugin. These strategy values are permitted:

- **ASYNCHRONOUS**: Log asynchronously. Wait for space in the output buffer.
- **PERFORMANCE**: Log asynchronously. Drop requests for which there is insufficient space in the output buffer.
- **SEMISYNCHRONOUS**: Log synchronously. Permit caching by the operating system.
- **SYNCHRONOUS**: Log synchronously. Call `sync()` after each request.

### 7.5.8.5 Audit Log Status Variables

If the audit log plugin is enabled, it exposes several status variables that provide operational information. These variables are available for legacy mode audit filtering and JSON mode audit filtering.

- **Audit_log_current_size**

  The size of the current audit log file. The value increases when an event is written to the log and is reset to 0 when the log is rotated.

- **Audit_log_event_max_drop_size**
The size of the largest dropped event in performance logging mode. For a description of logging modes, see Section 7.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Control”.

- **Audit_log_events**

  The number of events handled by the audit log plugin, whether or not they were written to the log based on filtering policy (see Section 7.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Control”).

- **Audit_log_events_filtered**

  The number of events handled by the audit log plugin that were filtered (not written to the log) based on filtering policy (see Section 7.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Control”).

- **Audit_log_events_lost**

  The number of events lost in performance logging mode because an event was larger than the available audit log buffer space. This value may be useful for assessing how to set `audit_log_buffer_size` to size the buffer for performance mode. For a description of logging modes, see Section 7.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Control”.

- **Audit_log_events_written**

  The number of events written to the audit log.

- **Audit_log_total_size**

  The total size of events written to all audit log files. Unlike `Audit_log_current_size`, the value of `Audit_log_total_size` increases even when the log is rotated.

- **Audit_log_write_waits**

  The number of times an event had to wait for space in the audit log buffer in asynchronous logging mode. For a description of logging modes, see Section 7.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Control”.

7.5.9 Audit Log Restrictions

MySQL Enterprise Audit is subject to these general restrictions:

- Only SQL statements are logged. Changes made by no-SQL APIs, such as memcached, Node.JS, and the NDB API, are not logged.

- Only top-level statements are logged, not statements within stored programs such as triggers or stored procedures.

- Contents of files referenced by statements such as `LOAD DATA` are not logged.

- Prior to MySQL 5.7.21, MySQL Enterprise Audit uses `MyISAM` tables in the `mysql` system database. Group Replication does not support `MyISAM` tables. Consequently, MySQL Enterprise Audit and Group Replication cannot be used together.

**NDB Cluster.** It is possible to use MySQL Enterprise Audit with MySQL NDB Cluster, subject to the following conditions:

- All changes to be logged must be done using the SQL interface. Changes using no-SQL interfaces, such as those provided by the NDB API, memcached, or ClusterJ, are not logged.

- The plugin must be installed on each MySQL server that is used to execute SQL on the cluster.

- Audit plugin data must be aggregated amongst all MySQL servers used with the cluster. This aggregation is the responsibility of the application or user.

7.6 MySQL Enterprise Firewall
MySQL Enterprise Firewall Components

Note
MySQL Enterprise Firewall is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see https://www.mysql.com/products/.

MySQL Enterprise Edition includes MySQL Enterprise Firewall, an application-level firewall that enables database administrators to permit or deny SQL statement execution based on matching against whitelists of accepted statement patterns. This helps harden MySQL Server against attacks such as SQL injection or attempts to exploit applications by using them outside of their legitimate query workload characteristics.

Each MySQL account registered with the firewall has its own statement whitelist, enabling protection to be tailored per account. For a given account, the firewall can operate in recording, protecting, or detecting mode, for training in the accepted statement patterns, active protection against unacceptable statements, or passive detection of unacceptable statements. The diagram illustrates how the firewall processes incoming statements in each mode.

Figure 7.1 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Operation

The following sections describe the components of MySQL Enterprise Firewall, discuss how to install and use it, and provide reference information for its components.

7.6.1 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Components

MySQL Enterprise Firewall is based on a plugin library that implements these components:

- A server-side plugin named MYSQL_FIREWALL examines SQL statements before they execute and, based on its in-memory cache, renders a decision whether to execute or reject each statement.

- Server-side plugins named MYSQL_FIREWALL_USERS and MYSQL_FIREWALL_WHITELIST implement INFORMATION_SCHEMA tables that provide views into the firewall data cache.

- System tables named firewall_users and firewall_whitelist in the mysql database provide persistent storage of firewall data.
• Stored procedures named `sp_set_firewall_mode()` and `sp_reload_firewall_rules()` perform tasks such as registering MySQL accounts with the firewall, establishing their operational mode, and managing transfer of firewall data between the cache and the underlying system tables.

• A set of user-defined functions provides an SQL-level API for lower-level tasks such as synchronizing the cache with the underlying system tables.

• System variables enable firewall configuration and status variables provide runtime operational information.

### 7.6.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall

MySQL Enterprise Firewall installation is a one-time operation that installs the components described in Section 7.6.1, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall Components”. Installation can be performed using a graphical interface or manually:

• On Windows, MySQL Installer includes an option to enable MySQL Enterprise Firewall for you.

• MySQL Workbench 6.3.4 or higher can install MySQL Enterprise Firewall, enable or disable an installed firewall, or uninstall the firewall.

• Manual MySQL Enterprise Firewall installation involves running a script located in the `share` directory of your MySQL installation.

**Note**

If installed, MySQL Enterprise Firewall involves some minimal overhead even when disabled. To avoid this overhead, do not install the firewall unless you plan to use it.

**Note**

MySQL Enterprise Firewall does not work together with the query cache. If the query cache is enabled, disable it before installing the firewall (see Query Cache Configuration).

For usage instructions, see Section 7.6.3, “Using MySQL Enterprise Firewall”. For reference information, see Section 7.6.4, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall Reference”.

• Installing MySQL Enterprise Firewall

• Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall

### Installing MySQL Enterprise Firewall

If MySQL Enterprise Firewall is already installed from an older version of MySQL, uninstall it using the instructions given later in this section and then restart your server before installing the current version. In this case, it is also necessary to register your configuration again.

On Windows, you can use MySQL Installer to install MySQL Enterprise Firewall, as shown in Figure 7.2, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall Installation on Windows”. Check the Enable Enterprise Firewall checkbox. (Open Firewall port for network access has a different purpose. It refers to Windows Firewall and controls whether Windows blocks the TCP/IP port on which the MySQL server listens for client connections.)
To install MySQL Enterprise Firewall using MySQL Workbench 6.3.4 or higher, see MySQL Enterprise Firewall Interface.

To install MySQL Enterprise Firewall manually, look in the `share` directory of your MySQL installation and choose the script that is appropriate for your platform. The available scripts differ in the suffix used to refer to the plugin library file:

- `win_install_firewall.sql`: Choose this script for Windows systems that use `.dll` as the file name suffix.
- `linux_install_firewall.sql`: Choose this script for Linux and similar systems that use `.so` as the file name suffix.

The installation script creates stored procedures in the default database, so choose a database to use. Then run the script as follows, naming the chosen database on the command line. The example here uses the `mysql` database and the Linux installation script. Make the appropriate substitutions for your system.

```
shell> mysql -u root -p mysql < linux_install_firewall.sql
Enter password: (enter root password here)
```

**Note**

As of MySQL 5.7.21, for a new installation of MySQL Enterprise Firewall, **InnoDB** is used instead of **MyISAM** for the firewall tables. For upgrades to an installation for which MySQL Enterprise Firewall is already installed, it is recommended that you alter the firewall tables to use **InnoDB**.
Installing MySQL Enterprise Firewall either using a graphical interface or manually should enable the firewall. To verify that, connect to the server and execute this statement:

```
mysql> SHOW GLOBAL VARIABLES LIKE 'mysql_firewall_mode';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable_name</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mysql_firewall_mode</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall

MySQL Enterprise Firewall can be uninstalled using MySQL Workbench or manually.

To uninstall MySQL Enterprise Firewall using MySQL Workbench 6.3.4 or higher, see MySQL Enterprise Firewall Interface.

To uninstall MySQL Enterprise Firewall manually, execute the following statements. It is assumed that the stored procedures were created in the `mysql` database. Adjust the `DROP PROCEDURE` statements appropriately if the procedures were created in a different database.

```
DROP TABLE mysql.firewall_whitelist;
DROP TABLE mysql.firewall_users;
UNINSTALL PLUGIN mysql_firewall;
UNINSTALL PLUGIN mysql_firewall_whitelist;
UNINSTALL PLUGIN mysql_firewall_users;
DROP FUNCTION set_firewall_mode;
DROP FUNCTION normalize_statement;
DROP FUNCTION read_firewall_whitelist;
DROP FUNCTION read_firewall_users;
DROP FUNCTION mysql_firewall_flush_status;
DROP PROCEDURE mysql.sp_set_firewall_mode;
DROP PROCEDURE mysql.sp_reload_firewall_rules;
```

### 7.6.3 Using MySQL Enterprise Firewall

Before using MySQL Enterprise Firewall, install it according to the instructions provided in Section 7.6.2, "Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall". Also, MySQL Enterprise Firewall does not work together with the query cache; disable the query cache if it is enabled (see Query Cache Configuration).

This section describes how to configure MySQL Enterprise Firewall using SQL statements. Alternatively, MySQL Workbench 6.3.4 or higher provides a graphical interface for firewall control. See MySQL Enterprise Firewall Interface.

To enable or disable the firewall, set the `mysql_firewall_mode` system variable. By default, this variable is enabled when the firewall is installed. To control the initial firewall state explicitly, you can set the variable at server startup. For example, to enable the firewall in an option file, use these lines:

```
[mysqld]
mysql_firewall_mode=ON
```

It is also possible to disable or enable the firewall at runtime:

```
mysql> SET GLOBAL mysql_firewall_mode = OFF;
mysql> SET GLOBAL mysql_firewall_mode = ON;
```

In addition to the global on/off firewall mode, each account registered with the firewall has its own operational mode. For an account in recording mode, the firewall learns an application’s “fingerprint,” that is, the acceptable statement patterns that, taken together, form a whitelist. After training, switch
the firewall to protecting mode to harden MySQL against access by statements that deviate from
the fingerprint. For additional training, switch the firewall back to recording mode as necessary to
update the whitelist with new statement patterns. An intrusion-detection mode is available that writes
suspicious statements to the error log but does not deny access.

The firewall maintains whitelist rules on a per-account basis, enabling implementation of protection
strategies such as these:

- For an application that has unique protection requirements, configure it to use an account that is not
  used for any other purpose.
- For applications that are related and share protection requirements, configure them as a group to
  use the same account.

Firewall operation is based on conversion of SQL statements to normalized digest form. Firewall
digests are like the statement digests used by the Performance Schema (see Performance Schema
Statement Digests). However, unlike the Performance Schema, the relevant digest-related system
variable is `max_digest_length`.

For a connection from a registered account, the firewall converts each incoming statement to
normalized form and processes it according to the account mode:

- In recording mode, the firewall adds the normalized statement to the account whitelist rules.
- In protecting mode, the firewall compares the normalized statement to the account whitelist rules. If
  there is a match, the statement passes and the server continues to process it. Otherwise, the server
  rejects the statement and returns an error to the client. The firewall also writes the rejected statement
to the error log if the `mysql_firewall_trace` system variable is enabled.
- In detecting mode, the firewall matches statements as in protecting mode, but writes nonmatching
  statements to the error log without denying access.

Accounts that have a mode of OFF or are not registered with the firewall are ignored by it.

To protect an account using MySQL Enterprise Firewall, follow these steps:

1. Register the account and put it in recording mode.
2. Connect to the MySQL server using the registered account and execute statements to be learned.
   This establishes the account's whitelist of accepted statements.
3. Switch the registered account to protecting mode.

The following example shows how to register an account with the firewall, use the firewall to learn
acceptable statements for that account, and protect the account against execution of unacceptable
statements. The example account, `fwuser@localhost`, is for use by an application that
accesses tables in the `sakila` database. (This database is available at https://dev.mysql.com/doc/
index-other.html.)

```
Note
The user and host parts of the account name are quoted separately for
statements such as `CREATE USER` and `GRANT`, whereas to specify an
account for use with a firewall component, name it as a single quoted string
'fwuser@localhost'.

The convention for naming accounts as a single quoted string for firewall
components means that you cannot use accounts that have embedded `@`
characters in the user name.
```

Perform the steps in the following procedure using an administrative MySQL account, except those
designated for execution by the account registered with the firewall. The default database should be
`sakila` for statements executed using the registered account.
1. If necessary, create the account to be protected (choose an appropriate password) and grant it privileges for the sakila database:

```sql
mysql> CREATE USER 'fwuser'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'fWp@3sw0rd';
mysql> GRANT ALL ON sakila.* TO 'fwuser'@'localhost';
```

2. Use the `sp_set_firewall_mode()` stored procedure to register the account with the firewall and place it in recording mode (if the procedure is located in a database other than `mysql`, adjust the statement accordingly):

```sql
mysql> CALL mysql.sp_set_firewall_mode('fwuser@localhost', 'RECORDING');
```

During the course of its execution, the stored procedure invokes firewall user-defined functions, which may produce output of their own.

3. Using the registered account, connect to the server, then execute some statements that are legitimate for it:

```sql
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name FROM customer WHERE customer_id = 1;
mysql> UPDATE rental SET return_date = NOW() WHERE rental_id = 1;
mysql> SELECT get_customer_balance(1, NOW());
```

The firewall converts the statements to digest form and records them in the account whitelist.

**Note**

Until the account executes statements in recording mode, its whitelist is empty, which is equivalent to “deny all.” If switched to protecting mode, the account will be effectively prohibited from executing statements.

4. At this point, the user and whitelist information is cached and can be seen in the firewall `INFORMATION_SCHEMA` tables:

```sql
mysql> SELECT MODE FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.MYSQL_FIREWALL_USERS
WHERE USERHOST = 'fwuser@localhost';
+-----------+
| MODE      |
+-----------+
| RECORDING |
+-----------+
mysql> SELECT RULE FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.MYSQL_FIREWALL_WHITELIST
WHERE USERHOST = 'fwuser@localhost';
+----------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RULE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SELECT <code>first_name</code>, <code>last_name</code> FROM <code>customer</code> WHERE <code>customer_id</code> = ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECT <code>get_customer_balance</code> ( ?, NOW ( ) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPDATE <code>rental</code> SET <code>return_date</code> = NOW ( ) WHERE <code>rental_id</code> = ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECT @B<code>version_comment</code> LIMIT ?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+----------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
```

**Note**

The `@@version_comment` rule comes from a statement sent automatically by the `mysql` client when you connect to the server as the registered user.

It is important to train the firewall under conditions matching application use. For example, a given MySQL connector might send statements to the server at the beginning of a connection to determine server characteristics and capabilities. If an application normally is used through that connector, train the firewall that way, too. That enables those initial statements to become part of the whitelist for the account associated with the application.
5. Use the stored procedure to switch the registered user to protecting mode:

```
mysql> CALL mysql.sp_set_firewall_mode('fwuser@localhost', 'PROTECTING');
```

**Important**

Switching the account out of **RECORDING** mode synchronizes its firewall cache data to the underlying `mysql` system database tables for persistent storage. If you do not switch the mode for a user who is being recorded, the cached whitelist data is not written to the system tables and will be lost when the server is restarted.

6. Using the registered account, execute some acceptable and unacceptable statements. The firewall matches each one against the account whitelist and accepts or rejects it.

This statement is not identical to a training statement but produces the same normalized statement as one of them, so the firewall accepts it:

```
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name FROM customer WHERE customer_id = '48';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>first_name</th>
<th>last_name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANN</td>
<td>EVANS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These statements do not match anything in the whitelist and each results in an error:

```
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name FROM customer WHERE customer_id = 1 OR TRUE;
ERROR 1045 (28000): Statement was blocked by Firewall
mysql> SHOW TABLES LIKE 'customer%';
ERROR 1045 (28000): Statement was blocked by Firewall
mysql> TRUNCATE TABLE mysql.slow_log;
ERROR 1045 (28000): Statement was blocked by Firewall
```

The firewall also writes the rejected statements to the error log if the `mysql_firewall_trace` system variable is enabled. For example:

```
[Note] Plugin MYSQL_FIREWALL reported: 'ACCESS DENIED for fwuser@localhost. Reason: No match in whitelist.
Statement: TRUNCATE TABLE `mysql` . `slow_log` '  
```

You can use these log messages in your efforts to identify the source of attacks.

7. You can log nonmatching statements as suspicious without denying access. To do this, put the account in intrusion-detecting mode:

```
mysql> CALL mysql.sp_set_firewall_mode('fwuser@localhost', 'DETECTING');
```

8. Using the registered account, connect to the server, then execute a statement that does not match the whitelist:

```
mysql> SHOW TABLES LIKE 'customer%';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tables_in_sakila (customer%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customer_list</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In detecting mode, the firewall permits the nonmatching statement to execute but writes a message to the error log:
[Note] Plugin MYSQL_FIREWALL reported:
'SUSPICIOUS STATEMENT from 'fwuser@localhost'. Reason: No match in whitelist.
Statement: SHOW TABLES LIKE ? '

Note
Detection mode writes messages as Notes, which are information messages. To ensure that such messages appear in the error log and are not discarded, make sure that the log_error_verbosity system variable is set to a value of 3.

9. To assess firewall activity, examine its status variables:

```
mysql> SHOW GLOBAL STATUS LIKE 'Firewall%';
+----------------------------+-------+
| Variable_name              | Value |
+----------------------------+-------+
| Firewall_access_denied     | 3     |
| Firewall_access_granted    | 4     |
| Firewall_access_suspicious | 1     |
| Firewall_cached_entries    | 4     |
+----------------------------+-------+
```

The variables indicate the number of statements rejected, accepted, logged as suspicious, and added to the cache, respectively. The Firewall_access_granted count is 4 because of the @@version_info statement sent by the mysql client each of the three time you used it to connect as the registered user, plus the SHOW TABLES statement that was not blocked in DETECTING mode.

Should additional training for an account be necessary, switch it to recording mode again, then back to protecting mode after executing statements to be added to the whitelist.

7.6.4 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Reference

The following discussion serves as a reference to MySQL Enterprise Firewall components:

- Section 7.6.4.1, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall Tables”
- Section 7.6.4.2, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall Procedures and Functions”
- Section 7.6.4.3, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall System Variables”
- Section 7.6.4.4, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall Status Variables”

7.6.4.1 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Tables

MySQL Enterprise Firewall maintains account and whitelist information. It uses INFORMATION_SCHEMA tables to provide views into cached data, and tables in the mysql system database to store this data in persistent form. When enabled, the firewall bases its operational decisions on the cached data.

The INFORMATION_SCHEMA tables are accessible by anyone. The mysql tables can be accessed only by users with privileges for that database.

The INFORMATION_SCHEMA.MYSQL_FIREWALL_USERS and mysql.firewall_users tables list registered firewall accounts and their operational modes. The tables have these columns:

- USERHOST

An account registered with the firewall. Each account has the format user_name@host_name and represents actual user and host names as authenticated by the server. Patterns and netmasks should not be used when registering users.
• **MODE**

The current firewall operational mode for the account. The permitted mode values are **OFF**, **DETECTING**, **PROTECTING**, **RECORDING**, and **RESET**. For details about their meanings, see the description of `sp_set_firewall_mode()` in Section 7.6.4.2, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall Procedures and Functions”.

The `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.MYSQL_FIREWALL_WHITELIST` and `mysql.firewall_whitelist` tables list registered firewall accounts and their whitelists. The tables have these columns:

• **USERHOST**

An account registered with the firewall. The format is the same as for the user account tables.

• **RULE**

A normalized statement indicating an acceptable statement pattern for the account. An account whitelist is the union of its rules.

• **ID**

An integer column that is a primary key for the table. This column was added in MySQL 5.7.23.

### 7.6.4.2 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Procedures and Functions

MySQL Enterprise Firewall has stored procedures that perform tasks such as registering MySQL accounts with the firewall, establishing their operational mode, and managing transfer of firewall data between the cache and the underlying system tables. It also has a set of user-defined functions (UDFs) that provides an SQL-level API for lower-level tasks such as synchronizing the cache with the underlying system tables.

Under normal operation, the stored procedures implement the user interface. The UDFs are invoked by the stored procedures, not directly by users.

To invoke a stored procedure when the default database is not the database that contains the procedure, qualify the procedure name with the database name. For example:

```sql
CALL mysql.sp_set_firewall_mode('user', 'mode');
```

The following list describes each firewall stored procedure and UDF:

• **sp_reload_firewall_rules(**`user`**)**

This stored procedure uses firewall UDFs to reset a registered account and reload the in-memory rules for it from the rules stored in the `mysql.firewall_whitelist` table. This procedure provides control over firewall operation for individual accounts.

The `user` argument names the affected account, as a string in `user_name@host_name` format.

Example:

```sql
CALL mysql.sp_reload_firewall_rules('fwuser@localhost');
```

**Warning**

This procedure sets the account mode to **RESET**, which clears the account whitelist and sets its mode to **OFF**. If the account mode was not **OFF** prior to the `sp_reload_firewall_rules()` call, use `sp_set_firewall_mode()` to restore its previous mode after reloading the rules. For example, if the account was in **PROTECTING** mode, that is no longer true after calling `sp_reload_firewall_rules()` and you must set it to **PROTECTING** again explicitly.
• **sp_set_firewall_mode**(user, mode)

This stored procedure registers a MySQL account with the firewall and establishes its operational mode. The procedure also invokes firewall UDFs as necessary to transfer firewall data between the cache and the underlying system tables. This procedure may be called even if the `mysql_firewall_mode` system variable is OFF, although setting the mode for an account has no operational effect while the firewall is disabled.

The **user** argument names the affected account, as a string in `user_name@host_name` format.

The **mode** is the operational mode for the user, as a string. These mode values are permitted:

- **OFF**: Disable the firewall for the account.
- **DETECTING**: Intrusion-detection mode: Write suspicious (nonmatching) statements to the error log but do not deny access.
- **PROTECTING**: Protect the account by matching incoming statements against the account whitelist.
- **RECORDING**: Training mode: Record acceptable statements for the account. Incoming statements that do not immediately fail with a syntax error are recorded to become part of the account whitelist rules.
- **RESET**: Clear the account whitelist and set the account mode to OFF.

Switching the mode for an account to any mode but RECORDING synchronizes the firewall cache data to the underlying mysql system database tables for persistent storage. Switching the mode from OFF to RECORDING reloads the whitelist from the `mysql.firewall_whitelist` table into the cache.

If an account has an empty whitelist, setting its mode to PROTECTING produces an error message that is returned in a result set, but not an SQL error:

```sql
mysql> CALL mysql.sp_set_firewall_mode('a@b','PROTECTING');
+----------------------------------------------------------------------+
| set_firewall_mode(arg_userhost, arg_mode)                            |
+----------------------------------------------------------------------+
| ERROR: PROTECTING mode requested for a@b but the whitelist is empty. |
+----------------------------------------------------------------------+
1 row in set (0.02 sec)
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.02 sec)
```

• **mysql_firewall_flush_status()**

This UDF resets several firewall status variables to 0:

```sql
Firewall_access_denied
Firewall_access_granted
Firewall_access_suspicious
```

Example:

```sql
SELECT mysql_firewall_flush_status();
```

• **normalize_statement**(stmt)

This UDF normalizes an SQL statement into the digest form used for whitelist rules.

Example:

```sql
SELECT normalize_statement('SELECT * FROM t1 WHERE c1 > 2');
```
• read_firewall_users(user, mode)

This aggregate UDF updates the firewall user cache through a `SELECT` statement on the `mysql.firewall_users` table.

Example:

```sql
SELECT read_firewall_users('fwuser@localhost', 'RECORDING')
FROM mysql.firewall_users;
```

• read_firewall_whitelist(user, rule)

This aggregate UDF updates the recorded statement cache through a `SELECT` statement on the `mysql.firewall_whitelist` table.

Example:

```sql
SELECT read_firewall_whitelist('fwuser@localhost', 'RECORDING')
FROM mysql.firewall_whitelist;
```

• set_firewall_mode(user, mode)

This UDF manages the user cache and establishes the user operational mode.

Example:

```sql
SELECT set_firewall_mode('fwuser@localhost', 'RECORDING');
```

### 7.6.4.3 MySQL Enterprise Firewall System Variables

MySQL Enterprise Firewall supports the following system variables. Use them to configure firewall operation. These variables are unavailable unless the firewall is installed (see Section 7.6.2, "Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall").

• mysql_firewall_mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>`--mysql-firewall-mode={OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>mysql_firewall_mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whether MySQL Enterprise Firewall is enabled (the default) or disabled.

• mysql_firewall_trace

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>`--mysql-firewall-trace={OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>mysql_firewall_trace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Property

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whether the MySQL Enterprise Firewall trace is enabled or disabled (the default). When `mysql_firewall_trace` is enabled, for PROTECTING mode, the firewall writes rejected statements to the error log.

#### 7.6.4.4 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Status Variables

MySQL Enterprise Firewall supports the following status variables. Use them to obtain information about firewall operational status. These variables are unavailable unless the firewall is installed (see Section 7.6.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall”). Firewall status variables are set to 0 whenever the `MYSQL_FIREWALL` plugin is installed or the server is started. Many of them are reset to zero by the `mysql_firewall_flush_status()` UDF (see Section 7.6.4.2, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall Procedures and Functions”).

- **Firewall_access_denied**
  The number of statements rejected by MySQL Enterprise Firewall.

- **Firewall_access_granted**
  The number of statements accepted by MySQL Enterprise Firewall.

- **Firewall_access_suspicious**
  The number of statements logged by MySQL Enterprise Firewall as suspicious for users who are in DETECTING mode.

- **Firewall_cached_entries**
  The number of statements recorded by MySQL Enterprise Firewall, including duplicates.

### 7.7 MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification

**Note**

MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, [https://www.mysql.com/products/](https://www.mysql.com/products/).

As of MySQL 5.7.24, MySQL Enterprise Edition provides data masking and de-identification capabilities:

- Transformation of existing data to mask it and remove identifying characteristics, such as changing all digits of a credit card number but the last four to 'X' characters.

- Generation of random data, such as email addresses and payment card numbers.

The way that applications use these capabilities depends on the purpose for which the data will be used and who will access it:

- Applications that use sensitive data may protect it by performing data masking and permitting use of partially masked data for client identification. Example: A call center may ask for clients to provide their last four Social Security number digits.

- Applications that require properly formatted data, but not necessarily the original data, can synthesize sample data. Example: An application developer who is testing data validators but has no access to original data may synthesize random data with the same format.
Example 1:
Medical research facilities can hold patient data that comprises a mix of personal and medical data. This may include genetic sequences (long strings), test results stored in JSON format, and other data types. Although the data may be used mostly by automated analysis software, access to genome data or test results of particular patients is still possible. In such cases, data masking should be used to render this information not personally identifiable.

Example 2:
A credit card processor company provides a set of services using sensitive data, such as:

- Processing a large number of financial transactions per second.
- Storing a large amount of transaction-related data.
- Protecting transaction-related data with strict requirements for personal data.
- Handling client complaints about transactions using reversible or partially masked data.

A typical transaction may include many types of sensitive information, including:

- Credit card number.
- Transaction type and amount.
- Merchant type.
- Transaction cryptogram (to confirm transaction legitimacy).
- Geolocation of GPS-equipped terminal (for fraud detection).

Those types of information may then be joined within a bank or other card-issuing financial institution with client personal data, such as:

- Full client name (either person or company).
- Address.
- Date of birth.
- Social Security number.
- Email address.
- Phone number.

Various employee roles within both the card processing company and the financial institution require access to that data. Some of these roles may require access only to masked data. Other roles may require access to the original data on a case-to-case basis, which is recorded in audit logs.

Masking and de-identification are core to regulatory compliance, so MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification can help application developers satisfy privacy requirements:

- PCI – DSS: Payment Card Data.
- HIPAA: Privacy of Health Data, Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act (HITECH Act).
- Data Protection Act (UK): Protection of Personal Data.
MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification Components

- FERPA – Student Data, NASD, CA SB1386 and AB 1950, State Data Protection Laws, Basel II.

The following sections describe the components of MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification, discuss how to install and use it, and provide reference information for its components.

7.7.1 MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification Components

MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification is based on a plugin library that implements these components:

- A server-side plugin named `data_masking`.
- A set of user-defined functions (UDFs) provides an SQL-level API for performing masking and de-identification operations. Some of these functions require the `SUPER` privilege.

7.7.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification

This section describes how to install or uninstall MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification, which is implemented as a plugin library file containing a plugin and user-defined functions (UDFs). For general information about installing or uninstalling plugins and UDFs, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins, and Installing and Uninstalling User-Defined Functions.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

The plugin library file base name is `data_masking`. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, `.so` for Unix and Unix-like systems, `.dll` for Windows).

To install the MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification plugin and UDFs, use the `INSTALL PLUGIN` and `CREATE FUNCTION` statements (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
INSTALL PLUGIN data_masking SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_blacklist RETURNS STRING
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_dictionary RETURNS STRING
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_dictionary_drop RETURNS STRING
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_dictionary_load RETURNS STRING
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_range RETURNS INTEGER
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_rnd_email RETURNS STRING
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_rnd_pan RETURNS STRING
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_rnd_ssn RETURNS STRING
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_rnd_us_phone RETURNS STRING
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION mask_inner RETURNS STRING
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION mask_outer RETURNS STRING
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION mask_pan RETURNS STRING
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION mask_pan_relaxed RETURNS STRING
SONAME 'data_masking.so';
```
CREATE FUNCTION mask_ssn RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';

If the plugin and UDFs are used on a master replication server, install them on all slave servers as well to avoid replication problems.

Once installed as just described, the plugin and UDFs remain installed until uninstalled. To remove them, use the UNINSTALL PLUGIN and DROP FUNCTION statements:

UNINSTALL PLUGIN data_masking;
DROP FUNCTION gen_blacklist;
DROP FUNCTION gen_dictionary;
DROP FUNCTION gen_dictionary_drop;
DROP FUNCTION gen_dictionary_load;
DROP FUNCTION gen_range;
DROP FUNCTION gen_rnd_email;
DROP FUNCTION gen_rnd_pan;
DROP FUNCTION gen_rnd_ssn;
DROP FUNCTION gen_rnd_us_phone;
DROP FUNCTION mask_inner;
DROP FUNCTION mask_outer;
DROP FUNCTION mask_pan;
DROP FUNCTION mask_pan_relaxed;
DROP FUNCTION mask_ssn;

7.7.3 Using MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification

Before using MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification, install it according to the instructions provided at Section 7.7.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification”.

To use MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification in applications, invoke the functions that are appropriate for the operations you wish to perform. For detailed function descriptions, see Section 7.7.4, “MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification User-Defined Function Reference”. This section demonstrates how to use the functions to carry out some representative tasks. It first presents an overview of the available functions, followed by some examples of how the functions might be used in real-world context:

• Masking Data to Remove Identifying Characteristics
• Generating Random Data with Specific Characteristics
• Generating Random Data Using Dictionaries
• Using Masked Data for Customer Identification
• Creating Views that Display Masked Data

Masking Data to Remove Identifying Characteristics

MySQL provides general-purpose masking functions that mask arbitrary strings, and special-purpose masking functions that mask specific types of values.

General-Purpose Masking Functions

mask_inner() and mask_outer() are general-purpose functions that mask parts of arbitrary strings based on position within the string:

• mask_inner() masks the interior of its string argument, leaving the ends unmasked. Other arguments specify the sizes of the unmasked ends.

mysql> SELECT mask_inner('This is a string', 5, 1);
Using MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification

- `mask_inner()` does the reverse, masking the ends of its string argument, leaving the interior unmasked. Other arguments specify the sizes of the masked ends.

  ```
  mysql> SELECT mask_outer('This is a string', 5, 1);
  +--------------------------------------+
  | mask_outer('This is a string', 5, 1) |
  +--------------------------------------+
  | XXXXXis a strinX                     |
  +--------------------------------------+
  mysql> SELECT mask_outer('This is a string', 1, 5);
  +--------------------------------------+
  | mask_outer('This is a string', 1, 5) |
  +--------------------------------------+
  | Xhis is a sXXXXX                     |
  +--------------------------------------+
  ```

By default, `mask_inner()` and `mask_outer()` use 'X' as the masking character, but permit an optional masking-character argument:

  ```
  mysql> SELECT mask_inner('This is a string', 5, 1, '*');
  +-------------------------------------------+
  | mask_inner('This is a string', 5, 1, '*') |
  +-------------------------------------------+
  | This **********g                          |
  +-------------------------------------------+
  mysql> SELECT mask_outer('This is a string', 5, 1, '#');
  +-------------------------------------------+
  | mask_outer('This is a string', 5, 1, '#') |
  +-------------------------------------------+
  | ####is a strin#                          |
  +-------------------------------------------+
  ```

**Special-Purpose Masking Functions**

Other masking functions expect a string argument representing a specific type of value and mask it to remove identifying characteristics.

**Note**

The examples here supply function arguments using the random value generation functions that return the appropriate type of value. For more information about generation functions, see Generating Random Data with Specific Characteristics.

**Payment card Primary Account Number masking.**

Masking functions provide strict and relaxed masking of Primary Account Numbers.

- `mask_pan()` masks all but the last four digits of the number:

  ```
  mysql> SELECT mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan());
  +-------------------------+
  | mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan()) |
  +-------------------------+
  ```
Using MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XXXXXXXXXXXXX2461</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- `mask_pan_relaxed()` is similar but does not mask the first six digits that indicate the payment card issuer unmasked:

```
mysql> SELECT mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan());
+---------------------------------+
| mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan()) |
+---------------------------------+
| 770630XXXXXX0807                |
```

U.S. Social Security number masking. `mask_ssn()` masks all but the last four digits of the number:

```
mysql> SELECT mask_ssn(gen_rnd_ssn());
+-------------------------+
| mask_ssn(gen_rnd_ssn()) |
+-------------------------+
| XXX-XX-1723             |
```

Generating Random Data with Specific Characteristics

Several functions generate random values. These values can be used for testing, simulation, and so forth.

`gen_range()` returns a random integer selected from a given range:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_range(1, 10);
+------------------+
| gen_range(1, 10) |
+------------------+
| 6                |
```

`gen_rnd_email()` returns a random email address in the `example.com` domain:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_email();
+---------------------------+
| gen_rnd_email()           |
+---------------------------+
| ayxnq.xmkpvvy@example.com |
```

`gen_rnd_pan()` returns a random payment card Primary Account Number:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_pan();
```

(The `gen_rnd_pan()` function result is not shown because its return values should be used only for testing purposes, and not for publication. It cannot be guaranteed the number is not assigned to a legitimate payment account.)

`gen_rnd_ssn()` returns a random U.S. Social Security number with the first and second parts each chosen from a range not used for legitimate numbers:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_ssn();
+---------------+
| gen_rnd_ssn() |
+---------------+
Using MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification

---

| 912-45-1615 |
+--------------|

`gen_rnd_us_phone()` returns a random U.S. phone number in the 555 area code not used for legitimate numbers:

```sql
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_us_phone();
+-------------------+
| gen_rnd_us_phone() |
+-------------------+
| 1-555-747-5627     |
+-------------------+
```

Generating Random Data Using Dictionaries

MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification enables dictionaries to be used as sources of random values. To use a dictionary, it must first be loaded from a file and given a name. Each loaded dictionary becomes part of the dictionary registry. Items then can be selected from registered dictionaries and used as random values or as replacements for other values.

A valid dictionary file has these characteristics:

- The file contents are plain text, one term per line.
- Empty lines are ignored.
- The file must contain at least one term.

Suppose that a file named `de_cities.txt` contains these city names in Germany:

- Berlin
- Munich
- Bremen

Also suppose that a file named `us_cities.txt` contains these city names in the United States:

- Chicago
- Houston
- Phoenix
- El Paso
- Detroit

Assume that the `secure_file_priv` system variable is set to `/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files`. In that case, copy the dictionary files to that directory so that the MySQL server can access them. Then use `gen_dictionary_load()` to load the dictionaries into the dictionary registry and assign them names:

```sql
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary_load('/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files/de_cities.txt', 'DE_Cities');
+--------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary_load('/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files/de_cities.txt', 'DE_Cities') |
+--------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
| Dictionary load success                                                        |
+--------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary_load('/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files/us_cities.txt', 'US_Cities');
+--------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary_load('/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files/us_cities.txt', 'US_Cities') |
+--------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
| Dictionary load success                                                        |
+--------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
```

To select a random term from a dictionary, use `gen_dictionary()`:

```sql
```
Using MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification

To select a random term from multiple dictionaries, randomly select one of the dictionaries, then select a term from it:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary(ELT(gen_range(1,2), 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities'));
+---------------------------------------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary(ELT(gen_range(1,2), 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities')) |
+---------------------------------------------------------------+
| Detroit                                                       |
+---------------------------------------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary(ELT(gen_range(1,2), 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities'));
+---------------------------------------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary(ELT(gen_range(1,2), 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities')) |
+---------------------------------------------------------------+
| Bremen                                                        |
+---------------------------------------------------------------+
```

The `gen_blacklist()` function enables a term from one dictionary to be replaced by a term from another dictionary, which effects masking by substitution. Its arguments are the term to replace, the dictionary in which the term appears, and the dictionary from which to choose a replacement. For example, to substitute a U.S. city for a German city, or vice versa, use `gen_blacklist()` like this:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_blacklist('Munich', 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities');
+---------------------------------------------------+
| gen_blacklist('Munich', 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities') |
+---------------------------------------------------+
| Houston                                           |
+---------------------------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT gen_blacklist('El Paso', 'US_Cities', 'DE_Cities');
+----------------------------------------------------+
| gen_blacklist('El Paso', 'US_Cities', 'DE_Cities') |
+----------------------------------------------------+
| Bremen                                             |
+----------------------------------------------------+
```

If the term to replace is not in the first dictionary, `gen_blacklist()` returns it unchanged:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_blacklist('Moscow', 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities');
+---------------------------------------------------+
| gen_blacklist('Moscow', 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities') |
+---------------------------------------------------+
| Moscow                                            |
+---------------------------------------------------+
```

Using Masked Data for Customer Identification

At customer-service call centers, one common identity verification technique is to ask customers to provide their last four Social Security number (SSN) digits. For example, a customer might say her name is Joanna Bond and that her last four SSN digits are 0007.

Suppose that a `customer` table containing customer records has these columns:

- **id**: Customer ID number.
• **first_name**: Customer first name.

• **last_name**: Customer last name.

• **ssn**: Customer Social Security number.

The application used by customer-service representatives to check the customer SSN might execute a query like this:

```sql
mysql> SELECT id, ssn
mysql> FROM customer
mysql> WHERE first_name = 'Joanna' AND last_name = 'Bond';
```

```
+-----+-------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>id</th>
<th>ssn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>786</td>
<td>906-39-0007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+-----+-------------+
```

However, that exposes the SSN to the customer-service representative, who has no need to see anything but the last four digits. Instead, the application can use this query to display only the masked SSN:

```sql
mysql> SELECT id, mask_ssn(CONVERT(ssn USING binary))
mysql> FROM customer
mysql> WHERE first_name = 'Joanna' AND last_name = 'Bond';
```

```
+-----+-------------------------------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>id</th>
<th>mask_ssn(CONVERT(ssn USING binary))</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>786</td>
<td>XXX-XX-0007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+-----+-------------------------------------+
```

Now the representative sees only what is necessary, and customer privacy is preserved.

**Why was the** `CONVERT()` **function used for the argument to** `mask_ssn()` **? Because** `mask_ssn()` **requires an argument of length 11, and because UDFs treat string arguments as binary strings, with one byte per character. Thus, even though** `ssn` **is defined as** `VARCHAR(11)` **, if the** `ssn` **column has a multibyte character set, it appears to be longer than 11 bytes when passed to a UDF, and an error occurs. Converting the value to a binary string ensures that the UDF sees an argument of length 11.**

A similar technique may be needed for other data masking functions when string arguments do not have a single-byte character set.

### Creating Views that Display Masked Data

If masked data from a table is used for multiple queries, it may be convenient to define a view that produces masked data. That way, applications can select from the view without performing masking in individual queries.

For example, a masking view on the `customer` table from the previous section can be defined like this:

```sql
CREATE VIEW masked_customer AS
SELECT id, first_name, last_name, mask_ssn(CONVERT(ssn USING binary)) AS ssn
FROM customer;
```

Then the query to look up a customer becomes simpler but still returns masked data:

```sql
mysql> SELECT id, ssn
mysql> FROM masked_customer
mysql> WHERE first_name = 'Joanna' AND last_name = 'Bond';
```

```
+-----+-------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>id</th>
<th>ssn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>786</td>
<td>XXX-XX-0007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+-----+-------------+
```
The MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification plugin library includes several user-defined functions (UDFs), which may be grouped into these categories:

- Data Masking Functions
- Random Data Generation Functions
- Random Data Dictionary-Based Functions

These UDFs treat string arguments as binary strings, which means they are implicitly case sensitive. In addition, string UDF return values are binary strings. If a string return value should be in a different character set, convert it. The following example shows how to convert the result of `gen_rnd_email()` to the `utf8mb4` character set:

```
SET @email = CONVERT(gen_rnd_email() USING utf8mb4);
```

It may also be necessary to convert string arguments, as illustrated in Using Masked Data for Customer Identification.

### Data Masking Functions

Each function in this section performs a masking operation on its string argument and returns the masked result.

- `mask_inner(str, margin1, margin2 [, mask_char])`

  Masks the interior part of a string, leaving the ends untouched, and returns the result. An optional masking character can be specified.

  Arguments:

  - `str`: The string to mask.
  - `margin1`: A nonnegative integer that specifies the number of characters on the left end of the string to remain unmasked. If the value is 0, no left end characters remain unmasked.
  - `margin2`: A nonnegative integer that specifies the number of characters on the right end of the string to remain unmasked. If the value is 0, no right end characters remain unmasked.
  - `mask_char`: (Optional) The single character to use for masking. The default is 'X' if `mask_char` is not given.

  Because UDF string arguments are treated as binary strings, the masking character must be a single-byte character. Attempts to use a multibyte character produce an error.

  Return value:

  The masked string, or NULL if either margin is negative.

  If the sum of the margin values is larger than the argument length, no masking occurs and the argument is returned unchanged.

  Example:

  ```
  mysql> SELECT mask_inner('abcdef', 1, 2), mask_inner('abcdef', 0, 5);
  ```
### mask_inner

Masks the first `margin1` characters of a string with an asterisk (*) and returns the result. An optional masking character can be specified.

**Arguments:**

- `str`: The string to mask.
- `margin1`: A nonnegative integer that specifies the number of characters on the left end of the string to mask. If the value is 0, no left end characters are masked.
- `margin2`: A nonnegative integer that specifies the number of characters on the right end of the string to mask. If the value is 0, no right end characters are masked.
- `mask_char`: (Optional) The single character to use for masking. The default is 'X' if `mask_char` is not given.

**Return value:**

The masked string, or `NULL` if either margin is negative.

**Example:**

```sql
mysql> SELECT mask_inner('abcdef', 1, 2), mask_inner('abcdef',0, 5);
```

### mask_outer

Masks the left and right ends of a string, leaving the interior unmasked, and returns the result. An optional masking character can be specified.

**Arguments:**

- `str`: The string to mask.
- `margin1`: A nonnegative integer that specifies the number of characters on the left end of the string to mask. If the value is 0, no left end characters are masked.
- `margin2`: A nonnegative integer that specifies the number of characters on the right end of the string to mask. If the value is 0, no right end characters are masked.
- `mask_char`: (Optional) The single character to use for masking. The default is 'X' if `mask_char` is not given.

**Return value:**

The masked string, or `NULL` if either margin is negative.

**Example:**

```sql
mysql> SELECT mask_outer('abcdef', 1, 2), mask_outer('abcdef',0, 5);
```

### mask_pan

Masks a payment card Primary Account Number and returns the number with all but the last four digits replaced by 'X' characters.

**Arguments:**

- `str`: The string to mask. The string must be a suitable length for the Primary Account Number, but is not otherwise checked.

**Return value:**

The masked string, or `NULL` if the string length is not suitable.
The masked payment number as a string. If the argument is shorter than required, it is returned unchanged.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan());
+-------------------------+
| mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan()) |
| XXXXXXXXXXXX9102        |
+-------------------------+
mysql> SELECT mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan(19));
+---------------------------------+
| mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan(19))        |
| XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX8268             |
+---------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT mask_pan('a*Z');
+-----------------+
| mask_pan('a*Z') |
| a*Z             |
+-----------------+
```

**mask_pan_relaxed(str)**

Masks a payment card Primary Account Number and returns the number with all but the first six and last four digits replaced by 'X' characters. The first six digits indicate the payment card issuer.

**Arguments:**

- **str**: The string to mask. The string must be a suitable length for the Primary Account Number, but is not otherwise checked.

**Return value:**

The masked payment number as a string. If the argument is shorter than required, it is returned unchanged.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan());
+---------------------------------+
| mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan()) |
| 551279XXXXXX3108                 |
+---------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan(19));
+-----------------------------------+
| mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan(19)) |
| 462634XXXXXXXX5739               |
+-----------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT mask_pan_relaxed('a*Z');
+-------------------------+
| mask_pan_relaxed('a*Z')     |
| a*Z                      |
+-------------------------+
```

**mask_ssn(str)**

Masks a U.S. Social Security number and returns the number with all but the last four digits replaced by 'X' characters.
MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification User-Defined Function Reference

Arguments:
• **str**: The string to mask. The string must be 11 characters long, but is not otherwise checked.

Return value:
The masked Social Security number as a string, or **NULL** if the argument is not the correct length.

Example:
```
mysql> SELECT mask_ssn('909-63-6922'), mask_ssn('abcdefghijk');
+-------------------------+-------------------------+
| mask_ssn('909-63-6922') | mask_ssn('abcdefghijk') |
| XXX-XX-6922             | XXX-XX-hijk             |
+-------------------------+-------------------------+
mysql>
```

Random Data Generation Functions

The functions in this section generate random values for different types of data. When possible, generated values have characteristics reserved for demonstration or test values, to avoid having them mistaken for legitimate data. For example, `gen_rnd_us_phone()` returns a U.S. phone number that uses the 555 area code, which is not assigned to phone numbers in actual use. Individual function descriptions describe any exceptions to this principle.

- **gen_rnd_us_phone()**
  Generates a random U.S. phone number.

Arguments:
- **str**: The string to mask. The string must be 11 characters long, but is not otherwise checked.

Example:
```
mysql> SELECT mask_ssn('909-63-6922'), mask_ssn('abcdefghijk');
+-------------------------+-------------------------+
| mask_ssn('909-63-6922') | mask_ssn('abcdefghijk') |
| XXX-XX-6922             | XXX-XX-hijk             |
+-------------------------+-------------------------+
```

- **gen_range(lower, upper)**
  Generates a random number chosen from a specified range.

Arguments:
- **lower**: An integer that specifies the lower boundary of the range.
- **upper**: An integer that specifies the upper boundary of the range, which must not be less than the lower boundary.

Return value:
A random integer in the range from **lower** to **upper**, inclusive, or **NULL** if the **upper** argument is less than **lower**.

Example:
```
mysql> SELECT gen_range(100, 200), gen_range(-1000, -800);
+---------------------+------------------------+
| gen_range(100, 200) | gen_range(-1000, -800) |
|                     |                        |
+---------------------+------------------------+
|                 177 |                   -917 |
mysql>
```

- **gen_rnd_email()**
Generates a random email address in the `example.com` domain.

Arguments:

None.

Return value:

A random email address as a string.

Example:

```sql
SELECT gen_rnd_email();
```

```plaintext
+---------------------------+
| gen_rnd_email()           |
| ijocv.mwvhuf@example.com  |
+---------------------------+
```

• **`gen_rnd_pan([size])`**

Generates a random payment card Primary Account Number. The number passes the Luhn check (an algorithm that performs a checksum verification against a check digit).

**Warning**

Values returned from `gen_rnd_pan()` should be used only for test purposes, and are not suitable for publication. There is no way to guarantee that a given return value is not assigned to a legitimate payment account. Should it be necessary to publish a `gen_rnd_pan()` result, consider masking it with `mask_pan()` or `mask_pan_relaxed()`.

Arguments:

• **`size`**: (Optional) An integer that specifies the size of the result. The default is 16 if `size` is not given. If given, `size` must be an integer in the range from 12 to 19.

Return value:

A random payment number as a string, or `NULL` if a `size` argument outside the permitted range is given.

Example:

```sql
SELECT mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan());
```

```plaintext
+-------------------------+
| mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan()) |
| XXXXXXXXXXXX5805        |
+-------------------------+
SELECT mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan(19));
```

```plaintext
+---------------------------+
| mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan(19)) |
| XXXXXXXXXXXXXX5067       |
+---------------------------+
SELECT mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan());
```

```plaintext
+---------------------------------+
| mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan()) |
| 398403XXXXXXX9547               |
+---------------------------------+
SELECT mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan(19));
```

```plaintext
+---------------------------+
| mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan(19)) |
| 398403XXXXXXX9547               |
+---------------------------+
```
• **gen_rnd_ssn()**

Generates a random U.S. Social Security number in **AAA–BB–CCCC** format. The **AAA** part is greater than 900 and the **BB** part is less than 70, which are characteristics not used for legitimate Social Security numbers.

Arguments:
None.

Return value:
A random Social Security number as a string.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_ssn();
+---------------+
| gen_rnd_ssn() |
+---------------+
| 951-26-0058   |
```

• **gen_rnd_us_phone()**

Generates a random U.S. phone number in **1–555–AAA–BBBB** format. The 555 area code is not used for legitimate phone numbers.

Arguments:
None.

Return value:
A random U.S. phone number as a string.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_us_phone();
+--------------------------+
| gen_rnd_us_phone()       |
+--------------------------+
| 1-555-682-5423           |
```

**Random Data Dictionary-Based Functions**

The functions in this section manipulate dictionaries of terms and perform generation and masking operations based on them. Some of these functions require the **SUPER** privilege.
When a dictionary is loaded, it becomes part of the dictionary registry and is assigned a name to be used by other dictionary functions. Dictionaries are loaded from plain text files containing one term per line. Empty lines are ignored. To be valid, a dictionary file must contain at least one nonempty line.

- `gen_blacklist(str, dictionary_name, replacement_dictionary_name)`

Replaces a term present in one dictionary with a term from a second dictionary and returns the replacement term. This masks the original term by substitution.

Arguments:

- `str`: A string that indicates the term to replace.
- `dictionary_name`: A string that names the dictionary containing the term to replace.
- `replacement_dictionary_name`: A string that names the dictionary from which to choose the replacement term.

Return value:

A string randomly chosen from `replacement_dictionary_name` as a replacement for `str`, or `str` if it does not appear in `dictionary_name`, or NULL if either dictionary name is not in the dictionary registry.

If the term to replace appears in both dictionaries, it is possible for the return value to be the same term.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_blacklist('Berlin', 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities');
+---------------------------------------------------+
| gen_blacklist('Berlin', 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities') |
| Phoenix                                           |
+---------------------------------------------------+
```

- `gen_dictionary(dictionary_name)`

Returns a random term from a dictionary.

Arguments:

- `dictionary_name`: A string that names the dictionary from which to choose the term.

Return value:

A random term from the dictionary as a string, or NULL if the dictionary name is not in the dictionary registry.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary('mydict');
+--------------------------+
| gen_dictionary('mydict') |
| My term                  |
+--------------------------+
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary('no-such-dict');
+--------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary('no-such-dict') |
| NULL                           |
+--------------------------------+
```
MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification User-Defined Function Reference

- **gen_dictionary_drop(dictionary_name)**

Removes a dictionary from the dictionary registry.

This function requires the SUPER privilege.

Arguments:
- **dictionary_name**: A string that names the dictionary to remove from the dictionary registry.

Return value:

A string that indicates whether the drop operation succeeded. **Dictionary removed** indicates success. **Dictionary removal error** indicates failure.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary_drop('mydict');
+--------------------------+
| gen_dictionary_drop('mydict') |
| Dictionary removed         |
+--------------------------+
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary_drop('no-such-dict');
+-------------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary_drop('no-such-dict') |
| Dictionary removal error          |
+-------------------------------------+
```

- **gen_dictionary_load(dictionary_path, dictionary_name)**

Loads a file into the dictionary registry and assigns the dictionary a name to be used with other functions that require a dictionary name argument.

This function requires the SUPER privilege.

**Important**

Dictionaries are not persistent. Any dictionary used by applications must be loaded for each server startup.

Once loaded into the registry, a dictionary is used as is, even if the underlying dictionary file changes. To reload a dictionary, first drop it with `gen_dictionary_drop()`, then load it again with `gen_dictionary_load()`.

Arguments:
- **dictionary_path**: A string that specifies the path name of the dictionary file.
- **dictionary_name**: A string that provides a name for the dictionary.

Return value:

A string that indicates whether the load operation succeeded. **Dictionary load success** indicates success. **Dictionary load error** indicates failure. Dictionary load failure can occur for several reasons, including:

- A dictionary with the given name is already loaded.
- The dictionary file is not found.
- The dictionary file contains no terms.
• The `secure_file_priv` system variable is set and the dictionary file is not located in the directory named by the variable.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary_load('/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files/mydict','mydict');
+---------------------------------------------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary_load('/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files/mydict','mydict') |
| Dictionary load success                                            |
+---------------------------------------------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary_load('/dev/null','null');
+---------------------------------------------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary_load('/dev/null','null')                             |
| Dictionary load error                                               |
+---------------------------------------------------------------------+
```
Appendix A MySQL 5.7 FAQ: Security

Questions

• **A.1:** Where can I find documentation that addresses security issues for MySQL?

• **A.2:** What is the default authentication plugin in MySQL 5.7?

• **A.3:** Does MySQL 5.7 have native support for SSL?

• **A.4:** Is SSL support built into MySQL binaries, or must I recompile the binary myself to enable it?

• **A.5:** Does MySQL 5.7 have built-in authentication against LDAP directories?

• **A.6:** Does MySQL 5.7 include support for Roles Based Access Control (RBAC)?

Questions and Answers

**A.1: Where can I find documentation that addresses security issues for MySQL?**

The best place to start is Chapter 1, Security.

Other portions of the MySQL Documentation which you may find useful with regard to specific security concerns include the following:

• Section 2.1, "Security Guidelines".

• Section 2.3, "Making MySQL Secure Against Attackers".

• How to Reset the Root Password.

• Section 2.5, "How to Run MySQL as a Normal User".

• UDF Security Precautions.

• Section 2.4, "Security-Related mysqld Options and Variables".

• Section 2.6, "Security Issues with LOAD DATA LOCAL".

• Chapter 3, Postinstallation Setup and Testing.

• Chapter 6, Using Encrypted Connections.

**A.2: What is the default authentication plugin in MySQL 5.7?**

The default authentication plugin in MySQL 5.7 is mysql_native_password. For information about this plugin, see Section 7.1.1, "Native Pluggable Authentication". For general information about pluggable authentication and other available authentication plugins, see Section 5.9, "Pluggable Authentication", and Section 7.1, "Authentication Plugins".

**A.3: Does MySQL 5.7 have native support for SSL?**

Most 5.7 binaries have support for SSL connections between the client and server. See Chapter 6, Using Encrypted Connections.

You can also tunnel a connection using SSH, if (for example) the client application does not support SSL connections. For an example, see Section 6.7, "Connecting to MySQL Remotely from Windows with SSH".

**A.4: Is SSL support built into MySQL binaries, or must I recompile the binary myself to enable it?**
Most 5.7 binaries have SSL enabled for client/server connections that are secured, authenticated, or both. See Chapter 6, *Using Encrypted Connections*.

**A.5: Does MySQL 5.7 have built-in authentication against LDAP directories?**

The Enterprise edition includes a [PAM Authentication Plugin](#) that supports authentication against an LDAP directory.

**A.6: Does MySQL 5.7 include support for Roles Based Access Control (RBAC)?**

Not at this time.